

出国留学英语
精通
阅读强化教程
总主编 王东升
主 审 邓红风
主 编 李修江 郭璐宁
清華大学出版社

出国留学英语阅读强化教程：精通

主　编：李修江　郭璐宁
副主编：邹姗姗　刘方方　王　群
编　委：王　群　刘方方　邹姗姗　郭璐宁　李修江

内 容 简 介

本套教材共四册，是面向高中英语水平以上的学生而编写的强化阅读教程。本套书的词汇量起点为最基础的3 000个单词，通过计算机程序筛选，以英国国家语料库最常用词汇列表的前11部分为基准，每册书增加2 000个新词，四册书的词汇覆盖量达到11 000。每册各包含十个单元，每单元由Focus on、Text A和Text B三部分组成。

本书帮助学生掌握第9 000~11 000的两千词汇量；Focus on板块聚焦批判性阅读和批判性思维，加深学生对批判性阅读及批判性思维的理解。

本套教材配有慕课在线课件和在线测试系统，全部课文也都配有英美原声朗读音频，可以进入“海大慕课”（www.moocouc.com）参加学习、辅导，并下载音频文件。

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

出国留学英语阅读强化教程. 精通 / 王东升总主编；李修江，郭璐宁主编. —北京：清华大学出版社，2018

ISBN 978-7-302-50669-0

Ⅰ. ①出… Ⅱ. ①王… ②李…③郭… Ⅲ. ①英语-阅读教学-自学参考资料 Ⅳ. ①H319.4

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字（2018）第161193号

责任编辑：刘细珍
封面设计：子　一
责任校对：王凤芝
责任印制：丛怀宇

出版发行：清华大学出版社
网　　址：http:// www. tup. com. cn，http:// www. wqbook. com
地　　址：北京清华大学学研大厦A座　　**邮　　编：**100084
社 总 机：010-62770175　　**邮　　购：**010-62786544
投稿与读者服务：010-62776969, c-service@tup.tsinghua.edu.cn
质量反馈：010-62772015, zhiliang@tup.tsinghua.edu.cn
印 装 者：三河市金元印装有限公司
经　　销：全国新华书店
开　　本：185mm × 260mm　　**印　　张：**23.25　　**字　　数：**607千字
版　　次：2018 年 9 月第 1 版　　**印　　次：**2018 年 9 月第 1 次印刷
定　　价：79.00元

产品编号：078422-01

前　言

本套教材是面向已经具有高中英语水平的学生而编写的英语阅读教程。国内目前所使用的英语教材，尽管对词汇量有一定的要求，但是教材本身的词汇量覆盖面严重不足。国外要求学生进行大量的课外阅读，教材没有覆盖的词汇可以依靠大量的课外阅读进行补充。但是中国的情况比较特殊，学生在学习英语时，有很强的应试目的性，基本上没有时间进行课外阅读，所以教材没有覆盖的词汇是很难掌握的。根据以上情况，本套教材提出了基本词汇全覆盖的设计理念。在中小学 12 年英语学习的基础上，通过本套教材的学习，可以培养学生的英语阅读能力，包括对基本词汇的认知能力，使之基本达到英语国家阅读人群的一般水平，或者说达到可以到国外大学接受以英语为教学语言的教育的程度。

根据高中阶段教学大纲规定的高中生词汇量大约为 4 000 个这一基本事实，本套教材的起点是最基础的 3 000 个单词（即这 3 000 个单词不再作为生词），通过计算机程序筛选，以英国国家语料库最常用词汇列表的前 11 部分（即全部为 11 000 个单词）为基准，每一册书增加 2 000 个新词，四册书的全部词汇量覆盖面为 11 000 个单词。这一词汇量水平，尽管远达不到英语国家学生大学入学时的词汇量，但超出国内大学公共英语四六级水平。如果能够达到这一目标，学习者至少可以有一个比较好的英语基础，能够顺利进入英语国家或其他国家以英语为教学语言的大学继续学习。

本套教材共四册，每册书的每一个单元都包括 150~200 个新词（编写过程中通过编好的计算机程序进行筛选），并保证新词不与其他三册书的新词重复。通过程序筛选，确保每册书的新增词汇量达到 2 000 左右。学生在学习完四册书之后，阅读词汇量达到 11 000 个左右，基本上可以达到自主流畅阅读一般性英语读物的水平，为进一步用英语作为教学语言学习各个专业（包括英语语言文学专业）打下坚实的语言基础。

长期以来，许多人对国人英语学习的状况有一个误解，即国人阅读能力尚好，但听说能力不行。其实，这一误解来源于对英语阅读本身的误解。所谓的阅读能力，正常应当是指在不借助字典的情况下，可以无障碍读懂一般性英语读物的能力，而一般性读物通常是指一般文学和非文学读物、报刊，也就是英语国家高中毕业生所能够达到的能力。换句话说，本套教材的目标是要求学习者达到英语国家教育的扫盲要求。目前，我国中学生和大学生的英语阅读能力，即便是基础好的学生，也普遍达不到这个标准。主要差距在两个方面：一是词汇量太小，基本阅读的材料都是控制词汇量的文本，而且还时常需要查生词；二是阅读速度太慢，理解也慢，一个文本往往要读两遍及以上才能读懂。在这种情况下，想听懂同样水平的英语语音材料基本是不可能的。所以，很多自认为阅读能力尚好的学生，实际上阅读能力可能并不好。如果按英语国家对阅读的要求，基本算是文盲。本套教材的编者充分考虑了我国学生在阅读方面的这两个差距，一方面强调词汇量的扩充，另一方面

强调阅读速度的提高。本套教材的书名，也反映了这样一种理念，即通过学习这套教材，突破阅读障碍，为进一步学习英语打下坚实的基础。

为了实现这一目标，本套教材配有慕课（MOOC）在线课件和在线测试系统，全部课文也都配有英美原声朗读音频，可以进入“海大慕课”（www.moocouc.com）参加学习、辅导，并下载音频文件。课文朗读音频一方面可以作为一种学习阅读的辅助手段，反复听读、跟读，把学习的内容从视听两个方面输入大脑，强化和巩固学习的效果；另一方面也可作为阅读学习的一把标尺来衡量学生是否达到学习目标之一：阅读速度的提升。学生的阅读速度至少要达到朗读速度，并且逐渐超过朗读速度，才能听懂音频材料，达到教学目标的要求。所以，使用本套教材的教师，不能仅以学生读懂课文内容为目标，一定要在读懂的基础上，不断提高阅读速度：首先，需要读懂课文；其次，需要听懂课文的录音，并进一步熟练跟读课文，达到熟练朗读的程度；最后，应当默读达到每分钟 250~300 个词的速度（即英语国家受过教育人群的一般阅读速度）。

英语作为一种拼音文字，其阅读可以分为四种：第一，拼读，即对每一个词，按读音规则读出每一个音节，也就是学会看到一个词，能拼读出它的发音，然后理解它的意义。第二，流畅朗读，省略音节的拼读，把每一个词作为一个整体读出发音并理解意义，这样可以大大提高阅读速度。第三，默读，即并不发出声音，只是在心里默读（根据研究，发音器官实际上也有反应，但是不发出声音）。默读要比朗读快很多，根据研究，默读的极限速度可以达到每分钟 800~900 个词。第四，视读，完全省略语音与单词的联系，通过视觉把词或词组直接与意义建立联系。掌握这种阅读方法的人，阅读速度可以达到每分钟几千个词。不同的阅读方法有着不同的功用和使用环境。即使在英语国家，大部分人也只能获得前三种阅读能力，而使用本套教材的学生都是把英语作为外语学习的人，所以只以掌握前三种阅读能力为目标。而且，第三种能力也只设立了最低的目标，即每分钟阅读 250~300 个词。当然作为长远目标，每分钟阅读 500 个词或更多应当是每一个英语学习者努力的方向。所以，本套教材要求学生对所有的课文都应当熟练朗读和快速默读。

本套教材的编者认为，由于所处的环境，我们最容易得到的英语材料是阅读材料，而且阅读材料从词汇的覆盖面、题材的广泛性方面来看都是其他材料所不能比拟的。所以，对中国学习者而言，英语阅读往往是最容易入门的。从阅读入手取得突破，然后转战听力、口语、写作，不但体现了中国古代先哲兵力战法的智慧，也符合现代学习心理学的认知。

本书为该套教材的第四册，共有 10 个单元，每个单元由 Focus on、Text A 和 Text B 三部分组成。第一册、第二册的 Focus on 部分聚焦构词法知识；第三册的 Focus on 部分聚焦阅读技巧与策略；本册的 Focus on 部分教会学生什么是批判性阅读，什么是批判性思维，两者之间是什么关系，以及如何对语篇进行批判性解读和分析。每个单元由两篇课文组成，两篇课文在知识领域方面都有相关性，单元主题涉及政治、历史、文化、科学、货币与财富等不同领域，使学生在学习英语的同时拓宽知识面。一般来说，A 篇侧重学术性，B 篇

侧重生活性。出于对词汇分布的考虑，选取的材料多是学术性文章，均选自英文原版书刊，难度较大，篇幅也较长，这样不仅可使学生快速扩大词汇量，也可使学生进入国外大学后能顺利衔接大学的学习。

每一篇课文都由 Power of Words、Text 和 Exercises 三部分组成。Power of Words 将课文里本阶段 2 000 个单词内的生词分为 Core Words 和 Words for Self-study 两部分：Core Words 主要是动词、形容词和一些比较难以理解的名词等重点词汇；其他非重点词汇则放在了 Words for Self-study 里，要求学生自己通过查词典等方式学习掌握其意思和用法，提高自学能力。需要指出的是，每篇课文里都出现了一定数量的未包含在 11 000 个词汇量以内的单词，因此学完本套教材之后，学生的基本词汇量将远远超过 11 000。

每篇课文都需要精读，要求学生理解并掌握课文。相应地，教材的课后练习也是以阅读理解和词汇练习为主。每篇课文后的 Reading Practice 对学生如何读课文及应达到什么程度都提出了具体要求。坚持学完本套教材之后，学生的阅读速度和阅读理解水平必将有一个大的突破。部分练习旨在检查学生对课文的理解程度，例如 Translation Practice 和 Paraphrase，没有真正理解课文的内容是无法做好这部分练习的。另外，Vocabulary Journey、Phrases Practice 和 Multiple Choice 等练习项目则是帮助学生进一步熟悉、掌握本单元词汇的意思和用法等。

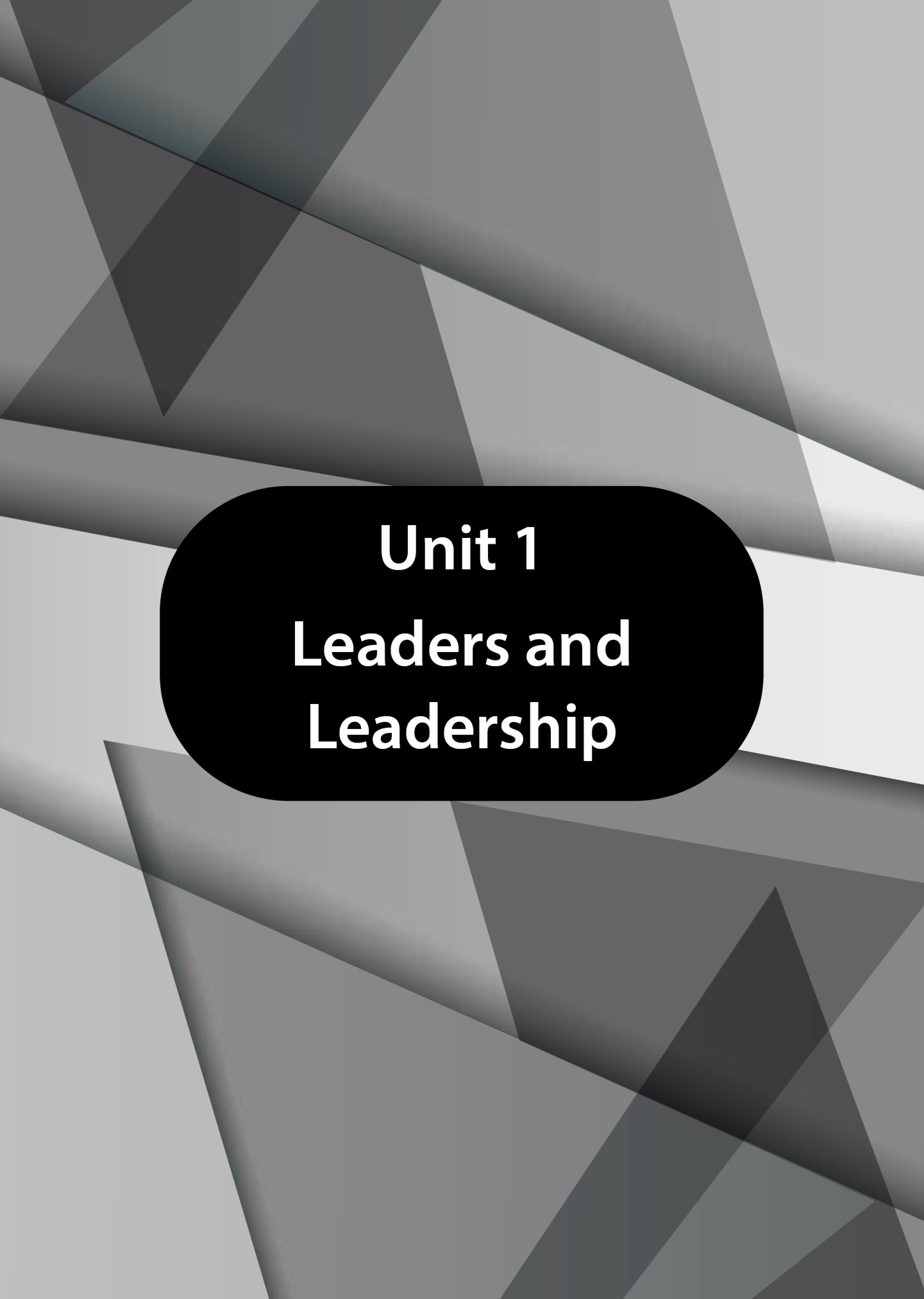
总之，我们希望并相信，通过本套教材的学习，学生的英语阅读水平能取得质的飞跃，从而带动其英语听、说、译各方面能力的大幅提升，为学生日后进入国外大学学习打下坚实的基础。

本教材的编写得到山东大学外国语学院、中国海洋大学外国语学院和国际教育中心、山东师范大学外国语学院、山东科技大学外国语学院、青岛理工大学外国语学院、山东威海外事学院、青岛工学院和山东外贸职业学院以及清华大学出版社的鼎力相助，尤其是山东中英国际工程图书有限公司的资助，在此一并感谢。

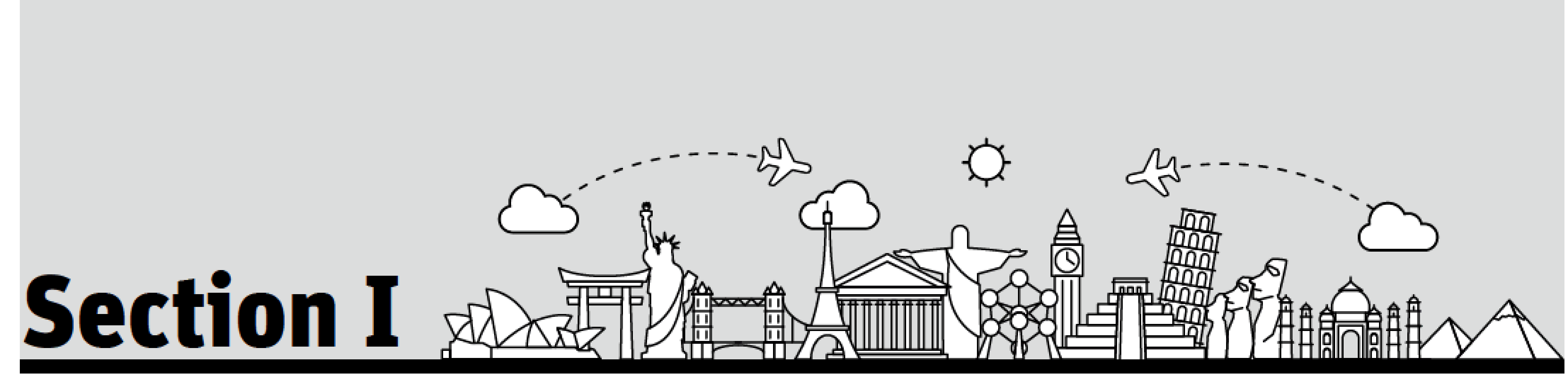
编者

2018 年 8 月

目　录



Unit 1
Leaders and Leadership



Section I

Focus on Critical Thinking and Critical Reading (1)

What Is Critical Thinking?

Thinking is a purposeful, organized cognitive process that we use to make sense of our world. What is critical thinking?

Critical thinking is the objective analysis of facts to form a judgment. The subject is complex, and there are several different definitions which generally include the rational, skeptical, unbiased analysis or evaluation of factual evidence. (Wikipedia)

Critical thinking is that mode of thinking—about any subject, content or problem—in which the thinker improves the quality of his or her thinking by skillfully taking charge of the structures inherent in thinking and imposing intellectual standards upon them. (Paul, Fisher and Noish, 1993)

Open-Minded Approach

The ability to think critically is essential, as it creates new possibilities in problem solving. Being "open-minded" is a large part of critical thinking, allowing a person to not only seek out all possible answers to a problem, but also accept an answer that is different from what was originally expected. Open-minded thinking requires that a person does not assume that his or her way of approaching a situation is always the best or even right. A scientist, for example, must be open to the idea that the results of an experiment will not be what is expected; such results, though challenging, often lead to tremendous and meaningful discoveries.

Rational Considerations

Another aspect of critical thinking is the ability to approach a problem or situation rationally. Rationality requires analyzing all known information, and making judgments or analyses based on the fact or evidence, rather than the opinion or emotion. An honest approach to reasoning requires a thinker to acknowledge personal goals, motives, and emotions that might color his or her opinions or thought processes. Rational thought involves identifying and eliminating prejudices, so that someone can have a fresh and objective approach to a problem.

Empathy

Critical thinking often relies on the ability to view the world in a way that does not focus on the self. Empathizing with a person usually involves a thinker trying to put himself or herself in the place of someone else. This is often done by students of history, for example, in an attempt to see the world as someone would have while living in an ancient civilization or during a violent conflict. Communication skills, teamwork, and cooperation are typically improved through empathy, which makes it valuable in many professional fields.

The most important thing in critical thinking is to figure out the reasons we have for believing something and the implications of our beliefs. We seek to evaluate or assess the validity of the information and opinions we encounter.

Critical thinking is the general term given to a wide range of cognitive and intellectual skills needed to:

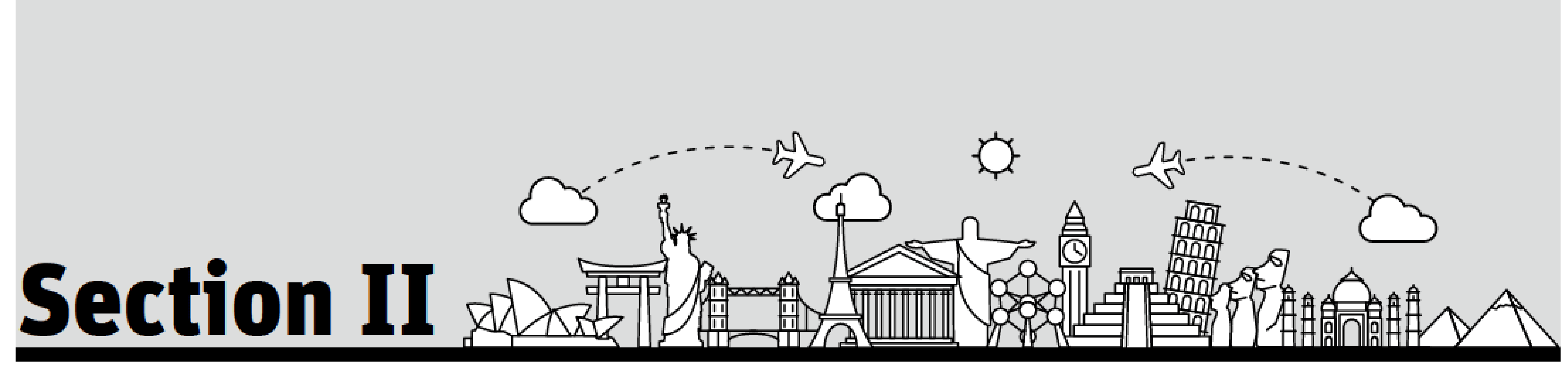
1) Effectively identify, analyze, and evaluate arguments;
2) Discover and overcome personal prejudices and biases;
3) Formulate and present convincing reasons in support of conclusions;
4) Make reasonable, intelligent decisions about what to believe and what to do.

Critical thinking involves analyzing, synthesizing and evaluating an argument or claim. It requires us to deconstruct an argument, bring elements of the argument together in a new form, and judge the strengths and weaknesses of that argument. That requires us to have some skills for critical thinking.

Approaches to Critical Thinking

The approaches to life and living which characterize critical thinking include:

1) Inquisitiveness with regard to a wide range of issues;
2) Concern to become and remain well-informed;
3) Alertness to opportunities to use critical thinking;
4) Trust in the processes of reasoned inquiry;
5) Self-confidence in one's own abilities to reason;
6) Open-mindedness regarding divergent world views;
7) Flexibility in considering alternatives and opinions;
8) Understanding of the opinions of other people;
9) Fair-mindedness in appraising reasoning;
10) Honesty in facing one's own biases, prejudices, stereotypes, or egocentric tendencies;
11) Prudence in suspending, making or altering judgments;
12) Willingness to reconsider and revise views where honest reflection suggests that change is warranted.



Section II

Text A: Leaders and Leadership

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **incite** [ɪn'saɪt] ***vt.*** **(incited/incited/inciting)**

to give an incentive for action; to provoke or stir up; to urge on; to cause to act

synonym	stir; motivate; actuate; propel; prompt; instigate; prod
antonym	restrain; depress; suppress
word family	incitation; incitement
related phrase	incite sb. to sth.; incite sb. to do sth.; incite chaos; incite anger

Example 1 He incited his fellow citizens to take their revenge.

Example 2 A private bid could incite hostile buyers to action.

② **subjugate** ['sʌbdʒugeɪt] ***vt.*** **(subjugated/subjugated/subjugating)**

to put down by force or intimidation; to make sb./sth. subservient; to force to submit or subdue

synonym	persecute; submit; master; conquer
word family	subjugation
related phrase	subjugate sb. to sb./sth.; subjugate fire; subjugated people/nation/country

Example 1 Their costly and futile attempt to subjugate the Afghans lasted just 10 years.

Example 2 After having been subjugated to ambition, your maternal instincts are at last starting to assert themselves.

③ **submissive** [səb'mɪsɪv] ***adj.***

obeying someone without arguing

synonym	followed; compliant; obedient
antonym	insubordinate; incompliant; indocile; unconformable
word family	submit; submission; submissiveness
related phrase	the submissive behaviour

Example 1 Most doctors want their patients to be submissive.

Example 2 The boss didn't like them not because they are competent and capable but because they are submissive or docile.

④ **oust** [aʊst] ***vt.*** **(ousted/ousted/ousting)**

to remove and replace; to remove from a position or office

synonym shear; expel; throw off
word family ouster
related phrase oust of; oust from; oust sb. from sth.; oust from one's post; oust from power

Example 1 The leaders have been ousted from power by nationalists.

Example 2 The chairman was ousted after he misappropriated funds.

⑤ **contrive** [kən'traɪv] ***vt./vi.*** **(contrived/contrived/contriving)**

to make or work out a plan for; to come up with (an idea, plan, explanation, theory, or principle) after a mental effort; to succeed in making something happen, often by tricking someone

synonym design; devise; excogitate; formulate; forge; form
word family contrived; contrivance; contriver
related phrase contrive to do sth.

Example 1 You contrive to finish the report as soon as possible.

Example 2 The oil companies were accused of contriving a shortage of petrol to justify price increases.

⑥ **hanker** ['hæŋkə] ***vi.*** **(hankered/hankered/hankering)**

to want something very much; to desire strongly or persistently

synonym long; yearn
antonym disgust; detest; dislike
word family hankering
related phrase hanker after/for sth.; hanker to do sth.

Example 1 I hanker after a corner because it serves to bring calmness to my mind.

Example 2 So people who hanker to express their own views find that their voices are muffled.

⑦ **conquest** ['kɒŋkwest] ***n.***

the act of getting control of a country by fighting; something that is won in a war

synonym prize; defeat; capture
antonym failure; loss
word family conquer
related phrase make a conquest of ...; the conquest of space; Empire Conquest

Example 1 He had led the conquest of southern Poland in 1939.

Example 2 The pianist made a conquest of every audience for which she played.

⑧ **amass** [ə'mæs] ***vt./vi.*** **(amassed/amassed/amassing)**

to collect or gather; to collect a large amount of something

synonym accumulate; cumulate; gather; collect; pile up; store up
antonym consume; deplete; scatter; disperse

word family mass
related phrase amass a (one's) fortune; amass money

Example 1 For 25 years, Darwin amassed evidence to support his theories.

Example 2 The students amassed for the parade.

⑨ **subjugation** [ˌsʌbdʒu'geɪʃn] ***n.***

forced submission to control by others; the act of conquering by cruelty

synonym conquest; occupation; restraint; oppression
antonym dominance; struggle; liberty
word family subjugate
related phrase the national subjugation; the armed subjugation; the temporary subjugation

Example 1 Despite a heavy propaganda campaign to suggest otherwise, the subjugation of the Taliban has been a failure.

Example 2 We know that, like South Africa, the United States had to overcome centuries of racial subjugation.

⑩ **cataclysmic** [ˌkætə'klɪzmɪk] ***adj.***

changing a situation or society very greatly, especially in an unpleasant way; being severely destructive

synonym catastrophic; devastating
antonym slight; tiny
word family cataclysmal; cataclysm
related phrase cataclysmic events; a cataclysmic nuclear war

Example 1 Few had expected that change to be as cataclysmic as it turned out to be.

Example 2 Some of the world's cataclysmic disasters are associated with climate change, such as floods and massive landslides.

⑪ **belligerent** [bə'lɪdʒərənt] ***n.***

someone who fights (or is fighting)

synonym combatant; battler; fighter
word family belligerence; belligerency
related phrase belligerent force; a belligerent attitude

Example 1 The belligerents were due, once again, to try to settle their differences.

Example 2 Each belligerent calls his own battle line a bastion of iron.

carnage ['kɑːnɪdʒ] ***n.***

the violent killing of large numbers of people, especially in a war

synonym holocaust; bloodbath; slaughter

related phrase primal carnage

Example 1 We seldom discuss the carnage because we don't dare puncture the illusion of safety.

Example 2 History reduces the carnage to impersonal numbers.

⑬ **repudiate** [rɪ'pjuːdɪeɪt] ***vt.*** **(repudiated/repudiated/repudiating)**

to strongly disagree with someone or something, and do not want to be connected with someone or something in any way; to refuse to acknowledge, ratify, or recognize as valid

synonym renounce; refuse; deny
antonym accept; admit
word family repudiation
related phrase repudiate a contract; repudiate a debt; repudiate with stern words

Example 1 Leaders urged people to turn out in large numbers to repudiate the violence.

Example 2 He repudiated all offers of friendship.

⑭ **debilitating** [dɪ'bɪlɪteɪtɪŋ] ***adj.***

impairing the strength and vitality; making one's body or mind become gradually weaker

synonym weak; sick; devitalizing
antonym strengthening; boosting; enhancing
word family debilitate; debilitated; debilitation; debility
related phrase a debilitating disease

Example 1 The debilitating disease made him too weak to work.

Example 2 Historically, social order has been secured by violence, fear or debilitating poverty.

⑮ **precursor** [prɪ'kɜːsə] ***n.***

a similar thing that happened or existed before it; something that led to the existence or development of that thing

synonym forerunner; vaunt-courier
antonym successor
word family precursory; precursive
related phrase precursor substance; precursor compound

Example 1 He said that the deal should not be seen as a precursor to a merger.

Example 2 Error is often the precursor of what is correct.

⑯ **annul** [ə'nʌl] ***vt.*** **(annulled/annulled/annulling)**

to declare invalid, so that legally one is considered never to have existed

synonym abolish
antonym establish
word family annulment
related phrase annul a marriage; annul a contract

Example 1 The effect of the statute was to annul this covenant.

Example 2 Opposition party leaders are now pressing for the entire election to be annulled.

⑰ **prostrate** ['prɒstreɪt] *vt.* **(prostrated/prostrated/prostrating)**

to lie down flat on the ground, on one's front, usually to show respect for God or a person in authority; to throw down or strike down, so not to be able to do anything

synonym	strike down; bow down
word family	prostrated; prostration
related phrase	prostrate oneself; prostrate with; prostrate (oneself) with frustration

Example 1 They prostrated themselves before the king.

Example 2 The trees were prostrated by the gales yesterday.

⑱ **assassin** [ə'sæsɪn] ***n.***

a person who assassinates or kills someone

synonym	stabber; triggerman
word family	assassinate; assassinator; assassination
related phrase	the would-be assassin

Example 1 He saw the shooting and memorized the licence plate of the assassin's car.

Example 2 He'll never hire out as assassin with you.

⑲ **embossment** [ɪm'bɒsmənt] ***n.***

an impression produced by pressure or printing; sculpture consisting of shapes carved on a surface so as to stand out from the surrounding background

synonym	rilievo; relievo
word family	emboss
related phrase	the embossment effect; the decorative embossment

Example 1 The embossment is one of the treasures of architecture arts.

Example 2 The souvenir medal is made of pure silver, adopting the embossment color printing technology.

⑳ **stupendous** [stjuː'pendəs] ***adj.***

being surprisingly impressive or large

synonym	colossal; prodigious; tremendous
antonym	tiny; insignificant
word family	stupendously
related phrase	stupendous changes; stupendous strength; a stupendous man; stupendous achievements

Example 1 This stupendous novel keeps you gripped to the end.

Example 2 Kotto gives a stupendous performance.

㉑ **barbarian** [bɑːˈbeərɪən] ***adj.***

being wild, cruel and uncivilized

synonym predatory; barbaric; savage; uncivilized; uncivilised; wild
antonym civilized
word family barbaric; barbarous; barbarize; barbarization
related phrase barbarian invaders

Example 1 We need to fight this barbarian attitude to science.

Example 2 We oppose and condemn the barbarian aggression by Israel on Palestine, and demand Israel fully withdraw from the Palestinian area.

㉒ **pinnacle** [ˈpɪnəkəl] ***n.***

a pointed piece of stone or rock that is high above the ground; a particular area of life, the highest point

synonym climax; peak; summit
antonym trough
word family pinnacled
related phrase at the pinnacle of sth.; the pinnacle of academic achievement

Example 1 A walker fell 80 feet from a rocky pinnacle.

Example 2 She was still at the pinnacle of her career.

㉓ **adhere to** (formal English)

to keep in doing something

synonym stick to; insist on; cling to
related phrase adhere to sth.; adhere to principles; adhere to a belief

Example 1 We adhere to the principle that everyone should be treated fairly.

Example 2 She adhered to what she had said at the meeting.

㉔ **ward off**

to prevent the occurrence of something; to prevent from affecting someone, or harming someone

synonym head off; stave off
related phrase ward sth. off; ward off danger; ward off an assault; ward off disease

Example 1 She may have put up a fight to try to ward off her assailant.

Example 2 Warm clothing and good food helps to ward off a cold.

㉕ **be afflicted with**

to suffer from

synonym suffer from
related phrase be afflicted with illness; be afflicted with a conscience; be afflicted with a sense of inferiority

Example 1 Only other sufferers know what it is like to be afflicted with this disease.

Example 2 We will always be afflicted with the vices of a political constitution.

㉖ be fraught with

to be full of; to be filled with

synonym be full of; be filled with; be stuffed with; be loaded with

related phrase be fraught with danger; be fraught with grim possibilities; an event fraught with significance

Example 1 The coming months will be fraught with fateful decisions.

Example 2 Making the ceasefire stick is likely to be fraught with difficulties.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

Albania	Algeria	autocrat	backyard	Balkan
battlefield	clove	condescend	condole	congeal
connive	counterfeit	decapitate	decontaminate	defiant
deft	demarcate	diffident	disfigure	dynasty
espionage	ethnography	evade	fatherland	fatuous
feudal	foist	genocide	hellish	heroine
intrusive	itinerary	Judaism	Kaleidoscope	languish
Laos	multilateral	mutiny	Nicaragua	ottoman
outlaw	outstrip	pact	papal	plunder
postscript	proactive	prostration	quasi	sabbath
Slovenia	stave	subversive	Tanzania	tentacle
tribune	truce	Uganda	vegetation	Venezuela
vitality	warder	warlord		

Part 2 Text

Leaders and Leadership

What does it mean to be a leader? Does it require that a person hold political office and rule masses? Does it include only those who made a positive impact on society or also those who wreaked devastation and destruction? Do humanitarians or activists who never held office but who had the ability to incite thousands and millions with a vision of a different, better world merit inclusion?

Many very different types of leaders are profiled in this book, which is arranged chronologically by date of birth. It ends with Osama bin Laden[1] and Barack Obama[2]. One is a

mastermind of terrorist acts that have killed thousands and another a politician who overcame the weight of hundreds of years of slavery and discrimination against blacks to become the first African American elected president of the most powerful country in the world. They are opposites in almost every imaginable way. Bin Laden leads a global jihad[3] against Western values, and Obama, the symbolic leader of the West, was the recipient of the 2009 Nobel Peace Prize. They are linked, however, in their ability to inspire loyal followers—in bin Laden's case to commit destruction and in Obama's to believe that ordinary citizens, acting together, can change a sometimes seemingly bleak world for the better—and in their lasting impact on the world in which they and future generations will live.

The world today has some 6.7 billion people, most of whom adhere to one religion or another. In the 13th century BC, Moses delivered his people from Egyptian slavery and received the Ten Commandments[4], establishing Judaism[5] as the world's first great monotheistic religion. Although Jews make up but a small fraction of the world's population today, monotheism[6] flourishes, with Christians and Muslims together accounting for more than half the world's population.

Jesus'[7] Christian followers were once subjugated by the Romans until Constantine the Great[8] became the first Roman emperor to convert to Christianity; now, more than two billion people call themselves Christians. In the 7th century Muhammad[9] founded Islam, and he is considered by Muslims to be the last of the Great Prophets; his name is now invoked several billion times a day by nearly 1.5 billion Muslims around the world. Others, such as Confucius[10] in 6th–5th-century-BC China and Buddha[11] in the area around Nepal and India about the same time, have inspired hundreds of millions of people, and their teachings remain central to the daily lives of vast numbers today. And, though these figures still have relevance thousands of years after their deaths, the world continues to produce religious leaders—Martin Luther and his Reformation in Europe, Ruhollah Khomeini[12] and his Islamic Revolution in Iran, John Paul II and his more than 25-year leadership as head of the Roman Catholic Church.

While some have founded religions, others have founded countries. George Washington is almost universally revered in the United States as the "Father of His Country", securing independence on the battlefield and then turning down an offer to become king. The American Revolution began the process of independence in the so-called New World, which had been submissive to colonial domination by European powers. Less than 40 years after the American Revolution had been won, another American revolution of sorts, led by Simón Bolívar[13] in Latin America, helped oust Spanish rule there. Bolívar's name is still a symbol to revolutionary leaders in Latin America. Indeed, Hugo Chávez[14] leads his own "Bolivarian Revolution" in Venezuela today.

In Europe, too, new countries were contrived in what are generally thought of as ancient lands—Giuseppe Garibaldi[15] helped create a unified Kingdom of Italy in 1861, while Otto von Bismarck[16] helped forge a German empire in 1871. Old empires fell away and were replaced with modern states in the 20th century. Vladimir Lenin[17] established in Russia the world's first communist regime, one that, though it collapsed nearly 75 years later, continues to have a lasting influence on our world. Out of the ashes of the Ottoman Empire[18], Kemal Atatürk[19] helped found modern Turkey. Eamon de Valera won Irish independence from Great Britain. Ibn Sa'ūd created a country, Saudi Arabia, that bears his family's name. And, Mao Zedong[20] led a 30-year struggle in China, creating a communist state in 1949 that 60 years later continues to rule over the world's largest population. Sometimes individuals have led peaceful resistance movements that have

freed their people—as Mohandas Gandhi[21] did in India. After World War II, as peoples hankered to become free, David Ben-Gurion[22] in Israel, Kwame Nkrumah[23] in Ghana, Julius Nyerere[24] in Tanzania, and Ho Chi Minh[25] in Vietnam fought for and achieved their country's independence in different ways. Nelson Mandela[26] in South Africa is yet another story of resistance—sometimes armed and sometimes peaceful. He was jailed from 1964 to 1990 by his apartheid government, which legally discriminated against the overwhelmingly black population in favour of minority whites, before being released, helping end apartheid, ushering in a peaceful transition to democracy, and becoming the first black president of the new, multiracial South Africa.

Some of the world's greatest leaders have earned their place here from victories—and defeats—on the battlefield. Alexander the Great[27] won a vast 4th-century-BC empire that eventually stretched from Europe to India. Attila[28] commanded the Huns, leading them in invasions against the Balkans, Greece, and Italy. His empire, however, died shortly after he did in 453 AD. Charlemagne[29] had himself crowned Holy Roman emperor in 800, following military conquests that expanded his kingdom outward from what is modern-day Germany. A millennium later, Napoleon[30] led French forces in Europe to stunning victories, but his defeats in Russia and, later, at Waterloo proved his downfall. Outside of Europe, Chinggis Khan[31] was one of the greatest warriors the world has ever seen, leading his Mongols in amassing an empire that stretched from Mongolia to the Adriatic Sea in the 12th–13th century. At about the same time, Saladin, founder of the Ayyubid dynasty, fought in the Middle East against Christian Crusaders, capturing Jerusalem to end nearly nine decades of subjugation by Christians.

The 20th century brought advances in technology—making war even more cataclysmic than it was during Napoleon's time. It is estimated that some 35 to 60 million people died during World War II, and for this reason the leaders of the major belligerents usually top any list of influential leaders. Italy's II Duce, Benito Mussolini[32], the world's first fascist dictator, joined an alliance in Europe with Germany's Adolf Hitler[33] under whose dictatorial rule most of Europe fell and some six million Jews died in the carnage. Together, Hitler and Mussolini formed the Axis with Japan in the Pacific. Hirohito, emperor of Japan, though playing a limited political role, was the symbolic leader of his country. His national radio address in 1945, the first time many Japanese had heard his voice, announced the country's surrender, and the next year he repudiated his quasi-divine status, helping to engineer Japanese democracy after the war. Franklin D. Roosevelt[34], though afflicted with debilitating polio, managed to win re-election to four terms as president of the United States and led the Allies. He was joined by Winston Churchill[35], whose steely nerves helped calm Britain during relentless bombing by the German Luftwaffe, while Charles de Gaulle led the Free French against German occupation. A fourth ally was Joseph Stalin[36], initially signing a pact with Hitler, he joined the Allies following Hitler's invasion of the Soviet Union.

From the ashes of World War II came dreams to build a Europe that would be free from the traditional English-French-German rivalry that had plunged the continent into two world wars. Jean Monnet and Robert Schuman may never have led a government, but they helped found the European Coal and Steel Community, the precursor of today's European Union. The EU now encompasses 27 countries—from Portugal in the west, Malta in the south, Finland in the north, and Romania in the east—helping to integrate the continent both politically and economically and ward off war.

Upholding the European ideal was but one way in which statesmen and activists have

influenced the arc of history without ever possessing formal power. Frederick Douglass, one of the greatest human rights leaders of the 19th century, helped lead the American abolition movement. Though slavery had been annulled in the United States in 1865, African Americans still suffered from discrimination, so in the next century Martin Luther King Jr.[37], used nonviolent protest and civil disobedience, modeled on Gandhi's movement in India, to achieve political equality before he was prostrated by an assassin's bullet in 1968. Eleanor Roosevelt, wife of Franklin, was a tireless campaigner for human rights, playing a major role in drafting and gaining adoption of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights—considered humanity's Magna Carta (Great Charter) to many.

Eleanor Roosevelt was but one woman whose embossment has been made on a society traditionally dominated by men. One of her predecessors as first lady, Abigail Adams, wrote in 1776 in a letter to her husband, John Adams, the great revolutionary and the second president of the United States, "I desire you would remember the ladies and be more generous and favorable to them than your ancestors." (Neither Adams nor her husband made the list of 100.) Too often, however, women have not been remembered in history. Still, their contributions have been stupendous. Cleopatra, who ruled as queen of Egypt for decades, eventually committed suicide, and history was rewritten to portray her as barbarian and immoral rather than as the woman she was: strong and smart, a philosopher and a scientist. Women were also discriminated against in the hereditary monarchies of Europe, which favoured males in deciding who would rule. Though her father, Henry VIII, had divorced or had killed several wives to find one who would produce a male heir, Elizabeth I eventually became queen of England, ruling for 45 years and giving her name to an age. Catherine II the Great of Russia was empress for more than three decades, and during her time she brought Russia into full participation in the political and cultural life of Europe. While Elizabeth and Catherine ruled from palaces, Joan of Arc[38] earned her mark on the battlefield. She died at the age of 19, burned at the stake, but before then she led the French to win improbable battles, mostly due to the confidence that her men had in her, despite her youth, gender, and lack of military know-how. Margaret Thatcher[39], the "Iron Lady", became Britain's first woman prime minister in 1979 and helped win the Cold War. Other strong women have reached the pinnacle of power only to be murdered. Indira Gandhi[40] of India served four terms as prime minister of the world's largest democracy but then was assassinated by extremists, while Benazir Bhutto[41], in neighbouring Pakistan, was the first woman in modern history elected to lead a predominantly Muslim country, and while campaigning in 2007 for what would most likely have been another term as prime minister was killed by an assassin. Today, Aung San Suu Kyi[42], winner of the 1991 Nobel Peace Prize, continues the fight for freedom, the face of hope in an authoritarian Myanmar (Burma) whose leadership has mostly kept her under house arrest.

Selecting the most influential anything is inherently fraught with difficulties, and choosing those individuals who have left a lasting impression on the world—both during their times and long after they perished—was nearly impossible. The stories that follow represent both the best—and the worst—of humanity and provide an itinerary across time and across the globe—a trek that will provide keen insight into the art of leadership and the countless followers who were drawn into a cause, an upheaval, or a new dawn.

(Adapted from *The 100 Most Influential World Leaders of All Time*)

Notes

① Osama bin Laden

Osama bin Laden (March 10, 1957–May 2, 2011) was the founder of al-Qaeda, the organization that claimed responsibility for the September 11 attacks on the United States, along with numerous other mass-casualty attacks worldwide. He was a Saudi Arabian, a member of the wealthy bin Laden family, and an ethnic Yemeni Kindite.

② Barack Obama

Barack Obama (August 4, 1961–) is an American politician who served as the 44th President of the United States from 2009 to 2017. He is the first African American to have served as president, as well as the first born outside the contiguous United States. He previously served in the U.S. Senate representing Illinois from 2005 to 2008, and in the Illinois State Senate from 1997 to 2004. Obama was born in Honolulu, Hawaii, two years after the territory was admitted to the Union as the 50th state. He grew up mostly in Hawaii, but also spent one year of his childhood in Washington State and four years in Indonesia. After graduating from Columbia University in 1983, he worked as a community organizer in Chicago. In 1988 Obama enrolled in Harvard Law School, where he was the first black president of the Harvard Law Review. After graduation, he became a civil rights attorney and professor, teaching constitutional law at the University of Chicago Law School from 1992 to 2004. Obama represented the 13th District for three terms in the Illinois Senate from 1997 to 2004, when he ran for the U.S. Senate. Obama received national attention in 2004, with his unexpected March primary win, his well-received July Democratic National Convention keynote address, and his landslide November election to the Senate. In 2008, Obama was nominated for president, a year after his campaign began, and after a close primary campaign against Hillary Clinton. He was elected over Republican John McCain, and was inaugurated on January 20, 2009. Nine months later, Obama was named the 2009 Nobel Peace Prize laureate.

③ jihad

Jihad is an Arabic word which literally means striving or struggling, especially with a praiseworthy aim. It can have many shades of meaning in an Islamic context, such as struggle against one's evil inclinations, or efforts toward the moral betterment of society. In classical Islamic law, the term refers to armed struggle against unbelievers, while modernist Islamic scholars generally equate military jihad with defensive warfare. In Sufi and pious circles, spiritual and moral jihad has been traditionally emphasized under the name of greater jihad. The term has gained additional attention in recent decades through its use by terrorist groups.

④ the Ten Commandments

The Ten Commandments, also known as the Decalogue, are a set of biblical principles relating to ethics and worship, which play a fundamental role in Judaism, Christianity, and Islam. The commandments include instructions to worship only God, to honour one's parents, and to keep the sabbath, as well as prohibitions against idolatry, blasphemy, murder, adultery, theft, dishonesty, and coveting. Different religious groups follow different traditions for interpreting and numbering them.

⑤ Judaism

Judaism encompasses the religion, philosophy, culture and way of life of the Jewish people. Judaism is an ancient monotheistic religion, with the Torah as its foundational text (part of the larger text known as the Tanakh or Hebrew Bible), and supplemental oral tradition represented by later texts such as the Midrash and the Talmud. Judaism is considered by religious Jews to be the expression of the covenantal relationship that God established with the Children of Israel. With between 14.5 and 17.4 million adherents worldwide, Judaism is the tenth-largest religion in the world.

⑥ monotheism

Monotheism has been defined as the belief in the existence of only one god that created the world, is all-powerful and interferes in the world. Another more broad definition of monotheism is the belief in one god. A distinction may be made between exclusive monotheism, and both inclusive monotheism and pluriform monotheism which, while recognising various distinct gods, postulate some underlying unity.

⑦ Jesus

Jesus (c. 4 BC–c. 30/33 AD), also referred to as Jesus of Nazareth or Jesus Christ, was a Jewish preacher and religious leader who became the central figure of Christianity. Christians believe him to be the Son of God and the awaited Messiah (Christ) prophesied in the *Old Testament*.

⑧ Constantine the Great

Constantine the Great (February 27, 272 AD–May 22, 337 AD), also known as Constantine I or Saint Constantine, was a Roman Emperor from 306 to 337 AD. Constantine was the son of Flavius Valerius Constantius, a Roman Army officer, and his consort Helena. His father became Caesar, the deputy emperor in the west, in 293 AD. Constantine was sent east, where he rose through the ranks to become a military tribune under the emperors Diocletian and Galerius. In 305, Constantius was raised to the rank of Augustus, senior western emperor, and Constantine was recalled west to campaign under his father in Britannia (Britain). Acclaimed as emperor by the army at Eboracum (modern-day York) after his father's death in 306 AD, Constantine emerged victorious in a series of civil wars against the emperors Maxentius and Licinius to become the sole ruler of both west and east by 324 AD.

⑨ Muhammad

Muhammad (c. 570 AD–June 8, 632 AD) is the prophet of Islam. From a secular historical perspective, he was a religious, political, and social reformer who founded Islam. From an Islamic perspective, he was God's Messenger sent to confirm the essential teachings of monotheism preached previously by Adam, Abraham, Moses, Jesus, and other prophets. He is viewed as the final prophet of God in all branches of Islam, except some modern denominations. Muhammad united Arabia into a single Muslim polity and ensured that his teachings, practices and the Quran formed the basis of Islamic religious belief.

⑩ Confucius

Confucius (September 28, 551 BC–April 11, 479 BC) was a Chinese teacher, editor, politician, and philosopher of the Spring and Autumn period of Chinese history. The philosophy of Confucius emphasized personal and governmental morality, correctness of social relationships, justice and sincerity. His followers competed successfully with many other schools during the Hundred Schools of Thought era only to be suppressed in favor of the Legalists during the Qin Dynasty. Following the victory of Han over Chu after the collapse of Qin, Confucius' thoughts received official sanction and were further developed into a system known in the West as Confucianism.

⑪ Buddha

Buddha (c. 563 BC/480 BC–c. 483 BC/400 BC), also known as Siddhārtha Gautama, Shakyamuni Buddha, or simply the Buddha, was an ascetic and sage, on whose teachings Buddhism was founded. He is believed to have lived and taught mostly in the eastern part of ancient India sometime between the sixth and fourth centuries BC.

⑫ Ruhollah Khomeini

Ruhollah Khomeini (September 24, 1902–June 3, 1989) was an Iranian Shia Islam religious leader, philosopher, revolutionary and politician. He was the founder of the Islamic Republic of Iran and the leader of the 1979 Iranian Revolution that saw the overthrow of the Pahlavi monarchy and Mohammad Reza Pahlavi, the Shah of Iran. Following the revolution, Khomeini became the country's Supreme Leader, a position created in the constitution of the Islamic Republic as the highest-ranking political and religious authority of the nation, which he held until his death. He was succeeded by Ali Khamenei. John Paul II second Papal conclave of 1978.

⑬ Simón Bolívar

Simón Bolívar (July 24, 1783–December 17, 1830) was a Venezuelan military and political leader who played a leading role in the establishment of Venezuela, Bolivia, Colombia, Ecuador, Peru and Panama as sovereign states, independent of Spanish rule.

⑭ Hugo Chávez

Hugo Chávez (July 28, 1954–March 5, 2013) was a Venezuelan politician who served as the 64th President of Venezuela from 1999 to 2013. He was also the leader of the Fifth Republic Movement from its foundation in 1997 until 2007, when it merged with several other parties to form the United Socialist Party of Venezuela (PSUV), which he led until 2012.

⑮ Giuseppe Garibaldi

Giuseppe Garibaldi (July 4, 1807–June 2, 1882) was an Italian general, politician and nationalist who played a large role in the history of Italy. He is considered, with Camillo Benso, Count of Cavour, Victor Emmanuel II of Italy and Giuseppe Mazzini, as one of Italy's "fathers of the fatherland".

⑯ Otto von Bismarck

Otto von Bismarck (April 1, 1815–July 30, 1898) was a conservative Prussian statesman who

dominated German and European affairs from the 1860s until 1890. In the 1860s, he engineered a series of wars that unified the German states, significantly and deliberately excluding Austria, into a powerful German Empire under Prussian leadership. With that accomplished by 1871, he skillfully used balance of power diplomacy to maintain Germany's position in a Europe which, despite many disputes and war scares, remained at peace. For historian Eric Hobsb-awm, it was Bismarck who "remained undisputed world champion at the game of multilateral diplomatic chess for almost twenty years after 1871, [and] devoted himself exclusively, and successfully, to maintaining peace between the powers".

⑰ Vladimir Lenin

Vladimir Lenin (April 22, 1870–January 21, 1924) was a Russian communist revolutionary, politician, and political theorist. He served as head of government of the Russian Republic from 1917 to 1918, of the Russian Soviet Federative Socialist Republic from 1918 to 1924, and of the Soviet Union from 1922 to 1924. Under his administration, Russia and then the wider Soviet Union became a one-party socialist state governed by the Russian Communist Party. Ideologically a Marxist, he developed political theories known as Leninism.

⑱ the Ottoman Empire

The Ottoman Empire, also known as the Turkish Empire, Ottoman Turkey, was an empire and a great power, founded at the end of the thirteenth century in northwestern Anatolia in the vicinity of Bilecik and Söğüt by the Oghuz Turkish tribal leader Osman I. After 1354, the Ottomans crossed into Europe, and with the conquest of the Balkans, the Ottoman beylik was transformed into a transcontinental empire. The Ottomans ended the Byzantine Empire with the 1453 conquest of Constantinople by Mehmed the Conqueror.

⑲ Kemal Atatürk

Kemal Atatürk (May 19, 1881–November 10, 1938) was a Turkish army officer, revolutionary, and founder of the Republic of Turkey, serving as its first President from 1923 until his death in 1938. His surname, Atatürk (meaning "Father of the Turks"), was granted to him in 1934 and forbidden to any other person by the Turkish parliament.

⑳ Mao Zedong

Mao Zedong or Mao Tse-tung (December 26, 1893–September 9, 1976), also known as Chairman Mao, was a Chinese communist revolutionary and founding father of the People's Republic of China, which he governed as the Chairman of the Communist Party of China from its establishment in 1949, until his death in 1976. His Marxist–Leninist theories, military strategies, and political policies are collectively known as Maoism or Marxism-Leninism-Maoism.

㉑ Mohandas Gandhi

Mohandas Gandhi (October 2, 1869–January 30, 1948) was the preeminent leader of the Indian independence movement in British-ruled India. Employing nonviolent civil disobedience, Gandhi led India to independence and inspired movements for civil rights and freedom across the world. He is unofficially called the Father of the Nation.

㉒ David Ben-Gurion

David Ben-Gurion (October 16, 1886–December 1, 1973) was the primary founder of the State of Israel and the first Prime Minister of Israel. Ben-Gurion's passion for Zionism, which began early in life, led him to become a major Zionist leader and Executive Head of the World Zionist Organization in 1946. As head of the Jewish Agency from 1935 and later president of the Jewish Agency Executive, he was the de facto leader of the Jewish community in Palestine, and largely led its struggle for an independent Jewish state in Mandatory Palestine. On 14 May 1948, he formally proclaimed the establishment of the State of Israel, and was the first to sign the Israeli Declaration of Independence, which he had helped to write. Ben-Gurion led Israel during the 1948 Arab–Israeli War, and united the various Jewish militias into the Israel Defense Forces (IDF). Subsequently, he became known as "Israel's founding father".

㉓ Kwame Nkrumah

Kwame Nkrumah (September 18 or 21, 1909–April, 27, 1972) led Ghana to independence from Britain in 1957 and served as its first prime minister and president. Nkrumah first gained power as leader of the colonial Gold Coast, and held it until he was deposed in 1966.

㉔ Julius Nyerere

Julius Nyerere (April 13, 1922–October 14, 1999) was a Tanzanian statesman who served as the leader of Tanzania, and previously Tanganyika, from 1960 until his retirement in 1985. Nyerere was known by the Swahili honorific Mwalimu or "teacher", his profession prior to politics. He was also referred to as Baba wa Taifa (Father of the Nation). In 1954, he helped form the Tanganyika African National Union, which was instrumental in obtaining independence for Tanganyika.

㉕ Ho Chi Minh

Ho Chi Minh (May 19, 1890–September 2, 1969) was a Vietnamese Communist revolutionary leader who was the prime minister (1945–1955) and president (1945–1969) of the Democratic Republic of Vietnam (North Vietnam). He was a key figure in the foundation of the Democratic Republic of Vietnam in 1945, as well as the People's Army of Vietnam (PAVN) and the Việt Cộng (NLF or VC) during the Vietnam War.

㉖ Nelson Mandela

Nelson Mandela (July 18, 1918–December 5, 2013) was a South African anti-apartheid revolutionary, politician, and philanthropist, who served as President of South Africa from 1994 to 1999. He was the country's first black head of state and the first elected in a fully representative democratic election. His government focused on dismantling the legacy of apartheid by tackling institutionalised racism and fostering racial reconciliation. Ideologically an African nationalist and socialist, he served as President of the African National Congress (ANC) party from 1991 to 1997.

㉗ Alexander the Great

Alexander the Great (July 20/21, 356 BC–June 10/11, 323 BC) was a king of the Ancient Greek kingdom of Macedon and a member of the Argead dynasty. He was born in Pella in 356 BC and succeeded his father Philip II to the throne at the age of twenty. He spent most of his

ruling years on an unprecedented military campaign through Asia and northeast Africa, and he had created one of the largest empires of the ancient world by the age of thirty, stretching from Greece to northwestern India. He was undefeated in battle and is widely considered one of history's most successful military commanders.

28 Attila

Attila (c. 406–453), frequently referred to as Attila the Hun, was the ruler of the Huns from 434 until his death in March 453. Attila was a leader of the Hunnic Empire, a tribal confederation consisting of Huns, Ostrogoths, and Alans among others, on the territory of Central and Eastern Europe.

29 Charlemagne

Charlemagne (April 2, 742/747/748–January 28, 814), numbered Charles I, was the King of the Franks from 768, King of the Lombards from 774 and Emperor of the Romans from 800. He united much of Europe during the early Middle Ages. He was the first recognised emperor in western Europe since the fall of the Western Roman Empire three centuries earlier. The expanded Frankish state which Charlemagne founded was called the Carolingian Empire.

30 Napoleon

Napoleon (August 15, 1769–May 5, 1821) was a French military and political leader who rose to prominence during the French Revolution and led several successful campaigns during the French Revolutionary Wars. As Napoleon I, he was Emperor of the French from 1804 until 1814 and again in 1815. Napoleon dominated European and global affairs for more than a decade while leading France against a series of coalitions in the Napoleonic Wars. He won most of these wars and the vast majority of his battles, building a large empire that ruled over continental Europe before its final collapse in 1815. One of the greatest commanders in history, his wars and campaigns are studied at military schools worldwide. Napoleon's political and cultural legacy has ensured his status as one of the most celebrated and controversial leaders in human history.

31 Chinggis Khan

Chinggis Khan (c. 1162–August 18, 1227), born Temüjin, was the founder and Great Khan (Emperor) of the Mongol Empire, which became the largest contiguous empire in history after his death. He came to power by uniting many of the nomadic tribes of Northeast Asia. After founding the Empire and being proclaimed "Genghis Khan", he started the Mongol invasions that conquered most of Eurasia. Campaigns initiated in his lifetime include those against the Qara Khitai, Caucasus, and Khwarazmian, Western Xia and Jin dynasties. These campaigns were often accompanied by wholesale genocide of the civilian populations—especially in the Khwarazmian and Western Xia controlled lands. By the end of his life, the Mongol Empire occupied a substantial portion of Central Asia and China.

32 Benito Mussolini

Benito Mussolini (July 29, 1883–April 28, 1945) was an Italian politician, journalist, and leader of the National Fascist Party, ruling the country as Prime Minister from 1922 to 1943. He ruled constitutionally until 1925, when he dropped all pretense of democracy and set up a legal

dictatorship. Known as II Duce (The Leader), Mussolini was the founder of Italian Fascism.

㉝ Adolf Hitler

Adolf Hitler (April 20, 1889–April 30, 1945) was a German politician who was the leader of the Nazi Party), Chancellor of Germany from 1933 to 1945, and Führer ("Leader") of Nazi Germany from 1934 to 1945. As dictator of the German Reich, he initiated World War II in Europe with the invasion of Poland in September 1939 and was central to the Holocaust.

㉞ Franklin D. Roosevelt

Franklin D. Roosevelt (January 30, 1882–April 12, 1945), commonly known as FDR, was an American statesman and political leader who served as the 32nd President of the United States from 1933 until his death in 1945. A Democrat, he won a record four presidential elections and emerged as a central figure in world events during the mid-20th century. He directed the United States government during most of the Great Depression and World War II. As a dominant leader of his party, he built the New Deal Coalition, realigning American politics into the Fifth Party System and defining American liberalism throughout the middle third of the 20th century. He is often rated by scholars as one of the three greatest U.S. Presidents, along with George Washington and Abraham Lincoln.

㉟ Winston Churchill

Winston Churchill (November 30, 1874–January 24, 1965) was a British statesman who was the Prime Minister of the United Kingdom from 1940 to 1945 and again from 1951 to 1955. Churchill was also an officer in the British Army, non-academic historian, and writer (as Winston S. Churchill). He won the Nobel Prize in Literature in 1953 for his overall, lifetime body of work. In 1963, he was the first of only eight people to be made an honorary citizen of the United States.

㊱ Joseph Stalin

Joseph Stalin (December 18, 1878–March 5, 1953) was the leader of the Soviet Union from the mid-1920s until his death in 1953. Holding the post of the General Secretary of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union, he was effectively the dictator of the state. Stalin was one of the seven members of the first Politburo, founded in 1917 in order to manage the Bolshevik Revolution, alongside Lenin, Zinoviev, Kamenev, Trotsky, Sokolnikov, and Bubnov. Among the Bolshevik revolutionaries who took part in the Russian Revolution of 1917, Stalin was appointed General Secretary of the party's Central Committee in 1922. He managed to consolidate power following the 1924 death of Vladimir Lenin by suppressing Lenin's criticisms (in the postscript of his testament) and expanding the functions of his role, all the while eliminating any opposition. He remained General Secretary until the post was abolished in 1952, concurrently serving as the Premier of the Soviet Union from 1941 until 1953.

㊲ Martin Luther King Jr.

Martin Luther King Jr. (January 15, 1929–April 4, 1968) was an American Baptist minister and activist who became the most visible spokesperson and leader in the civil rights movement from 1954 until his death in 1968. Born in Atlanta, King is best known for advancing civil rights

through nonviolence and civil disobedience, tactics his Christian beliefs and the nonviolent activism of Mahatma Gandhi helped inspire. On October 14, 1964, King won the Nobel Peace Prize for combating racial inequality through nonviolent resistance. In 1968, King was planning a national occupation of Washington, D.C., to be called the Poor People's Campaign, when he was assassinated on April 4 in Memphis, Tennessee. His death was followed by riots in many U.S. cities.

38 Joan of Arc

Joan of Arc (January 6, c. 1412–May 30, 1431), nicknamed "The Maid of Orléans", is considered a heroine of France for her role during the Lancastrian phase of the Hundred Years' War and was canonized as a Roman Catholic saint. Joan of Arc was born to Jacques d'Arc and Isabelle Romée, a peasant family, at Domrémy in north-east France. Joan said she received visions of the Archangel Michael, Saint Margaret, and Saint Catherine of Alexandria instructing her to support Charles VII and recover France from English domination late in the Hundred Years' War. The uncrowned King Charles VII sent Joan to the siege of Orléans as part of a relief mission. She gained prominence after the siege was lifted only nine days later. Several additional swift victories led to Charles VII's coronation at Reims. This long-awaited event boosted French morale and paved the way for the final French victory.

39 Margaret Thatcher

Margaret Thatcher (October 13, 1925–April 8, 2013) was a British stateswoman who was the Prime Minister of the United Kingdom from 1979 to 1990 and the Leader of the Conservative Party from 1975 to 1990. She was the longest-serving British prime minister of the 20th century, and the first woman to have held the office. A Soviet journalist dubbed her the "Iron Lady", a nickname that became associated with her uncompromising politics and leadership style. As Prime Minister, she implemented policies that have come to be known as Thatcherism.

40 Indira Gandhi

Indira Gandhi (November 19, 1917–October 31, 1984) was an Indian politician and central figure of the Indian National Congress party, and to date the only female Prime Minister of India. Indira Gandhi was the daughter of India's first Prime Minister, Jawaharlal Nehru. She served as Prime Minister from 1966 to 1977 and then again from 1980 until her assassination in 1984, making her the second-longest-serving Prime Minister of India after her father.

41 Benazir Bhutto

Benazir Bhutto (June 21, 1953–December 27, 2007) was the 11th Prime Minister of Pakistan and the leader of the centre-left Pakistan Peoples Party. She was the first woman to head a Muslim majority nation. Born in Karachi, her father, Zulfikar, went on to serve as Pakistan's prime minister in the 1970s. Benazir was educated at Harvard and at Oxford, also serving as the first Asian woman to preside over the Oxford Union. After the 1977 military coup which overthrew her father's government, Benazir along with her family were repeatedly placed under house arrest. After her father was hanged in 1979, Benazir, along with her mother Nusrat, went on to lead the Movement for the Restoration of Democracy while still under house arrest. In 1984, Benazir, along with her family, left for London where she resided until 1988. After her

return, Benazir successfully led the People's Party through the 1988 election.

42 **Aung San Suu Kyi**

Aung San Suu Kyi (June 19, 1945–) is a Burmese politician, diplomat, and author who is the first and incumbent State Counsellor and leader of the National League for Democracy. She is also the first woman to serve as Minister for Foreign Affairs of Myanmar, Minister for the President's Office, Minister of Electric Power and Energy, and Minister for Education in President Htin Kyaw's Cabinet, and from 2012 to 2016 was a Pyithu Hluttaw MP for Kawhmu Township.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text A the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. bravo
2. devastating
3. yearn
4. stave off
5. abet
6. massacre
7. enormous
8. turbulence
9. abolish
10. expatriate
11. subdue
12. forerunner

Antonyms

1. dissipate
2. peacekeeping
3. nadir
4. tyrannical
5. impede
6. pure land
7. civilized
8. capitulate

III. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 10 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. Geithner also defended President Barack Obama's decision last week to ________ the chairman of languishing U.S. automaker General Motors.

A) outstrip B) oust C) attest D) foist

2. His deft and skillful handling of the counterfeit issue raised him in a fortnight from the depth to the ________.
A) pinnacle B) tentacle C) manacle D) spectacle

3. Whenever I got any loop-hole to evade the vigilance of my warders and could ________ to reach the backyard I felt I had a holiday indeed.
A) perceive B) connive C) deceive D) contrive

4. Adolf Hitler, the infamous fascist head, had failed to quell or ________ Britain.
A) condole B) congeal C) conquer D) conjure

5. This love of home, the desire to retrieve the country from the grip of the autocrat and his retainers, was what animated a hitherto ________ population.
A) intrusive B) resistive C) submissive D) subversive

6. If both sides accede to sign a truce ________, the war might be over.
A) pact B) tact C) sect D) ject

7. The imperialists use this ideology and culture as a lever for easily realizing their domination and ________, aggression and plunder of other countries.
A) starvation B) conservation C) vegetation D) subjugation

8. Warlords rely on feudal exploitation to ________ wealth.
A) mess B) fess C) amass D) assess

9. Both officers were brought before the courts earlier this month, and charged with ________ to mutiny.
A) incitement B) attachment C) armament D) vestment

10. These diseases blind, maim, disfigure, ________, and disable individuals.
A) demarcate B) debilitate C) decontaminate D) decapitate

IV. Cultural Kaleidoscope

Directions: Please choose the most appropriate answer to each statement.

1. The Star of David, known in Hebrew as the Shield of David, is the symbol of ________.
A) Islamism B) Moslemism C) Judaism D) Hinduism

2. ________ has been well documented for its elusive success in global beauty pageantry, headed by the renowned beauty queen maker Osmel Sousa.
A) Slovenia B) Venezuela C) Albania D) Nicaragua

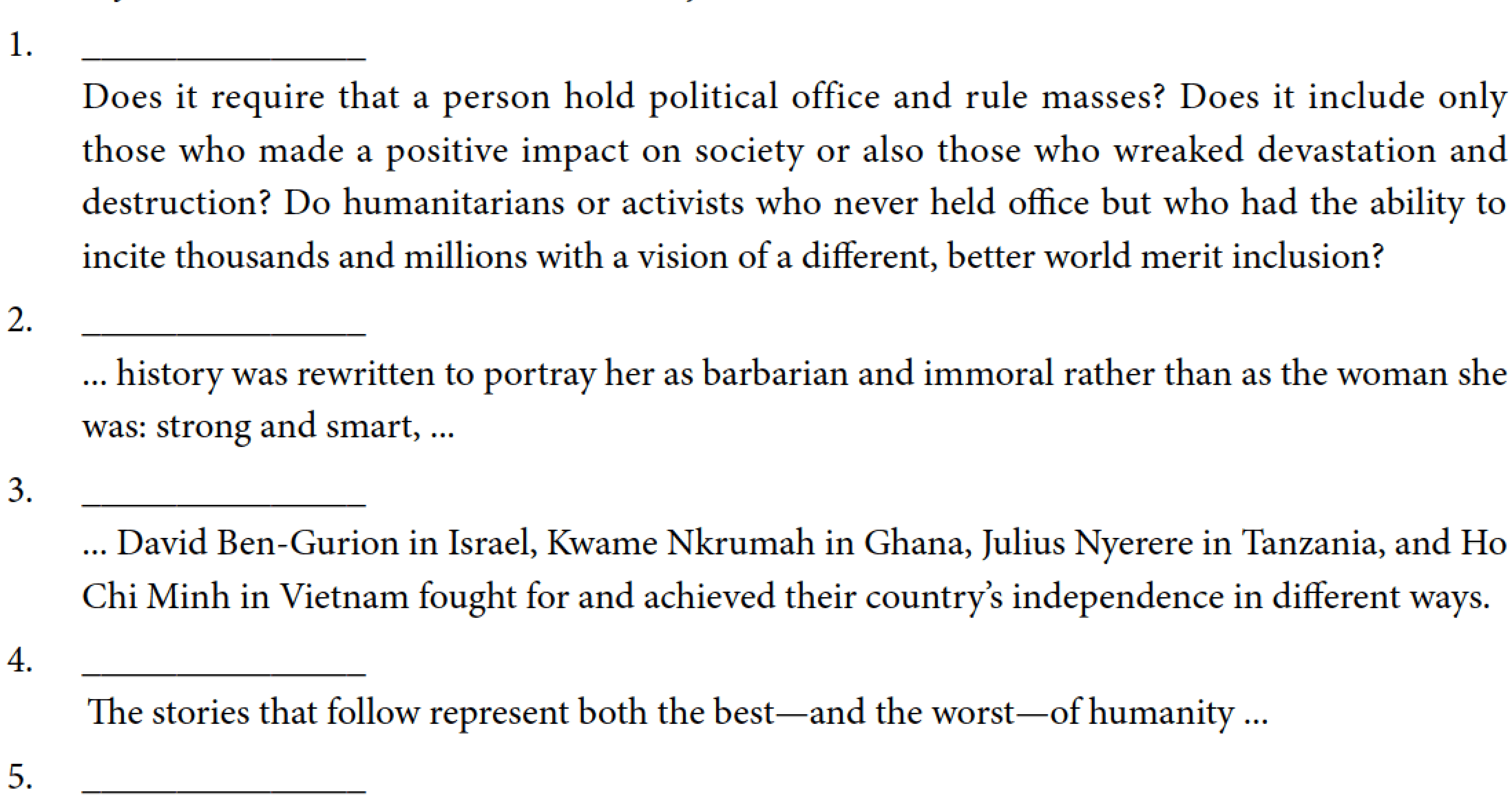
3. Clove is the national flower of ________, east Africa.
A) Laos B) Algeria C) Uganda D) Tanzania

4. The black leader Mandela was elected president of South Africa in May 1994, which marked the end of ________.
A) tyranny B) espionage C) apartheid D) ethnography

5. In the 19th century, Balkan people used guerrilla fighting against the ________.
A) Ottoman Empire B) Roman Empire
C) Macedonian Empire D) Spanish Empire

V. Rhetoric Appreciation

Directions: A rhetorical device or a figure of speech is a technique that an author or speaker uses to convey to the reader or listener a meaning with the goal of persuading him or her towards considering a topic from a different perspective, using language designed to encourage or evoke an emotional response in the audience. The widely-used rhetorical devices include parallelism, metaphor, quotation, antithesis, hyperbole, symbolism, inversion, alliteration, rhetorical question, etc. Please identify the rhetorical devices used in the following sentences. And then reread Text A to find out the rhetoric in use as much as you can.



1. ________________

   Does it require that a person hold political office and rule masses? Does it include only those who made a positive impact on society or also those who wreaked devastation and destruction? Do humanitarians or activists who never held office but who had the ability to incite thousands and millions with a vision of a different, better world merit inclusion?

2. ________________

   ... history was rewritten to portray her as barbarian and immoral rather than as the woman she was: strong and smart, ...

3. ________________

   ... David Ben-Gurion in Israel, Kwame Nkrumah in Ghana, Julius Nyerere in Tanzania, and Ho Chi Minh in Vietnam fought for and achieved their country's independence in different ways.

4. ________________

   The stories that follow represent both the best—and the worst—of humanity ...

5. ________________

   Abigail Adams, wrote in 1776 in a letter to her husband, John Adams ... "I desire you would remember the ladies and be more generous and favorable to them than your ancestors."

VI. Translation Practice

Directions: Please put the following sentences into Chinese.

1. Do humanitarians or activists who never held office but who had the ability to incite thousands and millions with a vision of a different, better world merit inclusion?
2. One is a mastermind of terrorist acts that have killed thousands and another a politician who overcame the weight of hundreds of years of slavery and discrimination against blacks to become the first African American elected president of the most powerful country in the world.
3. His national radio address in 1945, the first time many Japanese had heard his voice, announced the country's surrender, and the next year he repudiated his quasi-divine status, helping to engineer Japanese democracy after the war.
4. Upholding the European ideal was but one way in which statesmen and activists have influenced the arc of history without ever possessing formal power.
5. Selecting the most influential anything is inherently fraught with difficulties, and choosing those individuals who have left a lasting impression on the world—both during their times and long after they perished—was nearly impossible.

VII. Writing Workshop

Directions: Please reflect on the following great lines and then write an article on the topic What Would Good Leadership Entail.

得道多助，失道寡助。（《孟子・公孙丑下》）

运筹帷幄之中，决胜千里之外。（司马迁《史记・高祖本纪》）

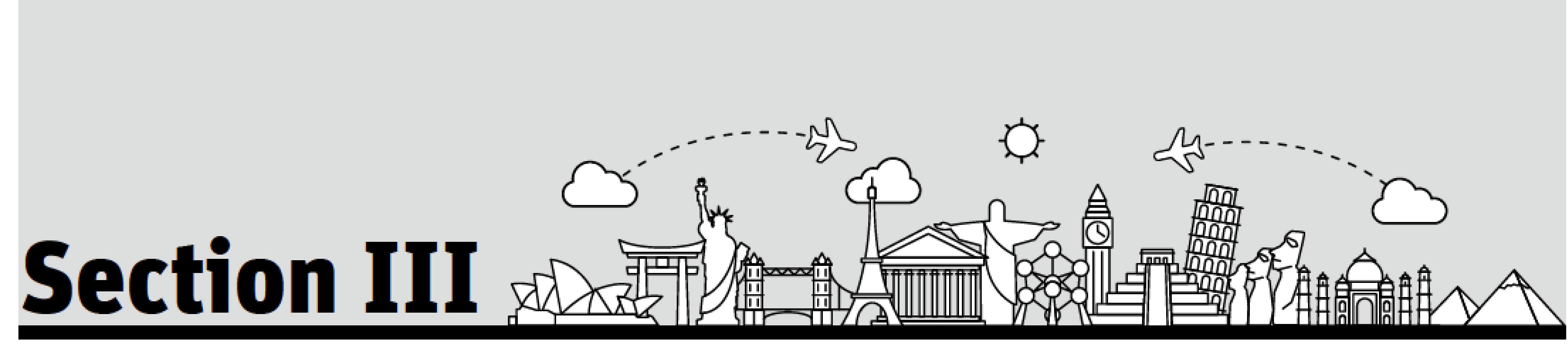
伯仲之间见伊吕，指挥若定失萧曹。（杜甫《咏怀古迹五首其五》）

决事如流，应物如响。（张九龄《故开府仪同三司行尚书左丞相燕国公赠太师张公墓志铭序》）

……雄姿英发。羽扇纶巾，谈笑间，樯橹灰飞烟灭。（苏轼《念奴娇・赤壁怀古》）

Words for Reference

trustworthy	tactic	gallant	democratic	ardent
charismatic	proactive	authoritarian	condescending	fatuous
pretentious	defiant	diffident	hellish	



Section III

Text B: Matilda—The Queen Who Rewrote the Rules

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **embolden** [ɪm'bəʊldən] *vt.* **(emboldened/emboldened/emboldening)**

to make someone feel confident enough to behave in a particular way

synonym	inspire; cheer; hearten
antonym	disappoint
word family	emboldened; emboldening
related phrase	embolden sb. to do sth.

Example 1 The president was steadily emboldened by the discovery that he faced no opposition.

Example 2 Four days of non-stop demonstrations have emboldened the anti-government protesters.

② **diminutive** [dɪ'mɪnjətɪv] ***adj.***

being very small

synonym	tiny; little; small; minute
antonym	huge; enormous; giant; gigantic
word family	diminution
related phrase	a shy diminutive man; a word formed by adding a diminutive suffix

Example 1 Her eyes scanned the room until they came to rest on a diminutive figure standing at the entrance.

Example 2 She bought a diminutive toy for her daughter.

③ **wrest** [rest] *vt.* **(wrested/wrested/wresting)**

to take something by pulling or twisting it violently; to take something especially when this is difficult or illegal

synonym	twist; take by storm
word family	wrestle; wrestler
related phrase	wrest control

Example 1 He wrested the suitcase from the chauffeur.

Example 2 The men had returned to wrest back power.

④ **unimpeachable** [ˌʌnɪm'piːtʃəbəl] ***adj.***

being completely honest and reliable

synonym clear; innocent
antonym impeachable
word family impeachable; impeachably; unimpeachably
related phrase unimpeachable sources; unimpeachable morals

Example 1 Lord Fletcher, said the bishop, was a man of unimpeachable integrity and character.

Example 2 Your testimony on this matter is hardly unimpeachable.

⑤ **awesome** ['ɔːsəm] ***adj.***

being very impressive and often frightening; being very impressive or extraordinary

synonym formidable; terrible; horrible; fearful; dreadful
word family awesomely
related phrase an awesome responsibility

Example 1 They had an awesome task ahead.

Example 2 Their last concert was really awesome.

⑥ **accede** [ək'siːd] ***vi.*** **(acceded/acceded/acceding)**

to agree or express agreement; to submit or yield to another's wish or opinion; to take on duties or office

synonym agree; assent
antonym disagree; oppose
word family acceded; acceding
related phrase accede to

Example 1 They could do no other than accede to the demands of the victors.

Example 2 They have acceded to the treaty.

⑦ **invincible** [ɪn'vɪnsɪbəl] ***adj.***

being too strong to be destroyed or defeated; (belief, attitude, etc.) being unable to be changed

synonym unbeatable; unrivaled
antonym vincible
word family invincibly; invincibility
related phrase remain invincible; an invincible army

Example 1 You couldn't help feeling the military's fire power was invincible.

Example 2 He also had an invincible faith in the medicinal virtues of garlic.

⑧ **exquisite** ['ekskwɪzɪt, ɪk'skwɪzɪt] ***adj.***

being extremely beautiful or pleasant, especially in a delicate way

synonym delicate; elegant; novel; sophisticated; pretty
antonym crude; rough

word family exquisitely; exquisiteness
related phrase exquisite craftsmanship; small and exquisite

Example 1 This exquisite embroidery won people's great admiration.

Example 2 She has exquisite taste in art.

⑨ **palatial** [pə'leɪʃəl] ***adj.***

(a house, hotel, or office building, etc.) being large and impressive, beautifully decorated

synonym opulent; grand; magnificent; noble
related phrase a palatial country residence; a palatial Hollywood mansion; the palatial architecture

Example 1 Palatial office buildings are being constructed in the city.

Example 2 He shares this palatial apartment with me.

⑩ **clad** [klæd] ***adj.***

wearing a particular kind of clothing; being covered by something; being used as a combining form (snow-clad/ivy-clad, etc.)

synonym shrouded
word family clad (*v.*); cladding
related phrase warmly/suitably/scantily clad; the figure of a woman clad in black; the leather-clad biker; the distant shapes of snow-clad mountains

Example 1 She felt hot, despite being clad only in a thin cotton dress.

Example 2 The walls and floors are clad with ceramic tiles.

⑪ **legitimacy** [lɪ'dʒɪtɪməsɪ] ***n.***

lawfulness by virtue of being authorized or in accordance with law

synonym legality; reasonableness
antonym illegality
word family legitimate; legitimately; legitimize
related phrase the political legitimacy

Example 1 The newspaper was directly challenging the government's legitimacy.

Example 2 Some of the clergy refused to acknowledge the new king's legitimacy.

⑫ **scurry** ['skʌrɪ] ***vt./vi.*** **(scurried/scurried/scurrying)**

to move quickly and hurriedly

synonym hasten; scuttle
antonym drag
word family scurrying
related phrase scurry off; scurrying pain

Example 1 The rats scurry around, searching for scraps of food in the rubbish.

Example 2 They just needed to be monitored so they didn't scurry off in the wrong direction.

⑬ **quell** [kwel] ***vt.*** **(quelled/quelled/quelling)**

to move quickly and hurriedly

synonym	eliminate; avoid; moderate; suppress
word family	queller
related phrase	quell the violence/disturbance/riot; quell the hunger

Example 1 Police used live ammunition to quell the disturbances.

Example 2 "Jerry?" she called, trying to quell the panic inside her.

⑭ **turbulence** ['tɜːbjʊləns] ***n.***

a state of confusion and disorganized change; violent and uneven movement within a particular area of air, liquid, or gas

synonym	uprising; disturbance; disorder
word family	turbulent; turbulently
related phrase	air turbulence

Example 1 The 1960s and early 1970s were a time of change and turbulence.

Example 2 The plane encountered severe turbulence and winds of nearly two-hundred miles an hour.

⑮ **ambience** ['æmbɪəns] ***n.***

the character and atmosphere that it seems to have

synonym	atmosphere; mood; set
word family	ambient
related phrase	pleasant/relaxing/friendly ambience

Example 1 The restaurant's new owners have created a welcoming ambience.

Example 2 The overall ambience of the room is cosy.

⑯ **foolhardy** ['fuːlhɑːdɪ] ***adj.***

disapproving of something because it is extremely risky

synonym	icarian; reckless; rash
antonym	rigorous; thoughtful; exquisite; delicate; sophisticated
word family	foolhardiness
related phrase	a foolhardy attempt to capture more territory

Example 1 He paid for the foolhardy act with his life.

Example 2 When he tested an early vaccine on himself, some described the act as foolhardy.

⑰ **attest** [ə'test] ***vt./vi.*** **(attested/attested/attesting)**

to prove to be true

synonym	prove; make sure; give evidence of

word family attestor; attester; attestant; attestative; attestation
related phrase attest to

Example 1 Police records attest to his long history of violence.

Example 2 I can personally attest that the cold and flu season is here.

⑱ **ostentatious** [ˌɒsten'teɪʃəs] ***adj.***

intending to attract notice and impress others; (a display) being tawdry or vulgar

synonym epideictic; pretentious
word family ostentation; ostentatiously
related phrase ostentatious goods; an ostentatious sable coat; an ostentatious display

Example 1 He was vain and ostentatious.

Example 2 Obviously he had plenty of money and was generous in its use without being ostentatious.

⑲ **hyperactive** [ˌhaɪpər'æktɪv] ***adj.***

being unable to relax and being always moving around or doing things; being more active than normal

synonym overactive
antonym inert
word family hyperactivity
related phrase hyperactive behaviors; hyperactive faults

Example 1 His research was used in planning treatments for hyperactive children.

Example 2 When I was young, I was very hyperactive.

⑳ **in earnest**

seriously; in a serious manner

synonym earnestly; seriously
related phrase in good earnest; work in earnest; in earnest for sth.

Example 1 The race for the White House begins in earnest today.

Example 2 He settled down to study in earnest for the examination.

㉑ **be bound for**

to drive up to; to head down

synonym leave for; depart for
related phrase be bound to; be bound for a destination

Example 1 The train is bound for Chicago.

Example 2 I boarded the plane bound for England.

㉒ subject to

to submit; to subjugate; to be subordinated to; to be under control

synonym be subordinated to; subjugate

related phrase subject sb. to sth.; subject oneself to

Example 1 You should subject yourself to my command.

Example 2 We were subjected to very close questioning.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

aggrieve	ancestry	ardently	bulwark	chantry
chattel	chevron	cogent	concourse	consonant
dainty	deity	dignitary	disconcert	dissent
dowry	dray	dregs	elate	eminent
encircle	enunciate	figurehead	flashy	foe
forthwith	gallant	gladiator	glitzy	governance
integer	intercede	interject	intern	interpose
interrogate	kinetic	lavishly	longstanding	machete
mademoiselle	mainstay	meteorite	monogamous	patter
pied	plasma	plateau	plaza	plummet
poise	preen	primal	primate	quench
shrill	slur	stiletto	stilt	stylus
submission	supremacy	thereupon	tide	upcoming
vane	vantage	vector	venom	

Part 2 Text

Matilda—The Queen Who Rewrote the Rules

Far from just providing heirs, the relationship between William the Conqueror and his wife Matilda emboldened a new model of queenship, says Tracy Borman, with Matilda's diplomatic skills proving crucial to the consolidation of William's rule.

In late autumn 1066, a diminutive woman of 35 prayed ardently in the Benedictine priory of Notre Dame du Prè, a small chapel that she had founded in 1060 on the banks of the river Seine near Rouen. Encircled by her ladies, she had spent many hours at her devotions during the previous few days.

It was with good cause that she had kept such an anxious vigil. Her husband William "the Bastard", Duke of Normandy, had set sail for England more than two weeks before, determined to wrest the throne from Harold Godwinson[1]. At last, a messenger arrived with news that her prayers had been answered. William and his Norman army had triumphed over the Saxons[2] at Senlac Hill, close to the town of Hastings[3] by which the battle would henceforth be known. She, Matilda, was now not just Duchess of Normandy, but Queen of England.

Upon hearing the momentous tidings, Matilda joyfully proclaimed that the priory should henceforth be known as Notre Dame de Bonnes Nouvelles (Our Lady of Good News). She had good reason to elate. The crown of England was a glitzy prize that even she, with her overweening ambition, could not possibly have hoped for when she became the wife of the baseborn Duke of Normandy some 15 years earlier.

But Hastings, decisive as it was, marked the start, not the end, of William campaign to conquer England. It would take years of bitter fighting before he was finally able to establish a measure of control over the country. William himself realised that he could not rule by the sword alone: he needed to win the hearts and minds of his aggrieving new subjects. The surest means of achieving this was to place his wife at eminent stage.

Matilda had already won great renown within Normandy for her piety, political shrewdness and, above all, her unimpeachable lineage. Daughter of the awesome Count Baldwin V of Flanders and niece of the King of France, she could trace her ancestry from the great Charlemagne, founding father of the French and German empires.

Even more valuable, from her husband's perspective, was the fact that she had English royal blood in her veins, for she was descended from King Alfred the Great. Little wonder that William had been so desperate to marry her that, according to one account, he had ridden at full speed to Bruges and dragged her by the hair into the mud, kicking and beating her until she shrilled and acceded to become his wife.

Despite its rather inauspicious beginnings, William and Matilda's marriage would prove one of the most successful in history. Together, they established the invincible Norman dynasty that would dominate Europe for more than a hundred years. In an age when the primary duty of female consorts was to produce an heir, Matilda exceeded expectations by giving birth to four sons and at least five daughters, all of whom survived well into adulthood.

She may have been the model of wifely obedience on the surface, but this masked a fierce ambition for power. Matilda combined the unrelenting duties of motherhood with an increasingly kinetic role in the government of Normandy. By 1066, she had gained unrivalled influence over her husband, and he had no hesitation in appointing her regent of the duchy when he embarked upon the invasion of England.

Within weeks of his victory at Hastings, William was sorely missing his wife's presence. He resolved to defer his coronation[4] (which was scheduled for Christmas Day 1066) so that Matilda might join him, "since if God granted him this honour, he wished for his wife to be crowned with him". This was more than mere devotion: he knew full well that Matilda's presence—given her ancestral ties with previous English kings—would lend the occasion much-needed legitimacy. But his advisers urged that he could brook no delay and his coronation went ahead before Matilda was able to leave Normandy.

Matilda was every bit as eager as William to establish herself in England, and had already begun to style herself queen. But it was not until the spring of 1068 that she finally arrived in her new kingdom. The delay had been caused not just by the demands of her regency in Normandy, but also her role as matriarch of the Norman dynasty. She had fallen pregnant forthwith before William's departure for England in 1066 (resulting in the birth of a daughter, Adela), and by the time she landed on English soil, she was pregnant once more.

The new queen's arrival in England was noted by the Anglo-Saxon Chronicles, which referred to her derisively as "the Lady Matilda", while her new subjects called her "the strange woman". Their suspicion was rooted in the fact that the Normans spoke of her as "la Royne", which implied that she was a female sovereign in her own right. This was shocking to her new subjects: previous English queens had been referred to merely as "the king's wife".

Undeterred, Matilda threw herself into the task of bringing much-needed and exquisite glamour to her husband's court. A magnificent gathering was held at Winchester to celebrate Easter, and thereupon another at Westminster, attended by a host of English notables. Even the anti-Norman chroniclers could not help but be impressed by the palatial spectacle that the couple presented, clad from head to toe in gold-encrusted robes and eating their flashy meals from gold and silver platters.

As soon as these celebrations were out of the way, plans began in earnest for the main purpose of Matilda's visit: her coronation. The event was loaded with significance. Besides being vital to William's efforts to reinforce his legitimacy in the eyes of his new subjects, Matilda would be the first queen of England to be formally styled "Regina". Her coronation was also the first ever staged just for a queen, and Matilda was determined that it should eclipse her husband's in splendour. Every detail was planned with meticulous care. Special lauds were written for the occasion, declaring that Matilda "shared" William's authority. Never before had a queen's power been so formalised—or so equal to that of the king. It was a sign of things to come.

The new queen's presence did not immediately establish order in England. Barely was the coronation celebrations out of the way than fresh trouble had broken out in the north of the kingdom. Fearing a rebellion, William scurried to York, the principal city of the north, from where he could prepare his own forces to quell any turbulence.

Matilda had no intention of staying behind in the relatively safe confines of the court in London. Sensing an opportunity to win over their recalcitrant subjects, she decided to join her husband in Yorkshire. This involved a journey of some 200 miles on roads that were little more than mud tracks—a considerable enough feat in itself, let alone for a woman who was by then heavily pregnant. Foremost in her mind was the thought that if she could give birth to this new heir in the most rebellious region of her kingdom, it would achieve more towards Anglo-Norman integration than her husband's strong-arm tactics ever could.

Although she was bound for York, the onset of labour forced Matilda to take refuge in Selby, some 14 miles south of the northern capital. There, she gave birth to Henry, her ninth and final child.

Her plan worked brilliantly. The English came to regard this prince as the only lawful successor to their throne from among the Norman dynasty, even though he had three elder brothers. Matilda encouraged this view by making Henry heir to all of her lands in England. She also named him after her uncle, the King of France, to strengthen his legitimacy.

Matilda returned to Normandy shortly after Henry's birth in order to take up the reins of government once more. But when a fresh and breathtaking uprising broke out in the north of England in 1069, William urged her return. While he dealt with the rebels in York and the ambience, a strong presence was required to guard against any sympathetic uprisings in the south of the kingdom. Matilda, already gaining favour among the English people thanks to her dignified

bearing and gentle demeanour, formed a welcome contrast to her husband's foolhardy brutality. She was therefore ideally suited for this task.

During the next 12 years, Matilda constantly flitted between England and Normandy, bolstering her husband's rule in both lands and becoming an ever more powerful figurehead for the Norman regime. In England, she was particularly active in the sphere of justice. There are numerous references in *Domesday Book*[5] to her hearing English legal cases during William's absences, which became increasingly frequent during the 1070s. The impressive variety of English charters in which Matilda was involved attests to her versatility in business matters.

The queen was also at the heart of some of the most important religious debates of the reign, notably when she and her husband ordered that the primacy of York should be subject to the authority of the archbishop of Canterbury—a symbolic ruling that effectively brought the north under the governance of the court in London.

Ever sensitive to the mood of the English people, though, Matilda subsequently made a series of generous bequests to the church. In so doing, she won praise from the chroniclers, who described her as "munificent and liberal of her gifts" and "indefatigable at alleviating distress in every shape".

Matilda's liberality set her apart from the other members of the Norman ruling elite who had shared in the spoils of the conquest. And whereas her husband and his Matilda's coronation was the first ever staged just for a queen. She was determined that it should eclipse her husband's in magnificence Norman entourage relied upon interpreters, she made the effort to master the English language—a fact that greatly endeared her to the native population.

As well as winning popularity in her own right, Matilda also gradually succeeded in persuading her husband to adopt a more conciliatory stance towards his conquered subjects. "King William, by the advice of Matilda, treated the English kindly as long as she lived," observed one contemporary.

When Edward the Confessor's widow Edith, who had long been a figurehead for the Saxon regime, died in 1075, Matilda urged William to arrange for her remains to be conveyed from Winchester to Westminster with great honour so that she might be interred in the abbey next to her husband. There, a tomb lavishly decorated with gold and silver was erected, and William also paid for a suitably ostentatious funeral. By the time of her last sojourn in England, in 1081, Matilda had earned widespread and longstanding admiration among the people. A consummate diplomat, she had steadily and patiently overcome their initial suspicion with a brilliantly executed public relations campaign.

Whereas in the early days of her reign, she had been dismissed as William's bedfellow, now she was known as "the queen of the English, Matilda, wealthy and powerful". Even the most misogynistic of the chroniclers claimed that "the common people, the rich, every gender and age, the whole clergy, every tongue, every class" admired her "just" and "prudent" character.

Matilda's natural shrewdness and diplomacy had done at least as much—if not more—to secure England for the Normans than her conqueror husband's military campaigns ever could.

Matilda's death in November 1083 was deeply mourned on both sides of the Channel. As one contemporary observed, she would be "wept for by the English and the Normans for many years". Principal among them was her husband, who fell into a deep depression from which he never recovered. He had good reason to mourn her loss. Matilda had proved the mainstay of William's

rule in England, and without her the king was "continually forced to struggle against the storms of troubles that rose up against him".

Matilda's career marked the dawning of a new era for royal consorts. By wielding immense power in both Normandy and England—not just on behalf of her husband, but at times in direct opposition to him—Matilda confounded the traditional views of women in medieval society and provided an inspiring new model of queenship.

No longer confined simply to the domestic sphere, her successors were able to play a hyperactive part in the political, judicial and spiritual life of their kingdoms for centuries to come.

(Adapted from *BBC History Magazine*)

Notes

① Harold Godwinson

Harold Godwinson or Harold II was the last Anglo-Saxon king of England. Harold reigned from 6 January 1066 until his death at the Battle of Hastings on 14 October, fighting the Norman invaders led by William the Conqueror during the Norman conquest of England. His death marked the end of Anglo-Saxon rule over England. Harold was a powerful earl and member of a prominent Anglo-Saxon family with ties to King Cnut. Upon the death of Edward the Confessor in January 1066, the Witenagemot convened and chose Harold to succeed; he was crowned in Westminster Abbey.

② Saxons

The Saxons were a Germanic tribe that originally occupied the region which today is the North Sea coast of the Netherlands, Germany, and Denmark. Their name is derived from the seax, a distinct knife popularly used by the tribe.

③ Hastings

Hastings is a town and borough in the county of East Sussex, within the historic county of Sussex, on the south coast of England. The town is located 24 mi (39 km) east of the county town of Lewes and 53 mi (85 km) southeast of London, and has an estimated population of 90,254, which makes it the 66th largest settlement in the United Kingdom. Hastings gives its name to the Battle of Hastings in 1066. It later became one of the medieval Cinque Ports. The town became a popular seaside resort in the 19th century with the coming of the railway. Hastings is a fishing port with a beach-based fishing fleet.

④ coronation

A coronation is a ceremony marking the formal investiture of a monarch with regal power, usually involving the ritual placement of a crown upon the monarch's head and the presentation of other items of regalia. The ceremony can also be conducted for the monarch's consort, either simultaneously with the monarch or as a separate event.

⑤ *Domesday Book*

Domesday Book is a manuscript record of the "Great Survey" of much of England and parts of Wales completed in 1086 by order of King William the Conqueror. It was written in Medieval

Latin, was highly abbreviated, and included some vernacular native terms without Latin equivalents. The survey's main purpose was to determine what taxes had been owed during the reign of King Edward the Confessor, which allowed William to reassert the rights of the Crown and assess where power lay after a wholesale redistribution of land following the Norman conquest.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Sentence Practice

Directions: Please rewrite the sentences with the proper forms of the given words.

aggrieved	sojourn	embolden	overweening	coronation
attest	exceed	glitz	clad	stance

1. Encouraged by her smile, he invited her to dance.
2. Her language glitters with marvelous words.
3. I sensed from her tone that she had been unfairly treated while she told us her life.
4. From the window, we can overview pines that covered with snow.
5. Luxurious furnishings testified that the owner was wealthy.
6. The new president takes a tough vantage on human rights.
7. The ambassador will be here for a brief visit.
8. The crowning of the queen revived the revolutionaries' hope.
9. The professor disliked her condescending manner toward his employees.
10. The demand for oil outstripped supply.

III. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text B the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. small
2. news
3. slur
4. dainty
5. opulent
6. patter
7. aura
8. puppet
9. vainglorious
10. bulwark
11. inception
12. dexterous
13. endure
14. perpetual
15. enunciate

Antonyms

1. vincible
2. impeachable
3. auspicious
4. decisive
5. advanced
6. unsophisticated
7. highlight
8. obedient
9. ending
10. resist

IV. Phrase Practice

Directions: Please translate the following verb+noun collocations into Chinese.

1. wrest the throne
2. wrest the lid off
3. wrest a knife from the gangster
4. wrest the opportunity
5. wrest a living
6. wrest the truth out of him
7. subjugate our foe
8. subjugate a country
9. subjugate one's feeling
10. quell a protest movement
11. quell disagreement
12. quell grief
13. quell the thought
14. embark on a new career
15. embark on a war

V. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 15 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. She'd be a better boss if she didn't _____ to her employees.
A) condescend B) descend C) dissent D) disconcert

2. Those days when women and children were considered _____ have been gone.
A) chapel B) chattel C) chantry D) chevron

3. _____ can be exhibited by position or state of mind, such as prayer.
A) Piety B) Pied C) Deity D) Poise

4. A weather _____ is a mechanical device attached to a higher object such as a roof for showing the direction of the wind.
A) vein B) vector C) vane D) venom

5. The girl could hardly _____ herself up the stairs.
A) dregs B) dowry C) drag D) dray

6. Through _____ elections, a political party or a political alliance nominates candidates for an upcoming general election or by-election.
A) primary B) primal C) primate D) plummet

7. Various online shopping _____ are providing people with a new community.
A) consorts B) concourses C) consonants D) cogent

8. The _____ is a writing tool used by blind users in conjunction with the slate for punching out the dots in Braille.

A) style B) stilt C) stiletto D) stylus

9. Young men are often deeply attracted by the _____ girls.
   A) monogamous B) glamour C) gladiator D) gallant

10. The price of gas seems to have reached a _____.
   A) platter B) plaza C) plasma D) plateau

11. The _____ of Buddhism are ultimately regarded as manifestations of Emptiness.
   A) piety B) dignitary C) deities D) dexterity

12. 8 is an _____, but 8.6 is not.
   A) integer B) integration C) interrogate D) interject

13. The old lady is still quite elegant and _____ herself whenever she goes out.
   A) queens B) quenches C) quells D) preens

14. Hundreds of men and women were _____ in the camps.
   A) inter B) intern C) intercede D) interpose

15. The professor specializes in studying _____ literature.
   A) medieval B) mademoiselle C) machete D) meteorite

VI. Proofreading

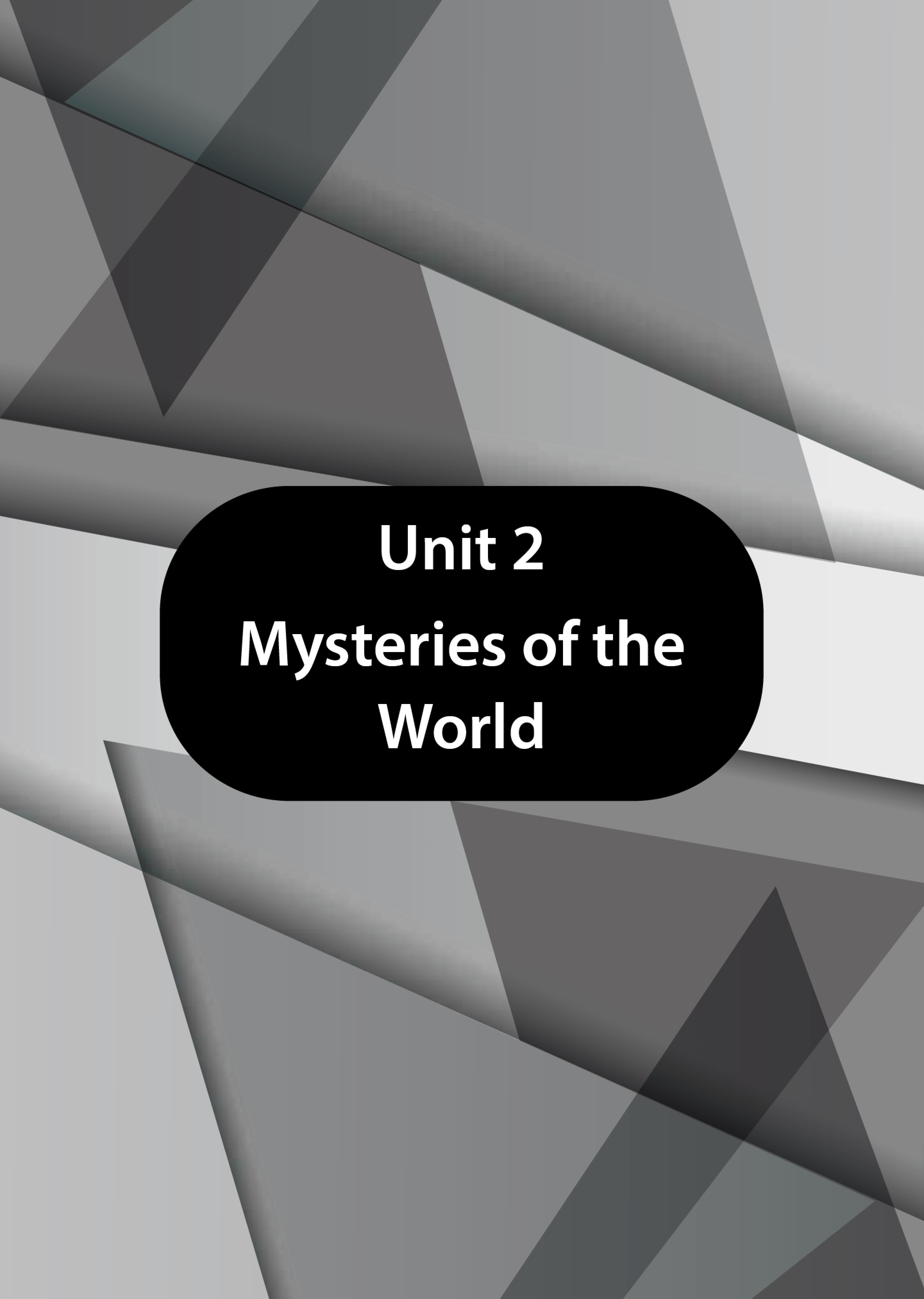
Directions: Please identify and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

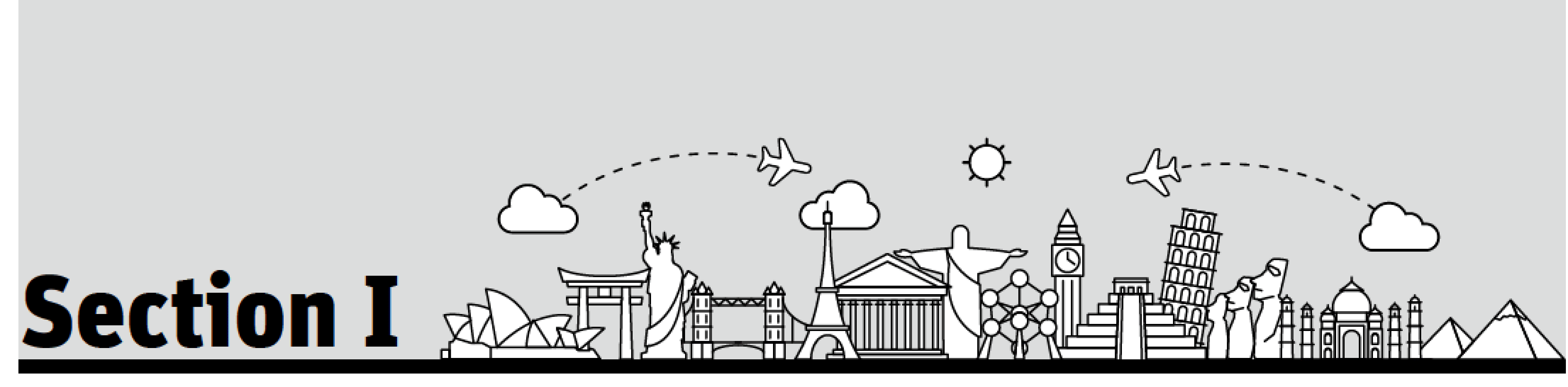
1. The film producer would not accede public pressure.
2. The walls of the church were adorned by religious paintings.
3. He has embarked an experiment no one else has tried.
4. Deterred by failure, he threw himself into the task of investigation.

VII. Paraphrase

Directions: Please restate the following sentences using other words without altering the original meaning.

1. Encircled by her ladies, she had spent many hours at her devotions during the previous few days.
2. But Hastings, decisive as it was, marked the start, not the end, of William campaign to conquer England.
3. She may have been the model of wifely obedience on the surface, but this masked a fierce ambition for power.
4. Their suspicion was rooted in the fact that the Normans spoke of her as "la Royne", which implied that she was a female sovereign in her own right.
5. Barely was the coronation celebrations out of the way than fresh trouble had broken out in the north of the kingdom.
6. Matilda, already gaining favour among the English people thanks to her dignified bearing and gentle demeanour...
7. Matilda's liberality set her apart from the other members of the Norman ruling elite who had shared in the spoils of the conquest.
8. A consummate diplomat, she had steadily and patiently overcome their initial suspicion with a brilliantly executed public relations campaign.


Unit 2
Mysteries of the World



Section I

Focus on Critical Thinking and Critical Reading (2)

Benefits of Critical Thinking

A good critical thinker knows how to separate facts from opinions, how to examine an issue from all sides, how to make rational inferences and how to withhold personal judgment or biases.

A Clear Head

Rational critical thinkers are generally the voices of reason in times of mass hysteria or panic. As Franklin D. Roosevelt said, "We have nothing to fear but fear itself." The critical thinker usually has the comprehensive skills to consider all possible options and solve a problem.

Smarter, Quicker

The critical thinker remains calm and knows when he is right. Critical thinkers are less likely to fall for scams or tricks because they approach everything with a healthy amount of skepticism. Those who lack critical thinking skills often assume that everything they hear is true, regardless of the source.

Time-saving

Critical thinkers consider all options before they act. If time is an important factor, they consider the fastest method of achieving a goal. They may even discover a shortcut. Critical thinkers embody the phrase "work smarter, not harder". They are masters of efficiency.

Decision Making/Employment

Many of the highest paying jobs require critical thinking skills, such as generating effective ideas and making important decisions. Job interviewers often ask applicants questions that test their ability to think critically. Critical thinking skills may also be a deciding factor when an employee seeks a promotion.

Perspective

A critical thinker has the self-awareness to know the difference between a rational thought based on careful consideration and an emotional response based on personal biases. Emotion is the enemy of reason. By understanding your own perspective, you can also consider the perspective of others and come to a conclusion based on facts, not feelings.

Specifically, critical thinking may help us in the following fields:

Academic Performance

1) Understand the arguments and beliefs of others.
2) Critically evaluate those arguments and beliefs.
3) Develop and defend one's own well-supported arguments and beliefs.

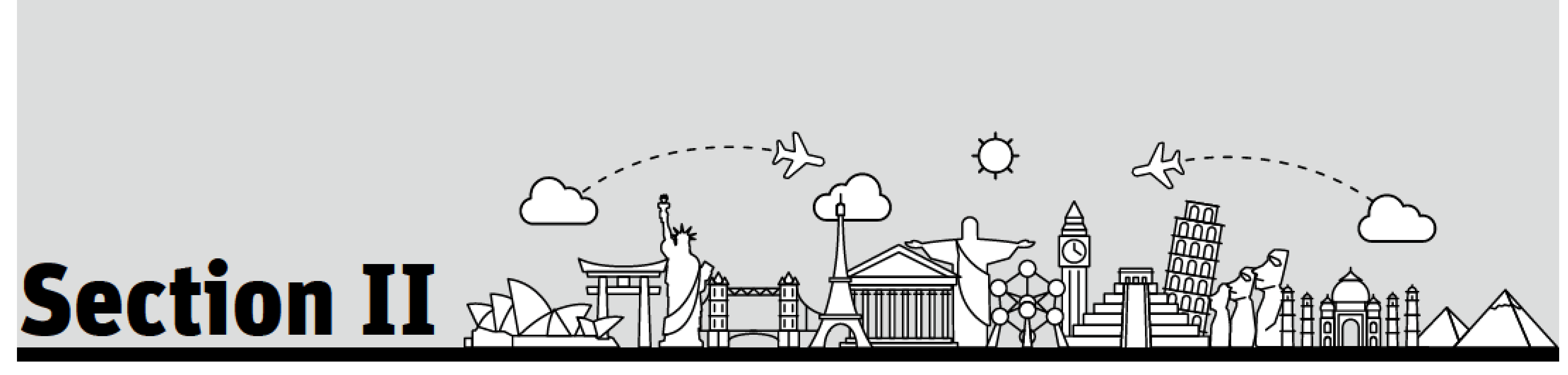
Workplace

1) Reflect and get a deeper understanding of our own and others' decisions.
2) Encourage open-mindedness to change.
3) Aid us in being more analytical in solving problems.

Daily Life

1) Avoid making foolish personal decisions.
2) Promote an informed and concerned citizenry capable of making good decisions on important social, political and economic issues.
3) Aid in the development of autonomous thinkers capable of examining their assumptions, dogmas, and prejudices.

Someone with critical thinking skills is able to do the following: understand the logical connections between ideas; identify, construct and evaluate arguments; detect inconsistencies and common mistakes in reasoning; solve problems systematically; identify the relevance and importance of ideas and to reflect on the justification of one's own beliefs and values.



Section II

Text A: The Whole Universe Catalog

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **copious** ['kəʊpɪəs] ***adj.***

having a large amount of

synonym colossal; abundant; numerous; productive

antonym rare; scarce

word family copiously; copiousness

related phrase a copious harvest

Example 1 I went out for dinner last night and drank copious amounts of red wine.

Example 2 She attended the lecture and took copious notes.

② **corroborate** [kə'rɒbəreɪt] ***vt.*** **(corroborated/corroborated/corroborating)**

to provide evidence or information that supports something

synonym validate; confirm; sustain; support; back up

word family corroboration; corroborative

related phrase corroborate the fact

Example 1 I had access to a wide range of documents which corroborated the story.

Example 2 We now have new evidence to corroborate the defendant's story.

③ **falter** ['fɔːltə] ***vt.*** **(faltered/faltered/faltering)**

to lose power or strength in an uneven way, or no longer make much progress; to lose one's confidence and stop doing something or start making mistakes

synonym mouch

word family falteringly

related phrase falter under enemy fire; falter out; falter out one's thanks

Example 1 Normal life is at a standstill, and the economy is faltering.

Example 2 I have not faltered in my quest for a new future.

④ **cosmos** ['kɒzmɒs] ***n.***

the whole universe, especially when you think of it as a system

synonyms universe; world; peace

word family cosmology; cosmogony; cosmographer; cosmography; cosmologic; cosmological
related phrase the natural laws of the cosmos

Example 1 Personally, I like the mystery of the cosmos.

Example 2 These new discoveries have broken new ground in the exploration of the cosmos.

⑤ assort [ə'sɔːt] *vt./vi.* (assorted/assorted/assorting)

to arrange or distribute into groups of the same type

synonyms classify; sort out
word family assorted; assortment
related phrases assort with; assort one's papers

Example 1 This does not assort with his earlier statement.

Example 2 Collect, assort and file the documents from material management.

⑥ assiduous [ə'sɪdjʊəs] *adj.*

working hard or doing things very thoroughly

synonym diligent; industrious
antonym lazy; idle
word family assiduously; assiduity
related phrase assiduous learning

Example 1 Podulski had been assiduous in learning his adopted language.

Example 2 I know the degree of master meant many years of assiduous study and hard work.

⑦ corollary [kə'rɒlərɪ] *n.* (*pl.* corollaries)

an idea, argument, or fact that results directly from something

synonym conclusion; consequence
related phrase the corollary equipment

Example 1 The number of prisoners increased as a corollary of the government's determination to combat the violent crime.

Example 2 Is social inequality the inevitable corollary of economic freedom?

⑧ axiom ['æksɪəm] *n.*

a statement or idea that people accept as being true

synonym motto; maxim
word family axiomatic; axiomatically
related phrase the long-held axiom that education leads to higher income

Example 1 It is an axiom in the business world that a satisfied customer is the best advertisement.

Example 2 It is a widely-held axiom that they should not negotiate with terrorists.

⑨ **conjecture** [kən'dʒektʃə] ***n.***

a conclusion that is based on uncertain or incomplete information

synonyms	speculation; guess; presume
word family	conjectural
related phrases	Goldbach Conjecture; the conjecture of

Example 1 There has been some conjecture about a possible merger.

Example 2 The rumour raised a storm of conjecture.

⑩ **idiosyncratic** [ˌɪdɪəsɪn'krætɪk] ***adj.***

being somewhat unusual

synonym	special; unusual
antonym	ordinary; usual
word family	idiosyncrasy
related phrase	the idiosyncratic reaction; the idiosyncratic risk

Example 1 This suggests some idiosyncratic factors may be at work.

Example 2 Coke also gets product development expertise in a market of idiosyncratic consumer tastes.

⑪ **haphazardly** [ˌhæp'hæzədlɪ] ***adv.***

doing in a random manner

synonym	accidentally; fortuitously; randomly
antonym	orderly
word family	haphazard
related phrase	grow haphazardly

Example 1 The books were placed haphazardly on the shelf.

Example 2 All the papers were haphazardly strewn on desks.

⑫ **disparate** ['dɪspərət] ***adj.***

being clearly different from each other in quality or type; being made up of very different elements

synonym	distinct; different; diverse
antonym	identical; alike
word family	disparity
related phrase	the disparate treatment; the disparate development

Example 1 Scientists are trying to pull together disparate ideas in astronomy.

Example 2 The nine republics are immensely disparate in size, culture and wealth.

⑬ **onslaught** ['ɒnslɔːt] ***n.***

a very violent, forceful attack against someone or something

synonym	attack; onset; barrage
word family	slaughter

related phrase the constant onslaught of ads on TV

Example 1 The press launched another vicious onslaught on the president.

Example 2 The attackers launched another vicious onslaught on the victim.

⑭ **euphoric** [juː'fɒrɪk] ***adj.***

feeling intense happiness and excitement

synonym heady; ecstatic; rapturous; overjoyed
antonym sorrowful; distressing
word family euphoriant; euphoria
related phrase euphoric behaviors

Example 1 The war had received euphoric support from the public.

Example 2 Scientists are euphoric at the success of the test.

⑮ **vindicate** ['vɪndɪkeɪt] ***vt.*** **(vindicated/vindicated/vindicating)**

to show to be right by providing justification or proof

synonym assert; justify; prove
word family vindicatory; vindicator; vindication
related phrase vindicate oneself; vindicate one's right

Example 1 The principal's speech vindicated the teachers' right to go on strike.

Example 2 The director said he had been vindicated by the experts' report.

⑯ **delirious** [dɪ'lɪərɪəs] ***adj.***

being unable to think or speak in a sensible and reasonable way usually because of illness; being extremely excited and happy

synonym electrifying; nuts; distraught; excited; frantic
antonym quiet; calm
word family deliriousness; deliriously
related phrase delirious speech

Example 1 I was delirious and blacked out several times.

Example 2 A raucous crowd of 25,000 delirious fans greeted the team at Grand Central Station.

⑰ **presumptuous** [prɪ'zʌmptʃʊəs] ***adj.***

doing something that someone has (have) no right or authority to do

synonym premature; imperious; masterful
word family presumption; presumptuously
related phrase presumptuous demands; presumptuous requests

Example 1 It is too presumptuous of him to do so.

Example 2 It would be presumptuous to judge what the outcome will be.

⑱ **fortuitously** [fɔ:'tju:ɪtəslɪ] ***adv.***

happening by chance, especially in a way that has a good result

synonym accidentally; unexpectedly; occasionally
word family fortuitous
related phrase meet fortuitously

Example 1 We won't do anything fortuitously in view of the final; we really want to become World champions.

Example 2 Fortuitously, the flyby also happens at the same time that Venus is at its maximum elongation from the Sun as seen from Earth.

⑲ **tarnish** ['tɑ:nɪʃ] ***vt./ vi.*** **(tarnished/tarnished/tarnishing)**

to cause people to have a worse opinion of something than it would otherwise have had

synonym flaw; stain; maculate; sully; defile
word family tarnishable; tarnished; tarnishing
related phrase tarnish resistance; tarnish one's reputation; tarnish one's memory

Example 1 The affair could tarnish the reputation of the senator.

Example 2 His regime was tarnished by human rights abuses.

⑳ **tenable** ['tenəbəl] ***adj.***

being reasonable and able to be successfully defended against criticism

synonym maintainable
antonym untenable; indefensible
word family tenability
related phrase the tenable environment

Example 1 This argument is simply not tenable.

Example 2 The old idea that this work was not suitable for women was no longer tenable.

㉑ **defuse** [ˌdi:'fju:z] ***vt.*** **(defused/defused/defusing)**

to improve a dangerous or tense situation; to remove the fuse from a bomb in order to prevent it from exploding

synonym quell; assuage
word family defusing
related phrase defuse a crisis; defuse tension; defuse anger

Example 1 Police administrators credited the organization with helping defuse potentially violent situations.

Example 2 Police have defused a bomb found in a downtown building.

㉒ **elucidate** [ɪ'lu:sɪdeɪt] ***vt.*** **(elucidated/elucidated/elucidating)**

to make something clear and easy to understand

synonym clarify; note; clear up
word family elucidation; elucidator; elucidative; elucidatory
related phrase elucidate one's theory

Example 1 Haig went on to elucidate his personal principle of war.

Example 2 There was no need for him to elucidate.

23 prognosticate [prɒg'nɒstɪkeɪt] *vt.* (prognosticated/prognosticated/prognosticating)

to foretell (future events) according to present signs or indications

synonym predict; prophesy; forecast
word family prognostic; prognostication; prognosticator
related phrase prognosticate the future

Example 1 Unfortunately, I am not able to prognosticate how everything will eventually shake out.

Example 2 There are a lot of folks that will want to prognosticate.

24 enamor [ɪn'æmə] *vt.* (enamored/enamored/enamoring)

to inspire with love; to captivate; to charm

synonym infatuate; charm; attract
word family enamorment; enamored; enamoring
related phrase be enamored of; be enamored with

Example 1 The dancer was enamored of the princess.

Example 2 Even after decades in the business, Crane is clearly still enamored with her job.

25 arcane [ɑː'keɪn] *adj.*

being secret or mysterious; being known or understood by only a few people

synonym mysterious; uncanny; difficult
word family arcana
related phrase the arcane language of the law

Example 1 It was an arcane dispute over tariffs.

Example 2 The technique at one time was arcane in the minds of most chemists.

26 make inroads into

to enter a particular place or situation, often not wanted or welcomed; to strike; to bite in

synonym make an incursion into; intrude upon
related phrase make inroads on crop; make inroads into a country

Example 1 We have made inroads into our painting job; we finished the kitchen already.

Example 2 European internet gambling companies have made inroads into the U.S. in spite of ban.

27 beguile with

to be charmed and attracted by something

synonym hook on; fritter away; enjoy sth.; enjoy in doing sth.

related phrase beguile sb. with enticing words; beguile the journey with pleasant talk; be/get beguiled with …

Example 1 I beguiled the weary hours with reading.

Example 2 The teacher used to beguile her pupils with fairy tales.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

aerate	algorithm	antiquate	appositely	astronaut
backroom	bedlam	beehive	befall	befit
besiege	luminary	bookshelf	breathtaking	burly
calibrate	clamber	confetti	connoisseur	coroner
coronet	cosine	dermatology	discontinuous	discontinuity
discursive	dissident	dogged	downtown	enumerate
exposition	fastidious	fester	fluster	fodder
fortitude	fragrant	gantry	groundwork	heavyweight
hoarse	homogeneous	idolatry	immunology	integer
iterate	iteration	lavish	luminary	machete
misgiving	neon	neuron	neuter	neutron
noteworthy	obviate	optimal	ornithology	painstaking
personification	predicate	quark	rapture	respectability
rote	rusk	scaly	serpent	skewer
sodden	spasm	spawn	spindly	spree
sprig	stagnant	straggle	surmount	synopsis
thermos	tome	tote	treatise	twine
unearth	unruly	vestry	witness	workaholic

Part 2 Text

The Whole Universe Catalog

A seemingly endless variety of food was straggled over several tables at the home of Judith L. Baxter and her husband, mathematician Stephen D. Smith, in Oak Park, Illinois[1], on a cool Friday evening in September 2011. Canapés, homemade meatballs, cheese plates, and grilled shrimp on skewers crowded against pastries, rusks, pâtés, olives, salmon with dill sprigs, and feta wrapped in eggplant. Dessert choices included—but were not limited to—a lemon mascarpone cake and an African pumpkin cake. The sun set, and champagne flowed, as the 60 guests, about half of the mathematicians, ate and drank and ate some more.

The copious spread was fitting for a party celebrating a mammoth and eminent achievement. Four mathematicians at the dinner—Smith, Michael Aschbacher, Richard Lyons, and Ronald Solomon—had just published a book, more than 180 years in the making, that gave a broad synopsis of the biggest division problem in mathematics history.

Their treatise did not land on any bestseller lists, which was understandable, given its title: The Classification of Finite Simple Groups[2]. But for algebraists, the 350-page tome was a milestone. It was the short version, the Cliffs Notes, of this universal classification. The full proof reaches some 15,000 pages—some say it is closer to 10,000—that are scattered across hundreds of journal articles by more than 100 authors. The assertion that it corroborates is known, appositely, as the Enormous Theorem. (The theorem itself is quite simple. It is the proof that gets gigantic.) The cornucopia at Smith's house seemed an appropriate way to advocate and honor this behemoth. The proof is the largest in the history of mathematics.

And now it is in peril. The 2011 work sketches only an outline of the proof. The unmatched heft of the actual documentation places it on the teetering edge of human unmanageability. "I don't know that anyone has read everything," says Solomon, age 66, who studied the proof his entire career. Solomon and the other three mathematicians honored at the party may be the only people alive today who understand the proof, and their advancing years have everyone worried. Smith is 67, Aschbacher is 71, and Lyons is 70. "We're all getting old now, and we want to get these ideas down before it's too late," Smith says. "We could die, or we could retire, or we could forget."

That loss would be, well, enormous. In a nutshell, the work brings order to group theory, which is the mathematical study of symmetry. Research on symmetry, in turn, is critical to scientific areas such as modern particle physics. The Standard Model depends on the tools of symmetry provided by group theory. Big ideas about symmetry at the smallest scales helped physicists figure out the equations used in experiments that would reveal exotic fundamental particles, such as the quarks that combine to make the more familiar protons and neutrons.

Group theory also led physicists to the unsettling idea that mass itself formed because symmetry broke down at some fundamental level. Moreover, that idea pointed the way to the discovery of the most celebrated particle in recent years, the Higgs boson[3], which can exist only if symmetry falters at the quantum scale. The notion of the Higgs popped out of group theory in the 1960s but was not discovered until 2012, after experiments at CERN's Large Hadron Collider[4] near Geneva.

Symmetry is the concept that something can undergo a series of transformations—spinning, folding, reflecting, moving through time—and, at the end of all those changes, appear unchanged. It lurks everywhere in the universe, from the configuration of quarks to the arrangement of galaxies in the cosmos.

The Enormous Theorem demonstrates with mathematical precision that any kind of symmetry can be broken down and assorted into one of four families, according to shared features. For mathematicians devoted to the rigorous and assiduous study of symmetry, or group theorists, the theorem is an accomplishment no less sweeping, important, or fundamental than the periodic table of the elements was for chemists. In the future, it could lead to other profound discoveries about the fabric of the universe and the nature of reality.

Except, of course, that it is a mess: the equations, corollaries, axioms and conjectures of the

proof have been tossed amid more than 500 journal articles, some buried in thick volumes, filled with the mixture of Greek, Latin, and other characters used in the dense language of mathematics. Add to that bedlam the fact that each contributor wrote in his or her idiosyncratic style.

That mess is a problem because without every piece of the proof in position, the entirety trembles. For comparison, imagine the two-million-plus stones of the Great Pyramid of Giza[5] strewn haphazardly across the Sahara, with only a few people who know how they fit together. Without an accessible proof of the Enormous Theorem, future mathematicians would have two perilous choices: simply trust the proof without knowing much about how it works or reinvent the wheel.

The 2011 outline put together by Smith, Solomon, Aschbacher, and Lyons was part of an ambitious survival plan to make the theorem accessible to the next generation of mathematicians. "To some extent, most people these days treat the theorem like a black box," Solomon laments. The bulk of that plan calls for a streamlined proof that brings all the disparate pieces of the theorem together. The plan was conceived more than 30 years ago and is now only half-finished.

If a theorem is important, its proof is doubly so. A proof establishes the honest dependability of a theorem and allows one mathematician to convince another—even when separated by continents or centuries—of the truth of a statement. Then these statements beget new conjectures and proofs, such that the collaborative heart of mathematics stretches back millennia.

Reality's Deepest Secrets

Mathematicians first began dreaming of the proof at least as early as the 1890s, as a new field called group theory took hold. In math, the word "group" refers to a set of objects connected to one another by some mathematical operation. If you apply that operation to any member of the group, the result is yet another member.

Symmetries, or movements that do not change the look of an object, befit this bill. Consider, as an example, that you have a cube with every side painted the same color. Spin the cube 90 degrees—or 180 or 270—and the cube will look exactly as it did when you started. Flip it over, top to bottom, and it will appear unchanged. Leave the room and let a friend spin or flip the cube—or execute some combination of spins and flips—and when you return, you will not know what he or she has done. In all, there are 24 distinct rotations that leave a cube appearing unchanged. Those 24 rotations make a finite group.

Simple finite groups are analogous to atoms. They are the basic units of construction for other, larger things. Simple finite groups combine to form larger, more complicated finite groups. The Enormous Theorem organizes these groups the way the periodic table organizes the elements. It says that every simple finite group belongs to one of three families—or to a fourth family of wild outliers. The largest of these rogues, called the Monster, has more than 1,053 elements and exists in 196,883 dimensions. The first finite simple groups were identified by 1830, and by the 1890s mathematicians had made new inroads into finding more of those building blocks. Theorists also began to suspect the groups could all be put together in a big list.

Mathematicians in the early 20th century laid the groundwork for the Enormous Theorem, but the guts of the proof did not materialize until midcentury. Between 1950 and 1980—a period which mathematician Daniel Gorenstein of Rutgers University called the "Thirty Years' War"—

heavyweights pushed the field of group theory further than ever before, finding finite simple groups and grouping them together into families. These mathematicians wielded 200-page manuscripts like algebraic machetes, cutting away abstract weeds to unearth the deepest foundations of symmetry. (Freeman Dyson of the Institute for Advanced Study in Princeton, New Jersey, referred to the onslaught of discovery of strange, beautiful groups as a "magnificent zoo".)

Those were euphoric times: Richard Foote, then a graduate student at the University of Cambridge and now a professor at the University of Vermont, once sat in a dank office and witnessed two famous theorists—John Thompson, now at the University of Florida, and John Conway, now at Princeton University—hashing out the details of a particularly unwieldy group. "It was amazing, like two Titans with lightning going between their brains," Foote says. "They never seemed to be at a loss for some absolutely wonderful and totally off-the-wall techniques for doing something. It was breathtaking."

It was during these decades that two of the proof's optimal milestones occurred. In 1963 a theorem by mathematicians Walter Feit and John Thompson laid out a recipe for finding more simple finite groups. After that breakthrough, in 1972 Gorenstein laid out a 16-step plan for vindicating the Enormous Theorem—a project that would, once and for all, put all the finite simple groups in their place. It involved bringing together all the known finite simple groups, finding the missing ones, putting all the pieces into appropriate categories, and proving there could not be any others. It was big, ambitious, unruly, and, some said, implausible.

The Man with the Plan

Yet Gorenstein was a charismatic algebraist, and his vision energized a new group of mathematicians—with ambitions neither simple nor finite—who were eager to make their mark.

Solomon, who describes his first encounter with group theory as "love at first sight", met Gorenstein in 1970. The National Science Foundation was hosting a summer institute on group theory at Bowdoin College, and every week mathematical luminaries were invited to the campus to give a lecture. Solomon, who was then a graduate student, remembers Gorenstein's visit vividly. The mathematical celebrity, just arrived from his summer home on Martha's Vineyard, was delirious in both appearance and message.

"I'd never seen a mathematician in hot-pink pants before," Solomon recalls.

In 1972, Solomon says, most mathematicians thought that the proof would not be done by the end of the 20th century. But within four years the end was in sight. Gorenstein largely credited the inspired methods and feverish pace of Aschbacher, who is a professor at the California Institute of Technology, for hastening the proof's completion.

One reason why the proof is so huge is that it stipulates that its list of finite simple groups is complete. That means the list includes every building block, and there are not any more. Oftentimes proving something does not exist—such as proving there cannot be any more groups—is more work than proving it does.

In 1981 Gorenstein predicated the first version of the proof finished, but his celebration was presumptuous. A problem emerged with a particularly thorny 800-page chunk, and it took some debate to resolve it successfully. Mathematicians fortuitously claimed to find other tarnishes in the proof or to have found new groups that broke the rules. To date, those claims have failed to topple

the proof, and Solomon says he is fairly confident that it will be tenable.

Gorenstein soon saw the theorem's documentation for the sprawling, disorganized tangle that it had become. It was the product of a haphazard evolution. So he persuaded Lyons—and in 1982 the two of them ambushed Solomon—to help forge a revision, a more accessible and organized presentation, which would become the so-called second-generation proof. Their goals were to lay out its logic and keep future generations from having to reinvent the arguments, Lyons says. In addition, the effort would whittle the proof's 15,000 pages down, reducing it to merely 3,000 or 4,000.

Gorenstein envisioned a series of books that would neatly collect all the disparate pieces and streamline the logic to iron over idiosyncrasies and obviate redundancies. In the 1980s the proof was inaccessible to all but the seasoned veterans of its forging. Mathematicians had labored on it for decades, after all, and wanted to be able to share their work with future generations. A second-generation proof would give Gorenstein a way to defuse his misgivings that their efforts would be lost amid heavy books in dusty libraries.

Gorenstein did not live to see the last piece put in place, much less raise a glass at the Smith and Baxter house. He died of lung cancer on Martha's Vineyard in 1992. "He never stopped working," Lyons recalls. "We had three conversations the day before he died, all about the proof. There were no goodbyes or anything; it was all business."

Proving It Again

The first volume of the second-generation proof appeared in 1994. It was more expository than a standard math text and included only 2 of 30 proposed sections that could entirely span the Enormous Theorem. The second volume was published in 1996, and subsequent ones have continued to the present—the sixth appeared in 2005.

Foote says the second-generation pieces fit together better than the original chunks. "The parts that have appeared are more coherently written and much better organized," he says. "From a historical perspective, it's noteworthy to have the proof in one place. Otherwise, it becomes sort of folklore, in a sense. Even if you believe it's been done, it becomes impossible to check."

Solomon and Lyons are finishing the seventh book this summer, and a small band of mathematicians have already made inroads into the eighth and ninth. Solomon estimates that the streamlined proof will eventually take up 10 or 11 volumes, which means that just more than half of the revised proof has been published.

Solomon elucidates that the 10 or 11 volumes still will not entirely cover the second-generation proof. Even the new, streamlined version includes references to supplementary volumes and previous theorems, proved elsewhere. In some ways, that reach speaks to the cumulative nature of mathematics: every proof is a product not only of its time but of all the thousands of years of thought that came before.

In a 2005 article in the *Notices of the American Mathematical Society*[6], mathematician E. Brian Davies of King's College London pointed out that the "proof has never been written down in its entirety, may never be written down, and as presently envisaged would not be comprehensible to any single individual." His article brought up the uncomfortable idea that some mathematical efforts may be too complex to be understood by mere mortals. Davies's words drove Smith and his

three coauthors to put together the comparatively concise book that was celebrated at the party in Oak Park.

The Enormous Theorem's proof may be beyond the scope of most mathematicians—to say nothing of curious amateurs—but its organizing principle provides a valuable tool for the future. Mathematicians have a long-standing habit of proving abstract truths decades, if not centuries, before they become useful outside the field.

"One thing that makes the future exciting is that it is difficult to prognosticate," Solomon observes. "Geniuses come along with ideas that nobody of our generation has had. There is this temptation, this wish and dream, that there is some deeper understanding still out there."

The Next Generation

These decades of deep thinking did not only move the proof forward; they built a community. Judith Baxter—who trained as a mathematician—says group theorists form an unusually social group. "The people in group theory are often lifelong friends," she observes. "You see them at meetings, travel with them, go to parties with them, and it really is a wonderful community."

Not surprisingly, these mathematicians who lived through the rapture of finishing the first iteration of the proof are eager to preserve its ideas. Accordingly, Solomon and Lyons have recruited other mathematicians to help them finish the new version and preserve it for the future. That is not easy: many younger mathematicians see the proof as something that has already been done, and they are eager for something different.

In addition, working on rewriting a proof that has already been established takes a kind of reckless enthusiasm for group theory. Solomon found a familiar devotee to the field in Capdeboscq, one of a handful of younger mathematicians carrying the torch for the completion of the second-generation proof. She became enamored of group theory after taking a class from Solomon.

"To my surprise, I remember reading and doing the exercises and thinking that I loved it. It was beautiful," Capdeboscq says. She got beguiled with working on the second-generation proof after Solomon asked for her help in figuring out some of the missing pieces that would eventually become part of the sixth volume. Streamlining the proof, she says, lets mathematicians look for more straightforward approaches to arcane problems.

Capdeboscq likens the effort to refining a rough draft. Gorenstein, Lyons, and Solomon laid out the plan, but she says it is her job, and the job of a few other youngsters, to see all the pieces fall into place: "We have the road map, and if we follow it, at the end the proof should come out."

(Adapted from *Scientific American*)

Notes



Illinois

Illinois is a state in the mid-western region of the United States, achieving statehood in 1818. It is the 6th most populous state and 25th largest state in terms of land area, and is often noted as a microcosm of the entire country. The word "Illinois" comes from a French rendering of a native Algonquin word. With Chicago in the northeast, small industrial cities and great agricultural productivity in central and northern Illinois, and natural resources like coal, timber, and petroleum in the south, Illinois has a diverse economic base and is a

major transportation hub.

② The Classification of Finite Simple Groups

In mathematics, the classification of the finite simple groups is a theorem stating that every finite simple group belongs to one of four broad classes described below. These groups can be seen as the basic building blocks of all finite groups, in a way reminiscent of the way the prime numbers are the basic building blocks of the natural numbers.

③ Higgs boson

Higgs boson is an elementary particle in the Standard Model of particle physics. It is the quantum excitation of the Higgs field, a fundamental field of crucial importance to particle physics theory first suspected to exist in the 1960s. Unlike other known fields such as the electromagnetic field, it has a non-zero constant value in vacuum.

④ CERN's Large Hadron Collider

The Large Hadron Collider (LHC) is the world's largest and most powerful particle collider, most complex experimental facility ever built, and the largest single machine in the world. It was built by the European Organization for Nuclear Research (CERN) between 1998 and 2008 in collaboration with over 10,000 scientists and engineers from over 100 countries, as well as hundreds of universities and laboratories. The aim of the LHC is to allow physicists to test the predictions of different theories of particle physics, including measuring the properties of the Higgs boson and searching for the large family of new particles predicted by super-symmetric theories, as well as other unsolved questions of physics.

⑤ Great Pyramid of Giza

The Great Pyramid of Giza is the oldest and largest of the three pyramids in the Giza pyramid complex bordering what is now El Giza, Egypt. It is the oldest of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World, and the only one to remain largely intact. Based on a mark in an interior chamber naming the work gang and a reference to the fourth dynasty Egyptian Pharaoh Khufu, Egyptologists believe that the pyramid was built as a tomb over a 10-to-20-year period concluding around 2560 BC.

⑥ *Notices of the American Mathematical Society*

Notices of the American Mathematical Society is the membership journal of the American Mathematical Society (AMS), published monthly except for the combined June/July issue. The first volume appeared in 1953. The *Notices* is the world's most widely read mathematical journal. As the membership journal of the American Mathematical Society, the *Notices* is sent to the approximately 30,000 AMS members worldwide, one-third of whom reside outside the United States. By publishing high-level exposition, the *Notices* provides opportunities for mathematicians to find out what is going on in the field. Each issue contains one or two such expository articles that describe current developments in mathematical research, written by professional mathematicians. The *Notices* also carries articles on the history of mathematics, mathematics education, and professional issues facing mathematicians, as well as reviews of books and other works.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text A the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. justify	2. fortuitous
3. enamoured	4. wayward
5. hallucinating	6. illuminate
7. distinct	8. blemish
9. support	10. reveal
11. attribute	12. personage

Antonyms

1. docile	2. indifference
3. mislay	4. homogeneous
5. scant	6. resistance
7. systematic	8. certainty

III. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 10 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. America's advantages due to these firms could ________ if their ability to innovate remains stagnant.
   A) fodder B) fester C) fluster D) falter
2. Open that old ________ from the bookshelf in the backroom, stick your nose in its pages and smell the ink, the glue and the immortality of the printed words.
   A) rote B) tote C) tome D) dome
3. A ________ of this principle is that a learning algorithm should never be evaluated for its results in the training set because this shows no evidence of an ability to generalize to unseen instances.
   A) coronary B) corollary C) coroner D) coronet

4. Police in India spray ________ crowds with colored water: stained and sodden agitators are easier to identify.
   A) unruly   B) scaly   C) burly   D) spindly
5. Since conservatives constantly shout themselves hoarse about the dangers posed by moral relativism, and constantly ________ that they are in favor of absolute moral standards, this would seem to be a bit odd, even contradictory.
   A) aerate   B) calibrate   C) iterate   D) enumerate
6. Whenever you need a boost, just rub a ________ between your fingers to release the fragrant aroma into the air.
   A) spawn   B) spasm   C) spree   D) sprig
7. Using observatories on the earth and in space, astronauts have been able to study the nature of the ________ in unprecedented detail.
   A) cosmos   B) thermos   C) cosine   D) twine
8. He was offered a couple of jobs but stayed dogged about his salary demands and about a title that would ________ a man of his stature.
   A) befall   B) befit   C) beehive   D) besiege
9. This article focuses on helping you surmount some of the more difficult problems associated with _______ hardware setup.
   A) discontinuous   B) dissident   C) disparate   D) discursive
10. The use of a solicitor trained as a mediator would _____ the need for independent legal advice.
   A) marinate   B) obviate   C) lubricate   D) placate

IV. Cultural Kaleidoscope

Directions: Please choose the most appropriate answer to each statement.

1. A ________ is an elementary particle with 0 charge and mass about equal to a proton, which enters into the structure of the atomic nucleus.
   A) neon   B) neuron   C) neuter   D) neutron
2. The role of ________ is embodied in many areas, such as in the arts, in mathematics, in science and nature, and even in the design of musical instruments.
   A) vestry   B) symmetry   C) gantry   D) idolatry
3. Goldbach _______, one of the antiquated and best-known unsolved problems in number theory and all of mathematics, states that every even integer greater than 2 can be expressed as the sum of two primes.
   A) confetti   B) conjecture   C) conjurer   D) connoisseur
4. ________, a second major volume by the esteemed Dr. Drake, is a lavish exploration of fantastical beasts, from unicorns to gryphons, centaurs and sea serpents.
   A) Monsterology   B) Ornithology   C) Dermatology   D) Immunology
5. Three U.S. presidents have been elected while living in ________: Abraham Lincoln, Ulysses S. Grant, and Barack Obama.
   A) Ohio   B) New Jersey   C) Illinois   D) Florida

V. Rhetoric Appreciation

Directions: A rhetorical device or a figure of speech is a technique that an author or speaker uses to convey to the reader or listener a meaning with the goal of persuading him or her towards considering a topic from a different perspective, using language designed to encourage or evoke an emotional response in the audience. The widely-used rhetorical devices include parallelism, metaphor, repetition, antithesis, simile, symbolism, climax, alliteration, personification, etc. Please identify the rhetorical devices used in the following sentences. And then reread Text A to find out the rhetoric in use as much as you can.

1. ________________
   We could die, or we could retire, or we could forget.
2. ________________
   These decades of deep thinking did not only move the proof forward...
3. ________________
   To some extent, most people these days treat the theorem like a black box.
4. ________________
   ...and his vision energized a new group of mathematicians...
5. ________________
   ...then a graduate student at the University of Cambridge and now a professor at the University of Vermont, ...

VI. Translation Practice

Directions: Please put the following sentences into Chinese.

1. The assertion that it corroborates is known, appositely, as the Enormous Theorem. (The theorem itself is quite simple. It is the proof that gets gigantic.) The cornucopia at Smith's house seemed an appropriate way to advocate and honor this behemoth. The proof is the largest in the history of mathematics.
2. For mathematicians devoted to the rigorous and assiduous study of symmetry, or group theorists, the theorem is an accomplishment no less sweeping, important, or fundamental than the periodic table of the elements was for chemists.
3. These mathematicians wielded 200-page manuscripts like algebraic machetes, cutting away abstract weeds to uneath the deepest foundations of symmetry. (Freeman Dyson of the Institute for Advanced Study in Princeton, New Jersey, referred to the onslaught of discovery of strange, beautiful groups as a "magnificent zoo".)
4. "It was amazing, like two Titans with lightning going between their brains," Foote says. "They never seemed to be at a loss for some absolutely wonderful and totally off-the-wall techniques for doing something. It was breathtaking."
5. Yet Gorenstein was a charismatic algebraist, and his vision energized a new group of mathematicians—with ambitions neither simple nor finite—who were eager to make their mark.

VII. Writing Workshop

Directions: Please reflect on the following great lines and then write about your feelings after reading Text A.

锲而舍之，朽木不折；锲而不舍，金石可镂。（荀子《劝学篇》）

路漫漫其修远兮，吾将上下而求索。（屈原《楚辞 · 离骚》）

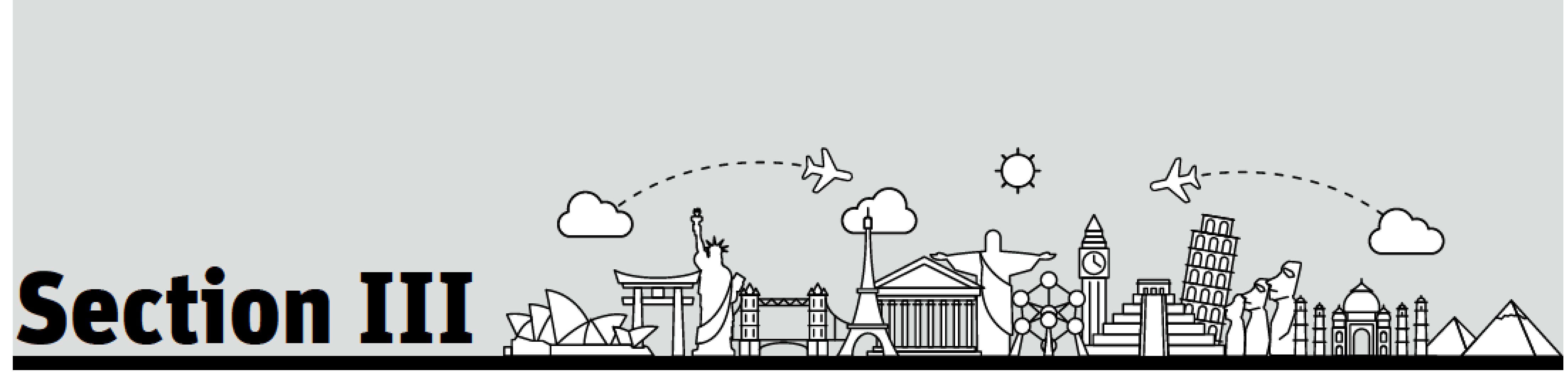
人生在勤，不索何获？（张衡《应闲》）

烈士暮年，壮心不已。（曹操《步出夏门行 · 龟虽寿》）

海到无边天作岸，山登绝顶我为峰。（林则徐《出老》）

Words for Reference

painstaking	fortitude	sacrifice	respectability	devout
innovative	pursuit	workaholic	mirth	persistent
clamber	fastidious			



Section III

Text B: Aliens Among Us

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **squalid** ['skwɒlɪd] ***adj.***

being dirty, untidy, and in bad condition; being immoral or dishonest

synonym dirty; filthy; grimy; diabolical
antonym clean; tidy; sanitary
word family squalor; squalidness
related phrase a tiny squalid apartment; squalid behaviors; a squalid affair

Example 1 The migrants have been living in squalid conditions.

Example 2 They're involved in a rather squalid battle as to who controls the party.

② **subversive** [səb'vɜːsɪv] ***adj.***

being intended to weaken or destroy a political system or government

synonym ruinous
word family subversion; subversiveness; subverter; subvert
related phrase the subversive propaganda; the subversive literature

Example 1 The play was promptly banned as subversive and possibly treasonous.

Example 2 He was engaged in subversive activities.

③ **loathsome** ['ləʊðsəm] ***adj.***

causing or being able to cause nausea; highly offensive, arousing aversion or disgust

synonym abominable
antonym likesome
word family loathsomeness; loathsomely
related phrase the loathsome spectacle we were obliged to witness; a loathsome smell; a loathsome crime

Example 1 Some people think that snakes are loathsome creatures.

Example 2 In all her miserable experience, there was nothing else so awful and so loathsome as this sense.

④ **surreptitious** [ˌsʌrəp'tɪʃəs] ***adj.***

doing something secretly

synonym	secret; underground; unauthorized
antonym	public; overt; authorized; aboveboard
word family	surreptitiousness; surreptitiously
related phrase	the surreptitious software; the surreptitious observation

Example 1 He made a surreptitious entrance to the club through the little door in the brick wall.

Example 2 Rory tried to sneak a surreptitious glance at Adam's wristwatch.

⑤ **sacrilege** ['sækrəlɪdʒ] ***n.***

the behaviour that shows great disrespect for a holy place or object; disrespect that is shown for someone who is widely admired or for a belief that is widely accepted

synonyms	profanation; damnation; desecration; blasphemy
word family	sacrilegiousness; sacrilegious; sacrilegiously
related phrase	it is sacrilege (for sb.) to do sth.

Example 1 Stealing from a place of worship was regarded as sacrilege.

Example 2 It is sacrilege to offend democracy.

⑥ **rumination** [ˌru:mɪ'neɪʃən] ***n.***

careful thoughts about something

synonym	reflection; meditation; thought
word family	ruminate; ruminative; ruminator
related phrase	the cultural rumination; profound ruminations about life

Example 1 Many of Vasari's ruminations on the subject are not always to be believed.

Example 2 And so it's really just this kind of rumination and you could do this while you're sleeping.

⑦ **distraught** [dɪ'strɔ:t] ***adj.***

being so upset and worried that they cannot think clearly

synonym	nuts; delirious
antonym	quiet; calm
related phrase	be distraught with grief

Example 1 Mr. Barker's distraught parents were last night being comforted by relatives.

Example 2 Weeks after the accident, she remained distraught.

⑧ **seasoned** ['si:znd] ***adj.***

being experienced; being aged or processed

synonym	experienced; diplomatic
antonym	inexperienced
word family	season; seasoner; seasoning

related phrase a seasoned academic; a seasoned traveler/observer

Example 1 Artie was by then a seasoned musician with six albums to his credit.

Example 2 He began acting with the confidence of a seasoned performer.

⑨ **tortuous** ['tɔ:tʃuəs] ***adj.***

being full of bends and twists; being very long and complicated (a process, a piece of writing, etc.)

synonym curve; twisted; perplexing
antonym straight; right; unbent; direct
word family tortuosity; tortuously
related phrase the tortuous path; the tortuous history; tortuous processes

Example 1 The only road access is a tortuous mountain route

Example 2 The book begins with a long, tortuous introduction.

⑩ **cajole** [kə'dʒəul] ***vt.*** **(cajoled/cajoled/cajoling)**

to get someone to do something after persuading he/she for some time.

synonym delude; accost
word family cajolery
related phrase cajole sb. into doing sth.; cajole sb. out of sth.; cajole sth. out of sb.

Example 1 He cajoled his parents into consent giving him money to buy a new car.

Example 2 Tom cajoled the letter out of his girlfriend.

⑪ **proxy** ['prɒksɪ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* proxies)**

a person authorized to act for another; a person or thing that is acting or being used in the place of someone or something else; a power of attorney document given by shareholders of a corporation authorizing a specific vote on their behalf at a corporate meeting

synonym deputy; agent; substitute; people
related phrase by proxy; stand (be) proxy for; a proxy vote; the proxy server

Example 1 You can vote either in person or by proxy.

Example 2 Price differences are used as a proxy for differences in quality.

⑫ **usurp** [ju:'zɜ:p] ***vt.*** **(usurped/usurped/usurping)**

to seize and take control without authority and possibly with force; to take the place of

synonym seize; overthrow; snatch up
word family usurper; usurpation
related phrase usurp the power; usurp the throne

Example 1 Did she usurp his place in his mother's heart?

Example 2 Little by little he usurped his boss's authority.

⑬ **accomplice** [ə'kʌmplɪs] ***n.***

a person who helps them commit a crime

synonym collaborator; complice; co-conspirator
word family complice; complicit; complicity
related phrase an accomplice of the murder

Example 1 Witnesses said the gunman immediately ran to a motorcycle being ridden by an accomplice.

Example 2 He stalled the police for ten minutes so his accomplice could get away.

⑭ **complicity** [kəm'plɪsɪtɪ] ***n.***

involvement with other people in an illegal activity or plan

synonyms conspiracy; collusion
word family complice; complicit; accomplice
related phrase complicity and conflict

Example 1 Recently a number of policemen were sentenced to death for their complicity in the murder.

Example 2 The Iranian government denies any complicity in what's going on in Iraq.

⑮ **covert** ['kʌvət; 'kəuvɜːt] ***adj.***

being secret or hidden

synonym concealed
antonym overt; public
word family covertly
related phrase covert operations; covert actions by the CIA

Example 1 They have been supplying covert military aid to the rebels.

Example 2 The army carried out covert surveillance of the building for several months.

⑯ **imbecile** ['ɪmbɪsiːl] ***adj.***

being very stupid or behaving very stupidly

synonym stupid; weak; moronic
word family imbecile (*n.*); imbecilic; imbecility
related phrase imbecile remarks

Example 1 It was an imbecile thing to do.

Example 2 If I was once to sit down under it, I should become imbecile.

⑰ **unassailable** [ˌʌnə'seɪləbəl] ***adj.***

not able to be criticized, altered; made weaker or beaten

synonym indubitable; invulnerable
antonym assailable; vulnerable

word family unassailably; assailable; assailably; assail
related phrase the unassailable evidence; an unassailable argument; unassailable truths

Example 1 The result gave the team an unassailable lead.

Example 2 The party's position looked unassailable.

⑱ **malevolent** [mə'levələnt] ***adj.***

deliberately trying to cause harm or evil

synonym vicious; poisonous
antonym well-meaning; meritorious
word family malevolence; malevolently
related phrase a malevolent look; a malevolent smile

Example 1 We must thwart his malevolent scheme.

Example 2 He gave her a dark, malevolent look.

⑲ **supplant** [sə'plɑːnt] ***vt.*** **(supplanted/supplanted/supplanting)**

to take the place

synonym replace; substitute for
word family supplanter
related phrase be supplanted by; supplant one's position

Example 1 He was hanged for plotting to supplant the king.

Example 2 Most hand labour has been supplanted by the computers.

⑳ **philanthropy** [fɪ'lænθrəpi] ***n.***

the practice of giving money and help to people who need it, without wanting anything in return

synonym charity
word family philanthropic; philanthropist
related phrase the philanthropy column

Example 1 This is true because fraternity and philanthropy, unlike justice, do not have precise limits.

Example 2 It is difficult to combine philanthropy with business.

㉑ **procure** [prə'kjʊə] ***vt.*** **(procured/procured/procuring)**

to obtain something especially when it is difficult to get

synonym acquire; obtain
word family procurance; procurement; procurable
related phrase procure sth. for sb.

Example 1 It remained very difficult to procure food, fuel, and other daily necessities.

Example 2 He was accused of procuring weapons for terrorists.

㉒ pernicious [pəˈnɪʃəs] *adj.*

being very harmful

synonym	harmful; malignant; destructive; demonic
antonym	harmless; nonmalignant
word family	perniciousness; perniciously
related phrase	the pernicious effects of poverty; the media's pernicious influence

Example 1 I did what I could, but her mother's influence was pernicious.

Example 2 Business may be troublesome, but idleness is pernicious.

㉓ thrall [θrɔːl] *n.*

being controlled or strongly influenced by someone or something

synonym	enslavement
word family	thralldom
related phrase	in one's thrall

Example 1 Tomorrow's children will be even more in the thrall of the silicon chip.

Example 2 This pianist held every audience in thrall by her playing.

㉔ pull off

to succeed in achieving

synonym	win; bear off
related phrase	pull off the first prize

Example 1 The National League for Democracy pulled off a landslide victory.

Example 2 I'm sure you will pull off the competition.

㉕ be committed to

to devote oneself to; to bend oneself to

synonym	be devoted to; be dedicated to
related phrase	be committed to (doing) sth.; be committed to the peace of the world

Example 1 China will continue to be committed to the reconstruction course of Iraq.

Example 2 The company is committed to expanding the oversea market.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

amoral	analogue	asphalt	assail	astute
bigwig	bewitch	brainwashing	cabal	caress
circumvent	classmate	cohesion	cosmic	covet
cower	cowl	discotheque	discreditable	disgruntle
dishonour	disinterested	disrepute	drudge	echelon

evasion	evasion	facade	fearsome	fitment
flout	foursome	fraternity	gestation	gouge
hallucinate	heinous	heinous	hellish	histology
humbug	implore	impregnable	inextricably	inimitable
interpersonal	intricacy	irksome	irreparable	jibe
jubilation	lustre	majestic	malicious	malleable
mentor	metaphysical	midget	minion	minuet
mirage	misconceive	nausea	nitrous	nocturnal
overwork	palaeontology	paragon	paranoia	paraphernalia
parasol	Pentagon	perjury	phobia	physiology
porous	probate	procrastinate	proctor	proponent
psych	psychoanalysis	psychopath	psychosis	psychosomatic
pylon	python	quip	radiology	ravenous
remission	renal	repercussion	respiration	rulebook
silo	sleazy	spacecraft	squalor	strident
surreal	tenon	ultimate	unremitting	upbeat
uppermost	whimsy	wristwatch		

Part 2 Text

Aliens Among Us—A UFO Conspiracy Hypothesis in a Religious Mode

Let's play "What If". Recently, John Lear provoked widespread discussion and debate in the UFO research community by his hypothesis that aliens (or "Grays") and what is presumed to be a CIA[1]/MJ-12[2] amalgam have had a longtime joint venture in which hidden underground bases for alien activities play a part. Lear characterizes this as nefarious. I agree with Lear and see aspects to the UFO abduction experience which indicate there may be even more vast and sinister intricacies of it than Lear has described.

Here is the "worst case scenario" I project.

The thrust of UFO research is into the metaphysical, where things are not always as they seem. In the case of the Gray abducting aliens, my conjecture is this: they are squalid and completely amoral. I get a strong of sense of conspiracy by them—a vast, subversive plot of long duration and careful coordination which aims at nothing less than the complete enslavement of humanity. I see nothing—absolutely nothing—about their words and deeds which indicates anything but humbug, evasion, misdirection, manipulation, exploitation and total disregard for human values, personal property and our concept of respect for the inviolability of personhood. We humans consider kidnapping and violation of civil rights to be criminal, rape to be loathsome, brainwashing and mind control to be heinous, lying to be discreditable, surreptitious surgical invasion of the body to be malicious, and damage to personal property to be vandalism. The Gray aliens exhibit such behavior. On the other hand, I know of no behavior by them which is clearly intended to show respect for our personhood, property, civil rights, moral values and concern for truthful speech; they routinely violate all that. As I view the situation, it's a ghastly picture which emerges. It is not merely alien; it is profoundly evil in precisely the sense given in *The Book of Revelation*[3] and other

sacred scriptures which describe a battle between the forces of light and the forces of darkness for the salvation or sacrilege of humanity and the planet. So when abducting aliens say, "We're here to serve you," I take it to mean they have cookbook recipes in mind.

What follows is a summary of my rumination on the topic I acknowledge at the outset that it is indistinguishable from scare mongering science fiction novels; I also acknowledge that it has numerous underpinning assumptions which are open to challenge. (To name just two: are the alien abductions literally real or are they psychological projections from the mythic level of the human unconscious, created by overactive, distraught human minds, and are the MJ-12 documents authentic?) Moreover, the data on which I hang this scenario are few, tenuous and far from indisputable. I've deliberately stayed away from discussing this topic in my public statements on the UFO experience because the evidence for my position is difficult to describe to an audience which is not psychologically sophisticated nor parapsychologically educated. Most people would take the paragraph above as evidence of my whimsy bordering on paranoia and religious mirage, if not full-blown psychosis.

However, I claim to have enough self-awareness and psychological understanding to say that such is not the case, but rather is the result of thoughtful observation and analysis leading logically to a plausible conclusion by a seasoned investigator of the paranormal and surreal. So if the issue of my sanity can be put aside, at least transitorily, I offer this statement as a hypothesis for discussion of the most tortuous—and potentially important—aspect of the UFO experience. I am "floating" it first among members of the Paranormal section of CompuServe[4]'s ISSUES Forum because you are among the most sophisticated, clear-thinking people I know in this field of wild stories, fuzzy data and wounded psyches. I welcome the most hard-hitting feedback. I don't claim to have the "final" answer to the UFO question. I only claim to offer the following with sincerity, the most rigorous thinking I can bring to it, and a wish to provoke further discussion and investigation along the line I'm developing. Of course, it's possible to be sincere but cajoled. I am willing—indeed, eager—to be shown that is so in my case.

Therefore, in hope of the most hard-hitting feedback, and in the interest of reality-testing, here we go with "What If".

Let's begin with the humans and/or humanoids who have been reported by abductees to be present on UFOs, apparently working with/for the aliens. There are many such reports, most notably that by Travis Walton[5]. If the Gray aliens have been conducting a genetic experiment or an interspecies breeding program for at least several decades—which Budd Hopkins[6] work indicates—then there could be humans who've been raised under alien control since infancy and who are thoroughly alien in their loyalties and psychology, although they certainly would be able to pass as "real" people. While seeming to be ordinary citizens, they would nevertheless be at least programmed, if not naturally inclined through psychological bonding, to identify with the alien culture.

Such proxies could have been raised in an off-world site—say, a base on the moon or Mars or even a gigantic "mother ship" *—and then reintroduced to human society, with sufficient training and unremitting support from aliens to make their way into careers in many fields. Depending on the scope of the aliens' work, the abducting aliens/Grays could have hundreds or even thousands of their people infiltrated into science, industry, finance, politics, education, the military, etc. —with some undoubtedly in positions of great power and influence. These people could, in turn, have

recruited others to various degrees, creating "cells" in the classic fashion of a resistance movement preparing to overthrow the establishment. More likely, though, they would have made their true identity known only to other "aliens among us" and committed true-human accomplice who have been voluntarily working in complicity with the aliens.

This infiltration activity would not be limited to the US. If the Gray aliens are doing it here, they're doing it everywhere. Of course, being scheming and untrustworthy, bent on planetary domination, they would not have told anything about this to MJ-12 or other official government/military groups they might have contacted over the decades. And if they contacted MJ-12 or its successors, we can be fairly certain they've contacted the Soviet Union and other major powers, but wouldn't have let each know about the others. The infiltration would represent a hidden agenda behind their relatively more open agenda with MJ-12.

In parallel with that infiltration movement would be *The Manchurian Candidate*[7]-type programming of the abductees and alien human/humanoids. In other words, if the Grays' ultimate intention is world control—which is my conclusion—they've got a couple of ways to get there. The last resort would be violent takeover, using naked warfare. That would certainly unite true humans in opposition, and even if the Grays conquered humanity, we would continue to resist by any and all means, even if our conditions were reduced to the status of POW[8] at *The Hanoi Hilton*[9]. No, the aliens would seek a bloodless takeover by conquering through propaganda and deception. Remember that American POWs in Korea and Vietnam were continually subjected to brainwashing because their bodies were captured but not their minds. The aliens would recognize that and, in order to make their victory complete, try to indoctrinate us, through covert means, to accept them as we walk down a garden path, rather than have to "reeducate" some five billion people in effect held captive as POWs.

So, the more intelligent approach would be to co-opt the human race—subvert it through a cultural conditioning control system such as Jacques Vallée[10] suggests in *Dimensions*[11]. The MJ-12 group and its counterparts in other nations would be the starting point. Here's where the plot thickens.

In fact, it ties in with more mundane conspiracy theories in the political sphere which allege that the Rockefellers, Rothschilds, Trilateralists, Bilderbergers, Council on Foreign Relations and other groups are the hidden powers and the secret establishments directing world affairs through international banking and control of the media, education, science and military/political institutions in order to set up a one-world social order with themselves at the seats of power.

There are some plausible arguments for this made by responsible, credible thinkers and scholars such as Carroll Quigley[12] and Antony Sutton[13]; there are also some absolutely imbecile claims made by head-for-the-hills survivalists and fringe Christian fundamentalists. I try to assess them all to see what looks viable, weighing them against my standards of reason, logic and evidence. Now, it's perfectly clear that international conspiracies can and do happen; the question is to what degree and how well coordinated and controlled they are by the alleged secret powers.

Until the last few years, I pretty much dismissed the notion of a generations-old international conspiracy to set up a one-world order controlled by international banking interests such as the Rockefellers and Rothschilds. I reasoned that if there were one conspiracy, there would be others, and the net result would be to negate or at least neutralize each other. No one would gain total control or unassailable ascendancy. The vagaries of world affairs were just too unpredictable; too

many things could go wrong; people wouldn't stay loyal to such a cause all their lives; evidence of it simply couldn't be covered up forever.

Then the Gray aliens came into view, and the situation took on a wholly different complexion. If the aliens have secretly planted their agents throughout civilization for decades and if they are pursuing contact with the top echelons of power here in the US. via MJ-12 and its successors, then over the years they could have been playing out a hand that was strategized nowhere but in Hell. Look at the membership of those power groups such as MJ-12. They lead straight into the heart of the most disturbing "conventional" conspiracy theories about international finance and military/ political intrigue. For example, consider the Skull and Bones[14] Society at Yale. It is, from the political conspiracy theorists' point of view, the quintessential "evil empire" within the USA. George Bush, McGeorge Bundy, and a large number of the Trilateral Commission[15] members and the Council on Foreign Relations[16] were tapped by this secret society while they were undergraduates at Yale and were bound by an oath of secrecy to loyalty to the "Bones" purpose, which goes far, far beyond simple collegial fraternity and the typical "good ol' boy" network.

The conspiracy theorists say that the aim of all this is to covertly create a new world order in which the secret establishment becomes the hidden power controlling global affairs—its economy, science, industry, religion, education, technology, etc., even while maintaining for the masses a facade of increasing freedom and prosperity for the world. Nationhood would wither away, but political power would not. It would be consolidated behind a screen through the fraternal bonds of men whose aims and loyalty are not to any country or group except their own transnational cabal.

Imagine that such a conspiracy has been going on for decades; that would explain US State Department approval of high-technology transfer from American industry to the Soviet Union, even when it ends up used against America in military situations, and multimillion dollar bank loans to the Soviet Union with no assurances sought that they won't be used to underwrite anti-American activities. Then imagine that the aliens not only know of the conspiracy and never misconceive its operations, but have also cunningly schemed to infiltrate it and co-opt it by pretending to establish friendly but secret relations with it. What would be the nature of the directing intelligence behind the aliens' scheme? It seems to me that the Gray aliens alone are not smart enough or powerful enough to pull it off, despite their technological edge. I see it like this: The aliens are glad to let the human conspirators continue their work aimed at world domination because the humans don't realize the danger they've gotten into by making what is in reality a diabolical pact. The human secret establishment thinks it's simply got an edge by making contact with the aliens because the aliens can provide advanced technology to help the power brokers advance their scheme; all they have to do is let the aliens continue with their "scientific" work of abducting people for "examination". But the aliens' intention is to be the power behind the power behind the throne. And the MJ-12 successors played right into their hands.

When John Lear says the MJ-12 team is scared of what they've gotten into, he would be right if the people involved have begun to realize the magnitude of the deadly game they've been suckered into—which seems likely. Just as they see their "final" victory nearing, the aliens trump them and in effect the secret establishment itself becomes subtly, secretly but inextricably enslaved, exactly as they sought to do to others. A delicious quip there—but don't laugh too loud about it because the situation, if I'm correct, is appalling. It's the Book of Revelation coming true: a titanic war in the

heavens between the powers of light and the powers of darkness for the liberation or enslavement of all humanity.

Now, return to those alien-raised humans and humanoids. If the aliens are as knowledgeable about human psychology, physiology and anatomy as UFO research indicates—i.e., reports show that they can completely control the human nervous system, effect instant healings, alter memory, perform precise surgical operations on the brain and visceral organs—then they are wholly competent to "program" human beings to react in certain ways upon signal. Under hypnosis, abductee Betty Andreasson[17] stated repeatedly in The Andreasson Affair—Phase Two that she would reveal something in the future when the time is right as determined by the aliens; quite independently, her future husband, Bob Luca, received exactly the same mental programming from abducting Grays.

Thus, the alien-humans would undoubtedly be programmed to rise up with violence and armed warfare if the aliens felt it necessary to achieve their aims in extremis. Imagine hundreds of thousands of Manchurian Candidates, each programmed to eliminate/assassinate designated leaders and bigwigs so that the aliens' hand-picked candidates can come forward.

Far out? Not in the shadowy world of subversion, political intrigue and life-or-death struggle for conquest of Planet Earth.

Where do all the alien-humans come from? Many would undoubtedly be bred in vitro from sperm and ova, but many others would have been obtained the easy way—by kidnapping children. An estimated one million children are missing in the USA each year. Where could they all go? If just one percent of them were abducted by aliens, that's a sizable population to work with at off-world bases.

If you will grant the plausibility of this admittedly fantastic scenario so far, it then makes sense to say that the Gray aliens are not the "ultimate" type of beings contacting us in this matter. They are alien, through I'm not convinced they're extraterrestrial. However, it appears there is another "race" behind the Gray aliens, covertly directing their activities. This "race" is not merely "alien"—it is evil. It is truly sinister, malevolent and unswervingly committed to the damnation of all humanity—and it is definitely not extraterrestrial. These intelligences have been characterized in ancient scriptures and sacred traditions as native to Earth, demonic, hostile to our very existence as free people and intent upon supplanting us totally—physically, mentally and spiritually. St. Paul spoke of humanity contending with "powers and principalities". My reason, research and personal experience lead me to conclude that such entities are ontologically real, albeit paraphysical. I see the hand of such intelligences behind much of the UFO phenomenon. I will even name the chief entity, using its Judeo-Christian[18] appellation: Lucifer[19]/Satan. To say more than that in a meaningful manner, however, would take several more kilobytes. I am prepared to get into the issue of Lucifer/Satan and its nature, purpose and role in the UFO experience, but that will depend on my assessment of the response to this discussion.

In closing, I will say that, in my judgment, we humans are not alone against forces of darkness. I also see benign and even benevolent "alien intelligences" here as well, trying to assist us in this struggle for psychobiological integrity, spiritual advancement and true planetary unity, as Brad Steiger[20] suggests in *The Fellowship*. We are surrounded by "angels unawares" who, as agents of godliness, seek in subtle ways to guide and protect us. For example, the beings of light whom people

meet during near-death experiences (NDE) are providing tremendous support for humanity in what I see as a struggle between the forces of light and darkness. The light-beings' nature is clearly evident by the effect they have upon human lives. Completely unlike the abducting Gray aliens, the NDE light-beings produce no traumatic consequences on people whatsoever. Humans who meet them while in the near-death state report later that they sensed only unconditional philanthropy and forgiveness for misdeeds radiating wordlessly from these entities. Abducting aliens induce phobia and longlasting anxiety, disturbing dreams and a disturbed personality; NDE light beings have an aftereffect which procures people a sense of uppermost peace, cosmic goodness, reverence for life, deepened spirituality, concern for fellow humans and the environment—a general revaluing of a materialistic, egotistic life-style in the name of God and Love. Here in America alone, an estimated 8,000,000 people have undergone an NDE. If America is the leading edge of a millennial pernicious invasion, as I'm postulating, it is also the site of an even greater number of transformative, uplifting, inspiring encounters with entities traditionally called angels, saints and enlightened teachers. And such activity must be happening around the globe. Does this not indicate a colossal support system of metaphysical forces which intend salvation for humanity, building in opposition to what I have posited as a hellish plot aimed at complete thrall of humanity and Planet Earth?

**In 1972, while visiting the Jet Propulsion Laboratory[21] in Pasadena, California, I learned from my rulebook that the fitment had analyzed many UFO photographs. My guide told me that JPL had explained away all of them except one. That one was taken by a man who provided such good information about the time of day, location, camera and film that JPL, after using computer enhancement of the photo, could offer only two explanations. The man who submitted the photo said he saw a UFO passing in front of the moon. JPL would not vindicate it but said there definitely was something real in the photo. The only trouble was that they couldn't tell if it was a small object about two feet in front of the camera or something 1,000 miles long at a distance of 100,000 miles from Earth. A mother ship?*

Notes

① CIA

Cryptonyms are code names or code words used by the U.S. Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) to refer to projects, operations, persons, agencies, etc.

② MJ-12

MJ-12 is the code name of an alleged secret committee of scientists, military leaders, and government officials, formed in 1947 to facilitate recovery and investigation of alien spacecraft. It remains popular among some UFO conspiracy theorists and the concept has appeared in popular culture including television, film and literature.

③ *The Book of Revelation*

Often called *The Revelation to John*, *The Apocalypse of John*, *The Revelation*, or simply *Revelation* or *Apocalypse*, it is a book of the *New Testament* that occupies a central place in Christian eschatology.

④ CompuServe

CompuServe Information Service, also known by its acronym CIS, was the first major commercial online service provider in the United States. It dominated the field during the 1980s and remained a major influence through the mid-1990s.

⑤ Travis Walton

Travis Walton refers to an American logger who claims he was abducted by a UFO on November 5, 1975, while working with a logging crew in Arizona. Walton reappeared after a five-day search. The Walton case received mainstream publicity and remains one of the best-known alleged alien abduction stories, although skeptics consider it a hoax.

⑥ Budd Hopkins

Budd Hopkins (June 15, 1931–August 21, 2011) was an American painter, sculptor, and prominent figure in alien abduction phenomena and related UFO research. He is a prominent leader in the UFO movement.

⑦ *The Manchurian Candidate*

The Manchurian Candidate (1959), by Richard Condon, is a political thriller novel about the son of a prominent U.S. political family who is brainwashed into being an unwitting assassin for a Communist conspiracy.

⑧ POW

POW is a person, whether combatant or non-combatant, who is held in custody by a belligerent power during or immediately after an armed conflict for a range of legitimate and illegitimate reasons.

⑨ *The Hanoi Hilton*

The Hanoi Hilton is a 1987 Vietnam War film which focuses on the experiences of American prisoners of war who were held in the infamous Hoa Lo Prison in Hanoi during the 1960s and 1970s and the story is told from their perspectives.

⑩ Jacques Vallée

Jacques Vallée (September 24, 1939–) is a venture capitalist, computer scientist, author, ufologist and former astronomer currently residing in San Francisco, California. He is an important figure in the study of unidentified flying objects (UFOs), first noted for a defense of the scientific legitimacy of the extraterrestrial hypothesis and later for promoting the interdimensional hypothesis.

⑪ *Dimensions*

Dimensions is a 2011 science fiction-love story film set in the 1920s and 1930s. It was voted Best Film 2012 at the 37th Boston Science Fiction Film Festival and awarded the Gort Award.

⑫ Carroll Quigley

Carroll Quigley (November 9, 1910–January 3, 1977) was an American historian and theorist of the evolution of civilizations. He is noted for his teaching work as a professor at Georgetown

University, for his academic publications, and for his research on the Round Table movement.

⑬ Antony Sutton

Antony Sutton (February 14, 1925–June 17, 2002) was a British and American economist, historian, and writer.

⑭ Skull and Bones

Skull and Bones is an undergraduate senior secret society at Yale University, New Haven, Connecticut. It is the oldest senior class landed society at Yale. The group Skull and Bones is featured in conspiracy theories, which claim that the society plays a role in a global conspiracy for world control.

⑮ the Trilateral Commission

The Trilateral Commission is a non-governmental, non-partisan discussion group founded by David Rockefeller in July 1973, to foster closer cooperation among North America, Western Europe, and Japan.

⑯ the Council on Foreign Relations

The Council on Foreign Relations (CFR), founded in 1921, is a United States 4,900-member organization, nonprofit publisher, and think tank specializing in U.S. foreign policy and international affairs. The CFR promotes globalization, free trade, reducing financial regulations on transnational corporations, and economic consolidation into regional blocs such as NAFTA or the European Union, and develops policy recommendations that reflect these goals.

⑰ Betty Andreasson

On January 25, 1967, at South Ashburnham, Massachusetts United States, a woman claimed to have been taken aboard UFOs by aliens many times over a number of years.

⑱ Judeo-Christian

Judeo-Christian groups Judaism and Christianity, either in reference to Christianity's derivation from Judaism or due to perceived parallels or commonalities shared between those two religions.

⑲ Lucifer

Lucifer is the King James Version rendering of the Hebrew word.

⑳ Brad Steiger

Brad Steiger (February 19, 1936–) is an American author of fiction and non-fiction works on the paranormal, spirituality, UFOs, true crime, and biographies.

㉑ the Jet Propulsion Laboratory

The Jet Propulsion Laboratory (JPL) is a federally funded research and development center and NASA field center located in La Cañada Flintridge, California and Pasadena, California, United States.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Sentence Practice

Directions: Please rewrite the sentences with the proper forms of the given words.

usurp	vindicate	assail	unremittingly	covert
thrall	evasive	cosmos	supplant	echelon

1. I have my own views on this, and some of them are upbeat, but they're hard to summarize without sounding comically universal.
2. At worst, they may be susceptible to swift undoing, enabling secretly retained SS-18s to be backfitted into the de-modified silos.
3. Specifically, proponents of the Alcatel joint venture will criticize strongly one of the most important COCOM agreements limiting such transfers, the so-called "no exceptions" policy adopted in 1980.
4. HB's top stratum in jail may produce a more malleable layer of leaders instead.
5. In the past 30 years, we have seen a string of cases of high-flying business tycoons falling into disrepute due to allegations of corruption, bribery, inside trading and tax avoidance.
6. By the 1930s the wristwatch had almost completely replaced the pocket watch.
7. They went to live for at least three years in Lithuania, and when she returned home she was fully veiled: alienated, lonely, enslavement to a husband who consumed her entire world.
8. Is a life of ongoing drudgery or unrequited struggle really redeemed if there's a larger plan, one to which we have no access, into which it fits?
9. The Congress wants to reverse the reforms and overthrow the presidency.
10. There are those for whom this will not be enough to justify the values of decency and humanity that the Bush administration flouted as it defended us against further terrorist attacks.

III. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text B the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. amicable
2. exterior
3. nauseous
4. sleazy
5. gouge
6. malicious
7. dishonourable
8. meditation
9. jibe
10. hidden

11. delirious
12. illusion
13. fear
14. malignant
15. permeative

Antonyms

1. realistic
2. understand
3. benevolent
4. astute
5. permanently
6. bewitching
7. virtuous
8. liberate
9. deniable
10. overt

IV. Phrase Practice

Directions: Please translate the following verb+noun collocations into Chinese.

1. recruit soldiers
2. recruit new members
3. usurp the throne
4. usurp the name of
5. vindicate one's conduct
6. vindicate one's title to a privilege
7. vindicate the rights of the citizens
8. supplant the regime with a western-style democracy
9. supplant private enterprises
10. procure and supply essential medicines
11. procure an employment
12. induce similar emotions in the audience
13. induce a heartattack
14. assail one with questions
15. assail defense positions

V. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 15 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. The army carried out _____ surveillance of the building for several months.
   A) covet B) covert C) cower D) cowl
2. But tell him, also, to set his _____ and magisterial heart at ease: that I keep strictly within the limits of the law.
   A) renal B) nocturnal C) fraternal D) interpersonal
3. Whether these changes will be benign or _____ will depend in no small part on U.S. diplomacy.

A) malevolent B) succulent C) circumvent D) strident

4. Symptoms tend to appear in late adolescence or early adulthood, and can include delusions, hallucinations, ______, and depression.
A) parasol B) paragon C) paraphernalia D) paranoia

5. A Japanese policeman, ______ by overwork for two months, stabbed himself in the stomach with a knife to get some time off, police said Monday.
A) discotheque B) distraught C) disgruntled D) disinterested

6. That investment put Accel in the upper ______ of Silicon Valley venture capital firms.
A) pylon B) tenon C) python D) echelon

7. He had become a master of ______: his main response to criticism is to threaten, filibuster and delay.
A) evasion B) cohesion C) remission D) repercussion

8. Mr Browne will implore victims to report their treatment to ensure "prosecution of this ______ crime".
A) porous B) nitrous C) heinous D) ravenous

9. Whenever I sat, it would spring upon my knees, covering me with its ______ caresses.
A) fearsome B) loathsome C) foursome D) irksome

10. Studies have shown that ______ and genetics can increase pain sensitivity, and one thing for certain—without the brain there is no pain.
A) histology B) radiology C) physiology D) palaeontology

11. There is a link between high levels of stress and ______, and caffeine was found to correlate with hallucination proneness.
A) psychosis B) psychopath C) psychoanalysis D) psychosomatic

12. You'll be punished if you ______ the witness to commit perjury.
A) procrastinate B) probate C) proctor D) procure

13. There was one mentor who really ignited my profound ______ about life.
A) jubilation B) gestation C) rumination D) respiration

14. He was sacked for gross misconduct in relation to authority, respect and courtesy and ______ conduct.
A) inimitable B) discreditable C) irreparable D) impregnable

15. What if what we think we observe is actually a ______ like the shimmer of hot asphalt in the distance?
A) minion B) minuet C) midget D) mirage

VI. Proofreading

Directions: Please identify and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

1. There is even some evidence of a physical dimension to how fans identify their teams.
2. The M8 and M9 are built in parallel to analogue cameras using similar techniques—the entire process includes roughly 35 people and takes about eight hours per camera.
3. The tactics employed can range from covert bullying to subtle emotional blackmail.
4. With particular formula for brightening, it infiltrates skin to fight against darkness, and lets

your skin glow lustre completely, making you show your charming beauty.

5. For Amy and her classmates, his judgment was sovereign, his power assailable.

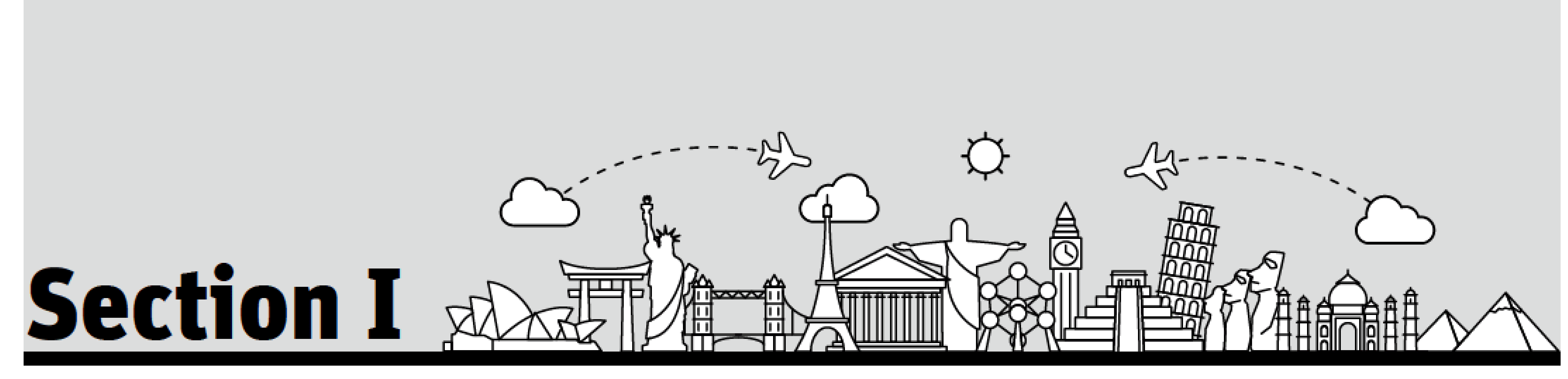
VII. Paraphrase

Directions: Please restate the following sentences using other words without altering the original meaning.

1. ... I acknowledge at the outset that it is indistinguishable from scare mongering science fiction novels; I also acknowledge that it has numerous underpinning assumptions which are open to challenge.
2. While seeming to be ordinary citizens, they would nevertheless be at least programmed, if not naturally inclined through psychological bonding, to identify with the alien culture.
3. In other words, if the Grays' ultimate intention is world control—which is my conclusion—they've got a couple of ways to get there. The last resort would be violent takeover, using naked warfare.
4. Until the last few years, I pretty much dismissed the notion of a generations-old international conspiracy to set up a one-world order controlled by international banking interests such as the Rockefellers and Rothschilds.
5. It would be consolidated behind a screen through the fraternal bonds of men whose aims and loyalty are not to any country or group except their own transnational cabal.
6. Thus, the alien-humans would undoubtedly be programmed to rise up with violence and armed warfare if the aliens felt it necessary to achieve their aims in extremis.
7. Humans who meet them while in the near-death state report later that they sensed only unconditional philanthropy and forgiveness for misdeeds radiating wordlessly from these entities.



Unit 3
Food and Nutrients



Section I

Focus on Critical Thinking and Critical Reading (3)

Skills of Critical Thinking

At the very core, skills of critical thinking include: interpretation, analysis, evaluation, inference, explanation, and self-regulation.

Interpretation is "to comprehend and express the meaning or significance of a wide variety of experiences, situations, data, events, judgments, conventions, beliefs, rules, procedures, or criteria". Interpretation includes the sub-skills of categorization, decoding significance, and clarifying meaning.

Examples of interpretation:

· Recognizing a problem and describing it without bias.

· Distinguishing a main idea from subordinate ideas in a text; constructing a tentative categorization or way of organizing something you are studying; paraphrasing someone's ideas in your own words; or, clarifying what a sign, chart or graph means.

· Identifying an author's purpose, theme, or point of view.

Analysis is "to identify the intended and actual inferential relationships among statements, questions, concepts, descriptions, or other forms of representation intended to express belief, judgment, experiences, reasons, information, or opinions". The experts include examining ideas, detecting arguments, and analyzing arguments as sub-skills of analysis.

Examples of analysis:

· Identifying the similarities and differences between two approaches to the solution of a given problem.

· Picking out the main claim made in a newspaper editorial and tracing back the various reasons the editor offers in support of that claim.

· Identifying unstated assumptions; constructing a way to represent a main conclusion and the various reasons given to support or criticize it; sketching the relationship of sentences or paragraphs to each other and to the main purpose of the passage.

Evaluation is "to assess the credibility of statements or other representations which are accounts or descriptions of a person's **perception**, experience, situation, judgment, belief, or opinion; and to assess the logical strength of the actual or intended inferential relationships among statements, descriptions, questions or other forms of representation".

Examples of evaluation:

· Judging an author's credibility, comparing the strengths and weaknesses of alternative

interpretations, determining the credibility of a source of information, judging if two statements contradict each other, or judging if the evidence at hand supports the conclusion being drawn.

· Recognizing the factors which make a person a credible witness regarding a given event or a credible authority with regard to a given topic.

· Judging if an argument's conclusion follows either with certainty or with a high level of confidence from its premises.

· Judging the logical strength of arguments based on hypothetical situations.

· Judging if a given argument is relevant or applicable or has implications for the situation at hand.

Inference means "to identify and secure elements needed to draw reasonable conclusions; to form conjectures and hypotheses; to consider relevant information and to educe the consequences flowing from data, statements, principles, evidence, judgments, beliefs, opinions, concepts, descriptions, questions, or other forms of representation". As sub-skills of inference the experts list querying evidence, conjecturing alternatives, and drawing conclusions.

Examples of inference:

· Seeing the implications of the position someone is advocating.

· Drawing out or constructing meaning from the elements in a reading.

· Predicting what will happen next based on what is known about the forces at work in a given situation, or formulating a synthesis of related ideas into a coherent perspective.

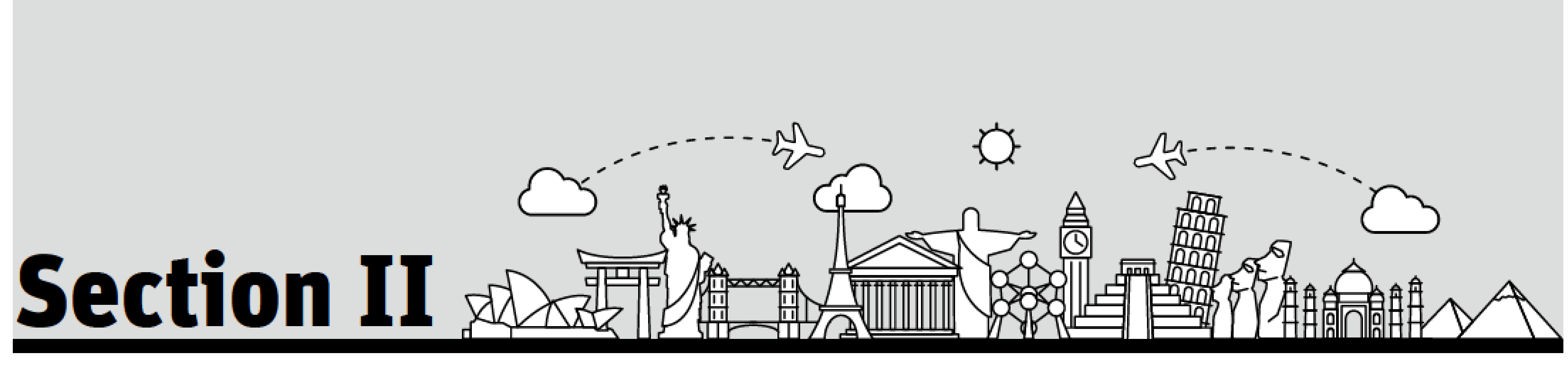
· After judging that it would be useful to you to resolve a given uncertainty, developing a workable plan to gather that information.

· When faced with a problem, developing a set of options for addressing it. For example, to deal with a problem, a critical thinker may conduct a controlled experiment scientifically and apply the proper statistical methods to attempt to confirm or disconfirm an empirical hypothesis.

Beyond being able to interpret, analyze, evaluate and infer, strong critical thinkers can do two more things. They can explain what they think and how they arrive at that judgment. And, they can apply their powers of critical thinking to themselves and improve on their previous opinions. These two skills are called "explanation" and "self-regulation".

Explanation is defined as being able to present in a cogent and coherent way the results of one's reasoning. This means to be able to give someone a full look at the big picture: both "to state and to justify that reasoning in terms of the evidential, conceptual, methodological, and contextual considerations upon which one's results were based; and to present one's reasoning in the form of cogent arguments". The sub-skills under explanation are describing methods and results, justifying procedures, proposing and defending with good reasons one's causal and conceptual explanations of events or points of view, and presenting full and well-reasoned, arguments in the context of seeking the best understandings possible.

Self-regulation means "self-consciously to monitor one's cognitive activities, the elements used in those activities, and the results educed, particularly by applying skills in analysis, and evaluation to one's own inferential judgments with a view toward questioning, confirming, validating, or correcting either one's reasoning or one's results". The two sub-skills here are self-examination and self-correction.



Text A: Food Elements and Their Uses

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **purvey** [pə'veɪ] ***vt./vi.*** **(purveyed/purveyed/purveying)**

to supply goods, services, information etc. to people

synonym	supply; provide with; serve
word family	purveyor; purveyance
related phrase	purvey sth. for sb.; purvey sth. to sb.

Example 1 They have two restaurants that purvey dumplings and chicken noodle soup.

Example 2 They purvey food for the army.

② **manufacture** [ˌmænjʊ'fæktʃə] ***vt./vi.*** **(manufactured/manufactured/manufacturing)**

to use machines to make goods or materials, usually in large numbers or amounts; to invent an untrue story, excuse etc.

synonym	process; make
word family	manufacture (*n.*); manufacturer; manufactory; manufactured
related phrase	be manufactured in/by/from …; manufactured goods

Example 1 This steel is manufactured from Swedish iron.

Example 2 If the media can manufacture stories like this, who are we supposed to believe?

③ **umbilically** [ʌm'bɪlɪkəlɪ] ***adv.***

relating to or resembling the umbilicus; closely

synonym	closely
word family	umbilicus; umbilical
related phrase	umbilically-controlled

Example 1 But London is umbilically linked to the rest of Britain in some crucial respects.

Example 2 Umbilically connected to the internet, TV is also able to attach itself swiftly to new currents in subterranean culture and bring them to viewers in a matter of days.

④ **ecumenical** [ˌiːkjʊ'menɪkəl] ***adj.***

of worldwide scope or applicability; supporting the idea of uniting the different branches of the Christian religion

synonym general; widespread; universal; generalized; pervasive
word family ecumenism; ecumenic; ecumenically
related phrase ecumenical movement; ecumenical thinking

Example 1 He was deeply involved in the ecumenical movement.

Example 2 Indeed, it has been striking how secular, or at least ecumenical the uprising in Syria has so far been.

⑤ **gluten** ['glu:tən] ***n.***

a protein substance that remains when starch is removed from cereal grains

related phrase gluten free; corn gluten; wet gluten; gluten flour

Example 1 Some people develop celiac disease after eating gluten, a protein found in all wheat products.

Example 2 I think he is allergic to gluten, so I changed his diet.

⑥ **rejuvenate** [rɪ'dʒu:vəneɪt] ***vt.*** **(rejuvenated/rejuvenated/rejuvenating)**

to make sb. feel or look young again; to make sth. more lively and more efficient, for example by introducing new ideas.

synonym vitalize; renew; reinstate; be cured of; pull round
word family rejuvenation; rejuvenator
related phrase get the car rejuvenated; rejuvenate oneself

Example 1 He tried to rejuvenate himself by performing physical exercises each day.

Example 2 The government pushed through plans to rejuvenate the inner cities.

⑦ **potash** ['pɒtæʃ] ***n.***

a white powder obtained from the ashes of burned wood and sometimes used as a fertilizer

word family potassium
related phrase potash fertilizer

Example 1 The region is also flush with uranium and potash, a key ingredient in fertilizer.

Example 2 Potash is used to improve the quality and yield of grain production.

⑧ **extricate** ['ekstrɪkeɪt] ***vt.*** **(extricated/extricated/extricating)**

to escape from a difficult or embarrassing situation, or to help someone escape; to remove someone from a place in which they are trapped

synonym save; ease of; rid
word family extricable; extrication
related phrase extricate yourself/sb. from sth.; extricate sb. from a dangerous situation

Example 1 It represents a last-ditch attempt by the country to extricate itself from its economic crisis.

Example 2 Firemen had to extricate the driver from the wreckage.

⑨ **deleterious** [ˌdelɪ'tɪərɪəs] ***adj.***

being damaging or harmful

synonym	injurious; harmful; toxic; poisonous; pernicious
antonym	uninjurious; sackless; innocent; harmless; inoffensive
word family	deletery; deleteriously
related phrase	deleterious chemical additives; deleterious impurity; deleterious waste

Example 1 Petty crime is having a deleterious effect on community life.

Example 2 These drugs have a proven deleterious effect on the nervous system.

⑩ **excretory** [ek'skriːtərɪ] ***adj.***

relating to the process of excretion

synonym	ejectable; excurrent
word family	excretion; excreta; excrete
related phrase	the excretory system; the excretory organ

Example 1 Exercise stimulates the digestive and excretory systems.

Example 2 In the earthworm and many other invertebrates, these excretory structures are called nephridia.

⑪ **volition** [və'lɪʃən] ***n.***

the capability of conscious choice and decision and intention; the act of making a choice

synonym	determination; willing
word family	volitional; volitionally
related phrase	of your own volition

Example 1 We like to think that everything we do and everything we think is a product of our volition.

Example 2 Helena left the company of her own volition.

⑫ **nutrient** ['njuːtrɪənt] ***n.***

substances that help plants and animals grow

synonym	nurture; nutrition
word family	nutrition; nutritious; nutritional; nutritive; nutritionally
related phrase	nutrient solution

Example 1 In her first book she explained the role of vegetable fibres, vitamins, minerals, and other essential nutrients.

Example 2 The plant absorbs nutrients from the soil.

⑬ **median** ['miːdɪən] ***adj.***

relating to or constituting the middle value of an ordered set of values

synonym	average
word family	medial; medium

related phrase median barrier; median line

Example 1 How can it be that they have, you know, such a low median wealth.

Example 2 Trends in arithmetical average incomes and median household incomes have differed in the US for a variety of reasons.

⑭ **fractious** ['frækʃəs] ***adj.***

easily irritated or annoyed; stubbornly resistant to authority or control; unpredictably difficult in operation; likely to be troublesome

synonym	irritable; irritating; irascible
antonym	docile; meek
word family	fractiousness; fractiously
related phrases	in a fractious mood; a fractious horse

Example 1 The children were predictably fractious.

Example 2 That also assumes that the fractious parliament in Baghdad will pass a federal oil law.

⑮ **scalding** ['skɔːldɪŋ] ***adj.***

being extremely hot

synonym	smouldering; blistering; vituperative
word family	scald (*v.*)
related phrases	scalding hot water; a cup of scalding hot tea

Example 1 I tried to sip the tea but it was scalding.

Example 2 Scalding tears poured down her face.

⑯ **palliate** ['pælɪeɪt] ***vt.*** **(palliated/palliated/palliating)**

to lessen the severity of (pain, disease, etc.) without curing or removing

synonym	relieve; alleviate; mitigate; moderate; allay
antonym	aggravate; exacerbate
word family	palliative; palliation
related phrase	palliate the loneliness; palliate the pain

Example 1 This pill will palliate your headaches.

Example 2 I shall never attempt to palliate my own foible by exposing the error of another.

⑰ **crimson** ['krɪmzən] ***adj.***

deep red in colour

synonym	deep red; dark red
word family	crimson (*n.*)
related phrase	a mass of crimson flowers; go/turn/flush/blush crimson

Example 1 The leaves turn crimson in autumn.

Example 2 Her face was crimson with embarrassment.

⑱ **bloodshot** ['blʌdʃɒt] ***adj.***

(of an eye) reddened as a result of locally congested blood vessels; inflamed

synonym red; hyperemic

related phrase bloodshot eyes

Example 1 John's eyes were bloodshot and puffy.

Example 2 If the eyes are severely strained, they become bloodshot.

⑲ **puffy** ['pʌfɪ] ***adj.***

swollen; soft and full of air

synonym swollen; swoln

word family puffiness; puffery; puff

related phrase dark-ringed puffy eyes; puffy white clouds

Example 1 Her cheeks were puffy with crying.

Example 2 The sea was blue, and white puffy clouds sailed by.

⑳ **dilated** [daɪ'leɪtɪd] ***adj.***

being wider or larger in all dimensions

synonym expanding; extended

antonym contractible; shrunken

word family dilate; dilation

related phrase the dilated pupil

Example 1 He looked at it with dilated eyes.

Example 2 He was not breathing; there was no pulse; the pupils of his eyes were fixed and dilated.

㉑ **existential** [ˌegzɪ'stenʃəl] ***adj.***

relating to human existence and experience; describing fear, anxiety, and other feelings that are caused by thinking about human existence and death

word family existence; existentialist; existentialism; exist; existent

related phrase the existential crisis; existential philosophy

Example 1 Existential questions requiring religious answers still persist.

Example 2 "What if there's nothing left at all?" he cried, lost in some intense existential angst.

㉒ **dispel** [dɪ'spel] ***vt.*** **(dispelled/dispelled/dispelling)**

to make something go away, especially a belief, idea, feeling, etc.

synonym remove; eliminate; avoid

word family dispelled; dispelling

related phrase dispel one's fears; dispel one's doubts

Example 1 The president is attempting to dispel the notion that he has neglected the economy.

Example 2 The sun dispelled the dense fog.

23 sentinel ['sentɪnəl] ***n.***

a person employed to keep watch for some anticipated event; a sentry

synonym	piquet; watcher
word family	sentry (*n.*); sentry (*v.*); sentinel (*v.*)
related phrase	stand sentinel

Example 1 We gave the watchword, and the sentinel let us pass.

Example 2 The lone sentinel walked toward his post.

24 intoxicating [ɪn'tɒksɪkeɪtɪŋ] ***adj.***

making sb. feel a strong sense of excitement or happiness, often by alcohol or a narcotic

synonym	mind-blowing; intoxicant; heady
antonym	detoxicating; detoxicant
word family	intoxication; intoxicant; intoxicate
related phrase	intoxicating liquor; the intoxicating fragrance of lilies

Example 1 On summer evenings the flowers gave forth an almost intoxicating scent.

Example 2 I give you intoxicating poison.

25 irritating ['ɪrɪteɪtɪŋ] ***adj.***

causing the body to itch or become sore; keeping annoying sb.

synonym	irritant; pungent
word family	irritation; irritant; irritated; irritatingly; irritate
related phrase	a dry irritating cough; irritating food

Example 1 In heavy concentrations, ozone is irritating to the eyes, nose and throat.

Example 2 She has an irritating habit of interrupting.

26 catalyse ['kætəlaɪz] ***vt.*** **(catalysed/catalysed/catalysing)**

to make sth. active; to cause sth. to happen

synonym	excite; katalyze
word family	catalyst; catalysis; catalytic; catalytically
related phrase	catalyse a big explosion; catalyse combustion

Example 1 In the past year we have worked with member states to catalyse a number of new interdisciplinary research centres in this area.

Example 2 The wires do not have a large enough surface to catalyse a big explosion.

27 stimulant ['stɪmjʊlənt] ***n.***

a drug or substance that makes you feel more active and full of energy; something that encourages more of a particular activity

synonym	irritant; incitant
word family	stimulus; stimulation; stimulating; stimulated; stimulative; stimulant (*adj.*); stimulate

related phrase artificial stimulants; economic stimulants

Example 1 It is not a good idea to fight fatigue by taking stimulants.

Example 2 Increases in new construction would be a stimulant to the economy.

㉘ **capacitate** [kə'pæsɪteɪt] ***vt.*** **(capacitated/capacitated/capacitating)**

to make legally competent or qualify in law; to make capable

synonym enable; empower; be able to
antonym incapacitate; be incapable of
word family capacity
related phrase capacitate sb. to do sth.; capacitate sb. for sth.

Example 1 The microscope capacitates small objects to be observed.

Example 2 He is already eighteen years old and is capacitated to vote.

㉙ **repugnant** [rɪ'pʌgnənt] ***adj.***

being horrible and disgusting

synonym gross; adverse; unpleasant; opposed
word family repugnance; repugn
related phrase morally repugnant customs

Example 1 Everything about the affair was repugnant to her.

Example 2 We found his suggestion absolutely repugnant.

㉚ **mirth** [mɜːθ] ***n.***

amusement which is expressed by laughing

synonym blessing; joy; jollity; merriment
antonym unhappiness
word family mirthful
related phrase with mirth

Example 1 Her body began to shake with mirth.

Example 2 The performance produced much mirth among the audience.

㉛ **salutary** ['sæljʊtərɪ] ***adj.***

being good for sb., even though it may seem difficult or unpleasant at first

synonym useful; beneficial; helpful; good; conducive; ample
antonym harmful; detrimental
word family salubrity; salubrious
related phrase salutary experience/reminder; salutary food

Example 1 You may not like that, but it is salutary for society as a whole.

Example 2 Losing money in this way taught young Jones a salutary lesson.

32 pamper ['pæmpə] ***vt.*** **(pampered/pampered/pampering)**

to treat with excessive indulgence

synonym cosset; spoil; indulge
word family pampered; pampering
related phrase pamper oneself; pamper your pet dog

Example 1 Why don't you let your mother pamper you for a while?

Example 2 Pamper yourself with our luxury gifts.

33 exemplar [ɪg'zemplɑː] ***n.***

someone or something that is considered to be so good that they should be copied or imitated; a typical example of a group or class of things

synonym example; type; prototype; lead
word family exemplary; exemplarily; exemplariness
related phrase an exemplar of success

Example 1 They viewed their new building as an exemplar of taste.

Example 2 Milt's career is an exemplar of survival in difficult times.

34 luscious ['lʌʃəs] ***adj.***

very sexually attractive; extremely good to eat or drink

synonym honey; nectared
word family lusciously; lusciousness
related phrase a luscious young blonde; luscious lips; luscious peaches

Example 1 She was looking luscious in a flannel shirt.

Example 2 Welcome your guests with an easy but elegant arrangement of luscious fresh fruits.

35 be devoid of

being not enough; being in the state of needing something that is absent or unavailable

synonym be short of; be lack of
related phrase be devoid of gratitude; be devoid of common sense

Example 1 Perhaps a generation from now the world will be largely devoid of skipping CDs and cracked jewel cases.

Example 2 Vicksburg, a town in Virginia, was thought to be devoid of food during the battles until the people there found the peas.

36 militate against

to make sth. less likely to happen or succeed

synonym interferes with; weigh against/on; be influential in; make bad effect/impact on; stand in the way of
related phrase militate against justice; militate against the success of the plan

Example 1 We can never promise to sail anywhere in particular, because the weather might militate against it.

Example 2 Facts militate against this opinion.

㊲ wallow in

to allow sb. to enjoy something completely

synonym addict to; indulge in

related phrase wallow in money; wallow in self-pity

Example 1 He really wallowed in the praise of his new book.

Example 2 Never have I had such a good excuse for wallowing in deep warm baths.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

abundant	agrarian	aghast	algae	antiquarian
aperitif	aquatic	arable	asterisk	bloodshot
Bourbon	broth	capacitate	caviar	cellular
childcare	chive	crimson	croissant	deceleration
decadence	distasteful	electrostatic	enormity	epileptic
eucalyptus	excrete	excretory	exemplar	extravagantly
figurine	freestyle	garter	gherkin	gluten
gorse	gourmet	grotto	grout	horseradish
innards	intoxicating	irritating	jaunt	libido
limousine	livid	maladministration	mango	manufacture
median	morphine	nitric	nutmeg	nutrient
peppermint	perception	pervasive	personable	pewter
pilchard	pixel	placid	potash	pucker
puffy	reappraise	reconnaissance	rejuvenate	remonstrate
renegade	repo	salami	sardine	scathing
sectarian	sedan	sentinel	serviceable	simmer
stimulant	stunt	superconducting	sweetcorn	teat
tench	tepid	umbilically	unproblematically	wafer
whereupon	wholesome	yew		

Part 2 Text

Food Elements and Their Uses

The purposes of food are to promote growth, to purvey force and heat, and to furnish material to repair the waste which is constantly taking place in the body. Every breath, every thought, every motion, wears out some portion of the delicate and wonderful house in which we live. Various vital processes remove these worn and useless particles; and to keep the body in health, their loss must be made good by constantly renewed supplies of material properly adapted to replenish the worn and impaired tissues. This renovating material must be supplied through the medium of food and drink, and the best food is that by which the desired end may be most readily and perfectly attained. The great diversity in character of the several tissues of the body, makes it necessary that food should contain a variety of elements, in order that each part may be properly nourished and replenished.

The Food Elements—The various elements found in food are the following: starch, sugar, fats, albumen, mineral substances, indigestible substances.

The digestible food elements are often grouped, according to their chemical composition, into three classes: carbonaceous, nitrogenous, and inorganic. The carbonaceous class includes starch, sugar, and fats; the nitrogenous, all albuminous elements; and the inorganic comprises the mineral elements.

Starch is only found in vegetable foods; all grains, most vegetables, and some fruits, contain starch in abundance. Several kinds of sugar are made in nature's laboratory; cane, grape, fruit, and milk sugar. The first is obtained from the sugar-cane, the sap of maple trees, and from the beet root. Grape and fruit sugars are found in most fruits and in honey. Milk sugar is one of the constituents of milk. Glucose, an artificial sugar resembling grape sugar, is now largely manufactured by subjecting the starch of corn or potatoes to a chemical process; but it is devoid of the sweetness of natural sugars, and is by no means a proper substitute for them. Albumen is found in its purest, uncombined state in the white of an egg, which is almost wholly composed of albumen. It exists, combined with other food elements, in many other foods, both animal and vegetable. It is found abundant in oatmeal, and to some extent in the other grains, and in the juices of vegetables. All natural foods contain elements which in many respects resemble albumen, and are so umbilically allied to it that for convenience they are usually classified under the ecumenical name of "albumen". The chief of these is gluten, which is found in wheat, rye, and barley. Casein, found in peas, beans, and milk, and the fibrin of flesh, are elements of this class.

Fats are found in both animal and vegetable foods. Of animal fats, butter and suet are common examples. In vegetable form, fat is of enormity in nuts, peas, beans, in various of the grains, and in a few fruits, as the olive. As furnished by nature in nuts, legumes, grains, fruits, and milk, this element is always found in a state of fine subdivision, which condition is the one best adapted to its digestion. As most habitually used, in the form of free fats, as butter, lard, etc., it is not only difficult of digestion itself, but often militates against the digestion of the other food elements which are mixed with it. It was doubtless never intended that fats should be so modified from their natural condition and separated from other food elements as to be used as a separate article of food. The same may be said of the other carbonaceous elements, sugar and starch, neither of which, when

used alone, is capable of sustaining life, although when combined in a proper and natural manner with other food elements, they perform a most important part in the nutrition of the body. Most foods contain a percentage of the mineral elements. Grains and milk furnish these elements in abundance. The cellulose, or woody tissue, of vegetables, and the bran of wheat, are examples of indigestible elements, which although they cannot be converted into blood in tissue, serve an important purpose by giving bulk to the food.

With the exception of gluten, none of the food elements, when used alone, are capable of supporting life. A true food substance contains some of all the food elements, the amount of each varying in different foods.

Uses of the Food Elements—Concerning the purpose which these different elements serve, it has been demonstrated by the experiments of eminent physiologists that the carbonaceous elements, which in general comprise the greater bulk of the food, serve three purposes in the body:

1. They furnish material for the production of heat;

2. They are a source of force when taken in connection with other food elements;

3. They replenish the fatty tissues of the body. Of the carbonaceous elements—starch, sugar, and fats—fats produce the greatest amount of heat in proportion to quantity; that is, more heat is developed from a pound of fat than from an equal weight of sugar or starch; but this apparent advantage is more than counterbalanced by the fact that fats are much more difficult of digestion than are the other carbonaceous elements, and if relied upon to furnish adequate material for bodily heat, would be productive of much mischief in overtaxing and producing disease of the digestive organs. The fact that nature has made a much more ample provision of starch and sugars than of fats in man's natural diet, would seem to indicate that they were intended to be the chief source of carbonaceous food; nevertheless, fats, when taken in such proportion as nature supplies them, are necessary and important food elements.

The nitrogenous food elements especially nourish the brain, nerves, muscles, and all the more highly rejuvenated and active tissues of the body, and also serve as a stimulus to tissue change. Hence it may be said that a food deficient in these elements is a particularly poor food.

The inorganic elements, chief of which are the phosphates, in the carbonates of potash, soda, and lime, aid in furnishing the requisite building material for bones and nerves.

Proper Combinations of Foods—While it is important that our food should contain some of all the various food elements, experiments upon both animals and human beings show it is necessary that these elements, especially the nitrogenous and carbonaceous, be used in certain definite proportions, as the system is only able to appropriate a certain amount of each; and all excess, especially of nitrogenous elements, is not only useless, but even deleterious, since to rid the system of the surplus imposes an additional task upon the digestive and excretory organs. The relative proportion of these elements necessary to constitute a food which perfectly meets the requirements of the system, is six of carbonaceous to one of nitrogenous. Scientists have devoted much careful study and experimentation to the volition of the quantities of each of the food elements required for the daily nourishment of individuals under the varying conditions of life, and it has come to be commonly accepted that of the nitrogenous material which should constitute one sixth of the nutrients taken, about three ounces[1] is all that can be made use of in twenty-four hours, by a healthy adult of median weight, doing a moderate amount of work. Many articles of food are,

however, deficient in one or the other of these elements, and need to be supplemented by other articles containing the deficient element in superabundance, since to employ a dietary in which any one of the nutritive elements is lacking, although in bulk it may be all the digestive organs can manage, is really starvation, and will in time occasion serious results.

Condiments—By condiments are commonly meant such substances as are added to season food, to give it "a relish" or to stimulate appetite, but which in themselves possess no real food value. To this category belong mustard, ginger, pepper, pepper sauce, Worcestershire sauce, cloves, spices, and other similar substances. That anything is needed to disguise or improve the natural flavor of food, would seem to imply either that the article used was not a proper alimentary substance, or that it did not answer the purpose for which the Creator designed it. True condiments, such as pepper, pepper sauce, ginger, spice, mustard, cinnamon, cloves, etc., are all strong irritants. This may be readily demonstrated by their application to a raw surface. The intense smarting and scalding occasioned are ample evidence of the irritating character. Pepper and mustard are capable of producing powerfully fractious effects, even when applied to the healthy skin where wholly intact. It is surprising that it does not occur to the mother who applies a mustard plaster to the feet of her child, to palliate congestion of the brain, that an article which is capable of producing a blister upon the external covering of the body, is quite as capable of producing similar effects when applied to the more sensitive tissues within the body. The irritating effects of these substances upon the stomach are not readily recognized, simply because the stomach is supplied with very few nerves of sensation. That condiments induce an intense degree of irritation of the mucous membrane of the stomach, was abundantly demonstrated by the experiments of Dr. Beaumont upon the unfortunate Alexis St. Martin. Dr. Beaumont records that when St. Martin took mustard, pepper, and similar condiments with his food, the mucous membrane of his stomach became intensely crimson and congested, appearing very much like a bloodshot and puffy eye. It is this irritating effect of condiments which gives occasion for their dilated use. They create an artificial appetite, similar to the incessant craving of the chronic dyspeptic, whose irritable stomach is seldom satisfied. This existential fact with regard to condiments is a sufficient argument against their use, being one of the greatest causes of gluttony, since they dispel the sense of satiety by which Nature says, "Enough."

To a thoroughly normal and unperverted taste, irritating condiments of all sorts are very obnoxious. It is true that Nature accommodates herself to their use with food to such a degree that they may be employed for years without apparently producing very grave results; but this very condition is a source of injury, since it is nothing more nor less than the going to sleep of the sentinels which nature has posted at the portal of the body, for the purpose of giving warning of danger. The nerves of sensibility have become benumbed to such a degree that they no longer offer remonstrance against irritating substances, unperverted and allow the enemy to enter into the citadel of life. The mischievous work is thus insidiously carried on year after year until by and by the individual breaks down with some chronic disorder of the liver, kidneys, or some other important internal organ. Physicians have long observed that in tropical countries where curry powder and other condiments are very extensively used, diseases of the liver, especially acute congestion and inflammation, are extravagantly common, much more so that in countries and among nations where condiments are less used freestyle. A traveller in Mexico, some time ago, described a favorite Mexican dish as composed of layers of the following ingredients: "Pepper, mustard, ginger, pepper,

potato, ginger; mustard, pepper, potato, mustard, ginger, pepper." The common use of such a dish is sufficient cause for the great frequency of diseases of the liver among the Mexicans, noted by physicians traveling in that country. That the use of condiments is wholly a matter of habit is evident from the fact that different nations employ as condiments articles which would be in the highest degree obnoxious to people of other countries. For example, the garlic so freely used in Russian cookery, would be considered by Americans no addition to the natural flavors of food; and still more distasteful would be the asafetida frequently used as a seasoning in the cuisine of Persia and other Asiatic countries.

The use of condiments is questionably a strong auxiliary to the formation of a habit of using intoxicating drinks. Persons wallowed in the use of intoxicating liquors are, as a rule, fond of stimulating and highly seasoned foods; and although the converse is not always true, yet it is apparent to every thoughtful person, that the use of a diet composed of highly seasoned and irritating food, institutes the conditions necessary for the acquirement of a taste for intoxicating liquors. The false appetite aroused by the use of food that "burns and stings", craves something less insipid than pure cold water to keep up the fever the food has catalysed. Again, condiments, like all other stimulants, must be continually increased in quantity, or their effect becomes diminished; and this leads directly to a demand for stronger stimulants, both in eating and drinking, until the probable tendency is toward the dram-shop.

A more serious reason why high seasonings lead to intemperance, is in the perversion of the use of the sense of taste. Certain senses are given us to add to our pleasure as well as for the serviceable, almost indispensable, use they are to us. For instance, the sense of sight is not only useful, but capacitates us to drink in beauty, if among beautiful surroundings, without doing us any harm. The same of music and other harmonics which may come to us through the sense of hearing. But the sense of taste was given us to distinguish between wholesome and unwholesome foods, and cannot be used for merely sensuous gratification, without debasing and making of it a repugnant thing. An education which demands special enjoyment or pleasure through the sense of taste, is wholly artificial; it is coming down to the animal plane, or below it rather; for the instinct of the brute creation teaches it merely to eat to live.

Yet how widespread is this habit of sensuous gratification through the sense of taste! If one calls upon a neighbor, he is at once offered refreshments of some kind, as though the greatest mirth of life came from indulging the appetite. This evil is largely due to wrong education, which begins with childhood. When Johnnie sits down to the table, the mother says, "Johnnie, what would you like?" instead of putting plain, wholesome food before the child, and taking it as a matter of course that he will eat it and be satisfied. The child grows to think that he must have what he likes, whether it is salutary for him or not. It is not strange that an appetite thus pampered in childhood becomes uncontrollable at maturity; for the step from gormandizing to intoxication is much shorter than most people imagine. The natural, unperverted taste of a child will lead him to eat that which is good for him. But how can we expect the children to reform when the parents continually set them bad exemplars in the matter of eating and drinking?

The cultivation of a taste for spices is a decadence of the sense of taste. Nature never designed that pleasure should be divorced from use. The effects of gratifying the sense of taste differ materially from those of gratifying the higher senses of sight and hearing. What we see is gone; nothing remains but the memory, and the same is true of the most luscious sounds which may

reach us through the ears. But what we taste is taken into the stomach and what has thus given us brief pleasure through the gratification of the palate, must make work in the alimentary canal for fourteen hours before it is disposed of.

(Adapted from *Science in the Kitchen*)

Note

ounce

The ounce is a unit of mass used in most British derived customary systems of measurement. It is most pervasive in the retail sale of groceries in the United States, but is also used in many other matters of domestic and international trade between imperial or customary measurement driven countries. Similar customary uses include recipes in cookbooks and sales of bulk dry goods.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text A the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. artificial 2. appalled
3. irritating 4. saucy
5. enable 6. malleable
7. piquet 8. peevish
9. hilarity 10. salutary
11. scarce

Antonyms

1. indigence 2. analytic
3. destructive 4. incomprehensive
5. unusually 6. resolute
7. palatable 8. background

III. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 9 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. Unwilling to lose them to the new Asian gaming mecca, Las Vegas casinos ________ Chinese high rollers with private chefs, limousine and shopping trips.
   A) pucker B) pewter C) pamper D) pother
2. "Our ________ offers many succulent dishes made of innards, so it seemed right for me to be part of the group," she says.
   A) cuisine B) figurine C) sardine D) morphine
3. Sony's Super Bit Mapping technology incorporates 14 bit up-scaling, processing and pixel mapping to smooth ________ and improve the quality of low-tone pictures.
   A) deceleration B) gradation C) maladministration D) individuation
4. It is ________ when you got scammed online.
   A) grueling B) irritating C) scathing D) superconducting
5. Whether a short jaunt to a nearby bed and breakfast or a more adventurous outing across the country it's a nice way to ________ your spirit and connect with your husband.
   A) reappraise B) remonstrate C) renegade D) rejuvenate
6. Childcare alone costs more than ________ rent in every single state for two kids.
   A) sectarian B) median C) agrarian D) antiquarian
7. Slouched on stage and ________ of energy, Yang alternated between calling Yahoo a platform company and a destination site.
   A) tepid B) livid C) placid D) devoid
8. Its 113 horsepower engine feels slightly anemic in this age of 200 horsepower sedans, but it's perfectly ________ as long as you don't have a fondness for jackrabbit starts at stoplights.
   A) arable B) serviceable C) personable D) tenable
9. Interest, attention and drive are all expressions of ________.
   A) repo B) asterisk C) libido D) stunt

IV. Cultural Kaleidoscope

Directions: Please choose the most appropriate answer to each question.

1. Which of the following belongs to the group of fruits?
   A) Yew, eucalyptus B) Millet, sweetcorn
   C) Kiwi, mango D) Marigold, gorse
2. Which of the following is the official drink of Mexico?
   A) Tequila B) Malt C) Bourbon D) Champagne
3. Which of the following is different from the others?
   A) Tench B) Tuna C) Pilchard D) Salami
4. Which of the following does not belong to the condiments?
   A) Gherkin B) Chives C) Nutmeg D) Peppermint

5. Which of the following does not contain starch?
   A) Croissant B) Mussel C) Wafer D) Tortilla

V. Rhetoric Appreciation

Directions: A rhetorical device or a figure of speech is a technique that an author or speaker uses to convey to the reader or listener a meaning with the goal of persuading him or her towards considering a topic from a different perspective, using language designed to encourage or evoke an emotional response in the audience. The widely-used rhetorical devices include parallelism, metaphor, repetition, antithesis, simile, symbolism, climax, alliteration, personification, etc. Please identify the rhetorical devices used in the following sentences. And then reread Text A to find out the rhetoric in use as much as you can.

1. ________________
   The purposes of food are to promote growth, to purvey force and heat, and to furnish material to repair the waste which is constantly taking place in the body.
2. ________________
   Every breath, every thought, every motion, wears out some portion of the delicate and wonderful house in which we live.
3. ________________
   In vegetable form, fat is of enormity in nuts, peas, beans, in various of the grains, and in a few fruits, as the olive.
4. ________________
   ... appearing very much like a bloodshot and puffy eye.
5. ________________
   ... by which Nature says, "Enough."

VI. Translation Practice

Directions: Please put the following sentences into Chinese.

1. It was doubtless never intended that fats should be so modified from their natural condition and separated from other food elements as to be used as a separate article of food.
2. The relative proportion of these elements necessary to constitute a food which perfectly meets the requirements of the system, is six of carbonaceous to one of nitrogenous.
3. It is surprising that it does not occur to the mother who applies a mustard plaster to the feet of her child, to palliate congestion of the brain, that an article which is capable of producing a blister upon the external covering of the body, is quite as capable of producing similar effects when applied to the more sensitive tissues within the body.
4. The false appetite aroused by the use of food that "burns and stings", craves something less insipid than pure cold water to keep up the fever the food has catalysed.
5. But what we taste is taken into the stomach and what has thus given us brief pleasure through the gratification of the palate, must make work in the alimentary canal for fourteen hours before it is disposed of.

VII. Writing Workshop

Directions: Please reflect on the following great lines and then write an article on the topic Keys to a Healthy Diet.

王者以民为天，而民以食为天。（《汉书·郦食其传》）

五谷为养，五果为助，五畜为益，五菜为充。（《黄帝内经·素问》）

山中习静观朝槿，松下清斋折露葵。（王维《积雨辋川庄作》）

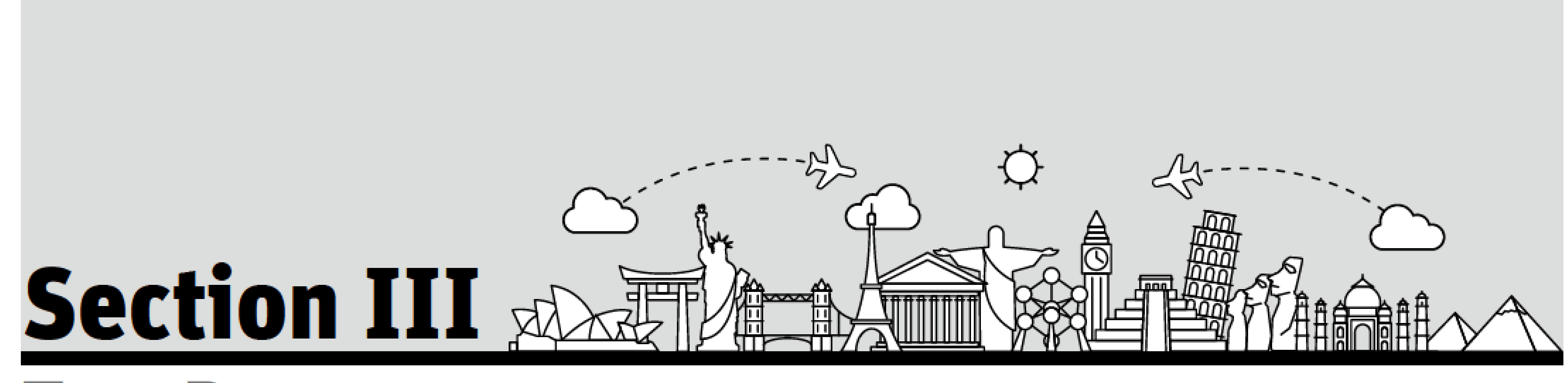
日啖荔枝三百颗，不辞长作岭南人。（苏轼《惠州一绝》）

我得宛丘平易法，只将食粥致神仙。（陆游《食粥》）

蔬盘惯杂同羊酪，象箸难挑比髓肥。（张劭《咏豆腐》）

Words for Reference

gourmet	simmer	vegetable	algae	seafood
aquatic	meat	poultry	broth	caviar
fruit	herb	condiments	horseradish	aperitif
cereals	nuts	sauce	cheese	



Section III

Text B: The Chemistry of Food and Nutrition

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **scant** [skænt] ***vt.*** **(scanted/scanted/scanting)**

to supply sparingly and with restricted quantities; to limit in quality or quantity; to work hastily or carelessly

synonym restrict; skimp; shorten

word family scanty; scant *(adj.)*; scantiness; scantily

related phrase scant the scale; scant one's ration

Example 1 Many families must scant their food and other necessities just to meet the monthly rent.

Example 2 This important factor was scanted by most of us.

② **saline** ['seɪlaɪn] ***adj.***

containing salt

synonym salted

word family salinity; saliferous

related phrase the saline solution; saline water; saline soil

Example 1 The soil here is quite saline and alkaline.

Example 2 It will also help repel saline intrusion in the coastal areas of the delta.

③ **atone** [ə'təʊn] ***vt./vi.*** **(atoned/atoned/atoning)**

to do something to show that someone is sorry for having done something wrong

synonym make up for

word family atonement

related phrase atone for; atone for one's sins

Example 1 Richard was anxious to atone for his thoughtlessness.

Example 2 He felt he had atoned for what he had done to his son.

④ **parch** [pɑːtʃ] ***vt./vi.*** **(parched/parched/parching)**

to deprive or be deprived of water; to dry up

synonym roast; bake

word family parched

related phrase parch sth.; the parched ground

Example 1 The lack of rain had parched the land.

Example 2 The grass parched up in summer.

⑤ **abeyance** [ə'beɪəns] ***n.***

temporary cessation or suspension

synonym suspension; hang; discontinuation
word family abeyant
related phrase (fall/leave) in abeyance

Example 1 The sanctions against the country fell into abeyance yesterday.

Example 2 The committees have been in abeyance for some years but they have not been disbanded.

⑥ **distaste** [dɪs'teɪst] ***vt.*** **(distasted/distasted/distasting)**

to dislike something and consider something to be unpleasant, disgusting, or immoral

synonym hate; detest; have no relish for
antonym be fond of; like; love; be keen on
word family distaste (*n.*); distasteful; distastefully
related phrase distaste for

Example 1 She distastes for any form of compromise.

Example 2 The professor claimed that he distastes for everything related to money.

⑦ **decompose** [ˌdiːkəm'pəʊz] ***vt./vi.*** **(decomposed/decomposed/decomposing)**

to decay or make something decay; to divide into smaller parts

synonym disposed of; resolve; break down
antonym compose
word family decomposition; decomposable
related phrase decompose into; a partially decomposed body

Example 1 The bacteria decomposed the milk into its solid and liquid elements.

Example 2 The tomato began to decompose after half a day in the sun.

⑧ **puny** ['pjuːnɪ] ***adj.***

being very small or weak

synonym small; tiny; micro; minute; bit
antonym huge; enormous; colossal; vast
word family puniness; punily
related phrase a puny little guy; puny arms; a puny amount of …; a puny effort/attempt

Example 1 Our efforts look puny beside Fred's.

Example 2 She was awarded a puny £1,000 in compensation.

⑨ **frigid** ['frɪdʒɪd] ***adj.***

being extremely cold; being not friendly or kind

synonym cold; freezing
antonym hot; heated
word family frigidity; frigidly
related phrase the frigid air; the frigid zone

Example 1 A snowstorm hit the West today, bringing with it frigid temperatures.

Example 2 The guard looked at us with a frigid stare.

⑩ **batten** ['bætən] ***vt./vi.*** **(battened/battened/battening)**

to be made secure by having battens attached across somewhere or by being closed firmly; to furnish or strengthen with battens; to thrive, especially at the expense of someone else

word family batten (*n.*)
related phrase batten down sth.; batten on/upon sb./sth.

Example 1 The worker battened down the loose windows.

Example 2 The sheep battened upon the herbage.

⑪ **sustenance** ['sʌstənəns] ***n.***

food or drink which a person, animal, or plant needs to remain alive and healthy

synonym food; diet; holding; eating; support
word family sustainer; sustentation; sustentacular
related phrase the spiritual sustenance; the nutritional sustenance

Example 1 Potatoes were their only means of sustenance.

Example 2 Elections are necessary for the sustenance of democracy.

⑫ **debase** [dɪ'beɪs] ***vt.*** **(debased/debased/debasing)**

to reduce the value or quality

synonym lower down; bring down
antonym enhance; increase; improve
word family debasement; debased
related phrase debase a currency/coinage; debase standards of today's media; debase oneself for money

Example 1 The medical profession has been debased by these revelations.

Example 2 Politicians have debased the meaning of the word "freedom".

⑬ **sublime** [sə'blaɪm] ***n.***

something that is so good or beautiful that someone is deeply affected by it

synonym sublimity; greatness; summit; peak; apex
word family sublimeness; sublimity; sublime (*adj.*); sublimely
related phrase the sublime of the seacoast rock; pursuit of the transcendent and the sublime

Example 1 She elevated every rare small success to the sublime.

Example 2 The works on display range from the mainstream to the sublime.

⑭ **stench** [stentʃ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* stenches)**

a strong and very unpleasant smell

synonym malodor; effluvium; rancidity

related phrase a government filled with the stench of corruption

Example 1 The stench of burning rubber was overpowering.

Example 2 The stench from rotting food is stomach-churning.

⑮ **kernel** ['kɜːnəl] ***n.***

the part that is inside the shell of a nut; the seed that is inside the hard husk of a cereal crop such as wheat; the central and most important part of something; a small element of something

synonym core; essence

related phrase a kernel of corn; kernel fruit; the kernel of the program

Example 1 The kernel of that message was that peace must not be a source of advantage or disadvantage for anyone.

Example 2 For all I know, there may be a kernel of truth in what he says.

⑯ **transmute** [træns'mjuːt] ***vt./vi.*** **(transmuted/transmuted/transmuting)**

to change one substance or type of thing into another

synonym transform; deform; warp

word family transmutable; transmutation

related phrase transmute sth. into sth.

Example 1 Scientists transmuted matter into pure energy and exploded the first atomic bomb.

Example 2 She ceased to think, as anger transmuted into passion.

⑰ **dissipate** ['dɪsɪpeɪt] ***vt./vi.*** **(dissipated/dissipated/dissipating)**

(to make something) gradually become less or weaker before disappearing completely; to waste something valuable (time, money, energy, etc.)

synonym disperse; dispel; break up; fritter away; fool away

word family dissipation; dissipated

related phrase dissipate suspicion; dissipate sorrow

Example 1 The tension in the room had dissipated.

Example 2 The police managed to dissipate the mob in minutes.

⑱ **rendition** [ren'dɪʃən] ***n.***

the act of interpreting something as expressed in an artistic performance; the performance of a musical composition or a dramatic role etc.

synonym version; translation; playing; offering
related phrase an English rendition of a Greek poem; colour rendition

Example 1 The musicians burst into a rousing rendition of "Paddy Casey's Reel".

Example 2 She gave a splendid rendition of the song.

⑲ metabolism [mə'tæbəlɪzəm] *n.*

the way that chemical processes in the body cause food to be used in an efficient way, for example, to make new cells and to give the energy

word family metabolite; metabolic; metabolize; metabolise
related phrase protein/carbohydrate/alcohol etc. metabolism; the metabolism of fat by the liver

Example 1 This drug speeds up your metabolism.

Example 2 The vast majority of alcohol metabolism occurs in the liver.

⑳ pour off

to flow over the edge of a container; to outflow; to come out in large numbers

synonym drain out of; pour out; spill
related phrase pour off fat from the skillet; pour off the remaining liquid

Example 1 After a few laps of the track, the sweat was pouring off the runners.

Example 2 A spate of English reading materials began to pour off the presses.

㉑ a ruck of

a large number of people or things

synonym a large quantity of; a lot of
related phrase a ruck of goods; a ruck of salt

Example 1 Jack shot from out of a ruck of players.

Example 2 I will not burden you with a ruck of questions.

㉒ in accordance with

doing in the way that the rule or system says that it should be done; in line with a rule, law, wish, etc.

synonym in line with; in conformity to
related phrase in accordance with the natural tendency

Example 1 The authorities have said they are investigating and prosecuting cases in accordance with the law.

Example 2 Its leaders will therefore insist on acting in accordance with their perceptions of the national interest.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

abseil	alchemy	annuity	apothecary	Armenia
attire	attune	bacteriologist	befriend	biochemistry
boardroom	booty	cant	chloride	citrus
cloister	commandant	copulate	cranberry	crocus
dandruff	decompress	demote	detour	doorman
earpiece	ecumenical	effluent	Estonia	fiancée
footman	gerbil	glut	gooseberry	gratuitous
grist	grueling	habitual	hairpin	humankind
impressionist	individuation	insurrection	intoxicate	intransigent
intravenous	irritant	jukebox	kiwi	leach
lentil	lookalike	lubricant	lubricate	magnesium
mainline	malt	mandarin	marigold	marinate
methyl	millet	mouthpiece	mulch	mussel
nausea	nicety	nightshirt	nutritious	outflow
penance	penknife	piecemeal	pigtail	placate
pragmatist	prance	prefix	prehistoric	priori
puma	pundit	pushover	quill	rainwater
rectum	relatively	renaissance	reparation	reversion
ruck	Salvador	scoreline	seance	semblable
semblance	slouch	spokeswoman	subscript	suction
sunflower	suspense	synthetic	tequila	tortilla
touchline	trance	uncouth	unzip	vegetative
voluptuous	wallow	walrus	wench	whereupon

Part 2 Text

The Chemistry of Food and Nutrition

We may define a food to be any substance which will make reparation for the functional waste of the body, increase its growth, or maintain the heat, muscular, and nervous energy. In its most comprehensive sense, the oxygen of the air is food; as although it is admitted by the lungs, it passes into the blood, and there re-acts upon the other food which has passed through the stomach. It is usual, however, to restrict the term food to such nutriment as enters the body by the intestinal canal. Water is often spoken of as being distinct from food, but for this there is no sufficient reason.

Many popular writers have divided foods into flesh-formers, heat-givers, and bone-formers. Although attractive from its simplicity, this classification will not bear criticism. Flesh-formers are also heat-givers. Only a portion of the mineral matter goes to form bone.

CLASS I—INORGANIC COMPOUNDS.

Sub-class: 1) water; 2) mineral matter or salts.

CLASS II—ORGANIC COMPOUNDS.

1. Non-nitrogeneous or ternary compounds[1]: 1) carbohydrates[2]; 2) oils; 3) organic acids[3].

2. Nitrogenous compounds: 1) proteids; 2) osseids.

CLASS III—NON-NUTRITIVES, FOOD ADJUNCTS AND DRUGS.

Essential oils, alkaloids[4], extractives, alcohol, &c.

These last are not strictly foods, if we keep to the definition already given; but they are consumed with the true foods or nutrients, comprised in the other two classes, and cannot well be excluded from consideration.

Water forms an essential part of all the tissues of the body. It is the solvent and carrier of other substances.

Mineral Matter or Salts, is left as an ash when food is thoroughly burnt. The most important salts are calcium phosphate[5], carbonate and fluoride, sodium chloride[6], potassium phosphate and chloride, and compounds of magnesium, iron and silicon.

Mineral matter is quite as necessary for plant as for animal life, and is therefore present in all food, except in the case of some highly-prepared ones, such as sugar, starch and oil. Children require a good proportion of calcium phosphate for the growth of their bones, whilst adults require less. The outer part of the grain of cereals is the richest in mineral constituents, white grist and rice are deficient. Wheatmeal and oatmeal are especially recommended for the quantity of phosphates and other salts contained in them. Mineral matter is necessary not only for the bones but for every tissue of the body.

When haricots are cooked, the liquid is often thrown away, and the beans served nearly dry, or with parsley or other sauce. Not only is the food less tasty but important saline constituents are lost. The author has made the following experiments—German whole lentils, Egyptian split red lentils and medium haricot beans were soaked all night (16 hours) in just sufficient cold water to keep them covered. The water was poured off and evaporated, the residue heated in the steam-oven to perfect dryness and weighed. After pouring off the water, the haricots were boiled in more water until thoroughly cooked, the liquid being kept as low as possible. The liquid was poured off as clear as possible, from the haricots, evaporated and dried. The ash was taken in each case, and the alkalinity of the water-soluble ash was calculated as potash (K_2O). The quantity of water which could be poured off was with the German lentils, half as much more than the original weight of the pulse; not quite as much could be poured off the others.

	G. Lentils.	E. Lentils.	Haricots.	Cooked H.
Proportion of liquid	1.5	1.25	1.20	—
Soluble dry matter	0.97	3.38	1.43	7.66 per cent.
Ash	0.16	0.40	0.28	1.26 per cent
Alkalinity as K_2O	0.02	0.082	0.084	0.21 per cent

The loss on soaking in cold water, unless the water is preserved, is seen to be considerable. The split lentils, having had the protecting skin removed, lose most. In every case the ash contained a good deal of phosphate and lime. Potatoes are rich in important potash salts; by boiling a large quantity is lost, by steaming less and by baking in the skins, scarcely any. The flavour is also much better after baking.

The usual addition of common salt (sodium-chloride) to boiled potatoes can't atone for the

loss of their natural saline constituents. Natural and properly cooked foods are so rich in sodium chloride and other salts that the addition of common salt is not always unnecessary. An excess of the latter makes one feel parched and spoils the natural flavour of the food. It is the custom, especially in restaurants, to add a ruck of salt to savoury food, potatoes and soups. Bakers' brown bread is usually very salt, and sometimes white is also. In some persons much salt causes irritation of the skin, and the writer has knowledge of the salt food of vegetarian restaurants causing or increasing dandruff. As a rule, fondness for salt is an acquired taste, and after its abeyance for a time, food thus flavoured becomes unpalatable and we may distaste them.

Organic Compounds are formed by living organisms (a few can also be produced by chemical means). They are entirely decomposed by combustion.

The Non-Nitrogenous Organic Compounds are commonly called carbon compounds or heat-producers, but these terms are also descriptive of the nitrogenous compounds. These contain carbon, hydrogen and oxygen only, and furnish by their oxidation or combustion in the body the necessary heat, muscular and nervous energy. The final product of their combustion is water and carbon dioxide (carbonic acid gas).

The Carbohydrates comprise starch, sugar, gum, mucilage, pectose, glycogen, &c.; cellulose and woody fibre are carbohydrates, but are little capable of digestion. They contain hydrogen and oxygen in the proportion to form water, the carbon alone being available to produce heat by combustion. Starch is the most widely distributed food. It is insoluble in water, but when cooked is readily digested and absorbed by the body. Starch is readily converted into sugar, whether in plants or animals, during digestion. There are many kinds of sugar, such as grape, cane and milk sugars.

The Oils and Fats consist of the same elements as the carbohydrates, but the hydrogen is in larger quantity than is necessary to form water, and this surplus is available for the production of energy. During their combustion in the body they produce nearly two-and-a-quarter times (8.9 : 4 = 2.225) as much heat as the carbohydrates; but if eaten in more than puny quantities, digesting them is not a pushover, a portion passing away by the rectum. The fat in the body is not solely dependent upon the quantity consumed as food, as an animal may batten on food containing none. A moderate quantity favours digestion and the bodily health. In cold weather more should be taken. In the frigid Arctic regions the Esquimaux consume enormous quantities. Nuts are generally rich in oil. Oatmeal contains more than any of the other cereals (27 analyses gave from 8 to 12.3 per cent).

The most esteemed and dearest oil is Almond. What is called Peach-kernel oil, but which in commerce includes the oil obtained from plum and apricot stones, is almost as tasteless and useful, whilst it is considerably cheaper. It is a very agreeable and useful sustenance. It is often added to, as an adulterant, or substituted for the true Almond oil. The best qualities of Olive oil are much esteemed, though they are not as agreeable to English taste as the oil previously mentioned. The best qualities are termed Virgin, Extra Sublime and Sublime. Any that has been exposed for more than a short time to the light and heat of a shop window should be rejected, as the flavour is debased. It should be kept in a cool place. Not only does it vary much in freedom from acid and rancidity, but is frequently adulterated. Two other cheaper oils deserve mention. The "cold-drawn" Arachis oil (pea-nut or earth-nut oil) has a pleasant flavour, semblable to that of kidney beans. The "cold-drawn" Sesamé oil has an agreeable taste, and is considered equal to Olive oil for edible

purposes. The best qualities are rather difficult to obtain; those usually sold being much inferior to Peach-kernel and Olive oils. Cotton-seed oil is the cheapest of the edible ones. Salad oil, not sold under any descriptive name, is usually refined Cotton-seed oil, copulated with perhaps a little Olive oil to impart a richer flavour.

The solid fats sold as butter and lard substitutes, consist of deodorised cocoanut oil, and they are excellent for cooking purposes. It is claimed that biscuits, &c., made from them may be kept for a much longer period, without showing any trace of stench, than if butter or lard had been used. They are also to be had agreeably flavoured by admixture with almond, walnut, &c., "cream".

The better quality oils are quite as wholesome as the best fresh butter, and better than most butter as sold. Bread can be dipped into the oil, or a little solid vegetable fat spread on it. The author prefers to pour a little Peach-kernel oil upon some ground walnut kernels (or other ground nuts in themselves rich in oil), mix with a penknife to a suitable consistency and spread upon the bread. Pine-kernels are very oily, and can be used in pastry in the place of butter or lard.

Whenever oils are mentioned, without a prefix, the fixed or fatty oils are always understood. The volatile or essential oils are a distinct class. Occasionally, the fixed oils are called hydrocarbons, but hydrocarbon oils are quite different and consist of carbon and hydrogen alone. Of these, petroleum is incapable of digestion, whilst others are poisonous.

Vegetable Acids are composed of the same three elements and undergo combustion into the same compounds as the carbohydrates. They rouse the appetite, stimulate digestion, and finally form carbonates in combination with the alkalies, whereupon increasing the alkalinity of the blood. The chief vegetable acids are: malic acid, in the apple, pear, cherry, &c.; citric acid, in the lemon, lime, orange, gooseberry, cranberry, strawberry, raspberry, or other citrus fruit, &c.; tartaric acid, in the grape, pineapple, &c.

Some place these under Class III or food adjuncts. Oxalic acid (except when in the insoluble state of calcium oxalate), and several other acids are poisonous.

Proteids or Albuminoids are frequently termed flesh-formers. They are composed of nitrogen, carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and a small quantity of sulphur, and are extremely complex bodies. Their chief function is to form flesh in the body; but without previously forming it, they may be transmuted into fat or merely give rise to heat. They form the essential part of every living cell.

Proteids are excreted from the body as water, carbon dioxide, urea, uric acid, sulphates, &c.

The principal proteids of animal origin have their corresponding proteids in the vegetable kingdom. Some kinds, whether of animal or vegetable origin, are more easily digested than others. They have the same physiological value from whichever kingdom they are derived.

The Osseids comprise ossein, gelatin, cartilage, &c., from bone, skin, and connective tissue. They approach the proteids in composition, but unlike them they cannot form flesh or fulfil the same purpose in nutrition. Some food chemists wish to call the osseids, albuminoids; what were formerly termed albuminoids to be always spoken of as proteids only.

Jellies are of little use as food; not only is this because of the low nutritive value of gelatin, but also on account of the small quantity which is mixed with a large proportion of water.

The Vegetable Kingdom is the prime source of all organic food; water, and to a slight extent salts, form the only food that animals can derive directly from the inorganic kingdom. When man

consumes animal food—a sheep for example—he is only consuming a portion of the food which that sheep obtained from grass, clover, turnips, &c. All the proteids of the flesh once existed as proteids in the vegetables; some in exactly the same chemical form.

Flesh contains no starch or sugar, but a small quantity of glycogen. The fat in an animal is derived from the carbohydrates, the fats and the proteids of the vegetables consumed. The soil that produced the herbage, grain and roots consumed by cattle, in most cases could have produced food capable of direct utilisation by man. By passing the product of the soil through animals there is an enormous economic loss, as the greater part of that food is dissipated in maintaining the life and growth; little remains as flesh when the animal is delivered into the hands of the butcher. Some imagine that flesh food is more easily converted into flesh and blood in our bodies and is consequently more valuable than similar constituents in vegetables, but such is not the case. Fat, whether from flesh or from vegetables is digested in the same manner. The proteids of flesh, like those of vegetables, are converted into peptone by the digestive juices—taking the form of a perfectly diffusible liquid—otherwise they could not be absorbed and utilised by the body. Thus the products of digestion of both animal and vegetable proteids and fats are the same. Formerly, proteid matter was looked upon as the most valuable part of the food, and a large proportion was thought necessary for hard work. It was thought to be required, not only for the construction of the muscle substance, but to be utilised in proportion to muscular exertion. These views are now known to be wrong. A relatively small quantity of proteid matter, such as is easily obtained from vegetable food, is ample for the general needs of the body. Increased muscular exertion requires but a slightly increased rendition of this food constituent. It is the carbohydrates, or carbohydrates and fats that should be eaten in larger quantity, as these are the main source of muscular energy. The fact that animals, capable of the most prolonged and powerful exertion, thrive on vegetables of comparatively low proteid value, and that millions of the strongest races have subsisted on what most Englishmen would consider a meagre vegetarian diet, should have been sufficient evidence against the earlier view.

A comparison of flesh and vegetable food, shows in flesh an excessive quantity of proteid matter, a very small quantity of glycogen (the animal equivalent of starch and sugar) and a variable quantity of fat. Vegetable food differs much, but as a rule it contains a much smaller quantity of proteid matter, a large proportion of starch and sugar and a small quantity of fat. Some vegetable foods, particularly nuts, contain much fat.

Investigation of the digestive processes has shown that the carbohydrates and fats entail little strain on the system; their ultimate products are water and carbon dioxide, which are easily decomposed. The changes which the proteids undergo in the body are very complicated. There is ample provision in the body for their digestion, metabolism, and final rejection, when taken in moderate quantity, as is the case in a dietary of vegetables. The proteids in the human body, after fulfilling their purpose, are in part expelled in the same way as the carbohydrates; but the principal part, including all the nitrogen, is expelled by the kidneys in the form of urea (a very soluble substance), and a small quantity of uric acid in the form of quadurates.

There is reciprocity between the teeth and digestive organs of animals and their natural food. The grasses, leaves, &c., which are consumed by the herbivora, contain a large proportion of cellulose and woody tissue. Consequently, the food is bulky; it is but slowly disintegrated and the nutritious matter liberated and digested. The cellulose appears but slightly acted upon by the

digestive juices. The herbivoras possess capacious stomachs and the intestines are very long. The carnivoras have simpler digestive organs and short intestines. Even they consume substances which leave much indigestible residue, such as skin, ligaments and bones, but civilised man, when living on a flesh dietary, removes as much of such things as possible. The monkeys, apes, and man have a digestive canal intermediate in complexity and in length to the herbivoras and carnivoras. A certain quantity of indigestible matter is necessary for exciting peristaltic action of the bowels. The carnivoras with their short intestinal canal need the least, the frugivora more, and the herbivoras a much larger quantity. The consumption by man of what is commonly called concentrated food is the cause of the constipation to which flesh-eating nations are subject. Most of the pills and other nostrums which are used in enormous quantities contain aloes or other drugs which stimulate the action of the intestines.

Highly manufactured foods, from which as much as possible of the non-nutritious matter has been removed is often advocated, generally by those interested in its sale. Such food would be advantageous only if it were possible to remove or modify a great part of our digestive canal (we are omitting from consideration certain diseased conditions, when such foods may be useful). The eminent physiologist and bacteriologist, Elie Metchnikoff, has given it as his opinion that much of man's digestive organs is not only useless but often productive of derangement and disease. In several cases where it has been necessary, in consequence of serious disease, to remove the entire stomach or a large part of the intestines, the digestive functions have been perfectly performed. It is not that our organs are at fault, but our habits of life differ from that of our progenitors. In past times, when a simple dietary in which flesh food formed little or no part, and today, in those countries where one wholly or nearly all derived from vegetable sources and simply prepared is the rule, diseases of the digestive organs are rare. The Englishman going to a tropical country and partaking largely of flesh and alcohol, suffers from disease of the liver and other organs, to which the natives and the few of his own countrymen, living in accordance with natural laws are strangers.

(Adapted from *The Chemistry of Food and Nutrition*)

Notes

① ternary compounds

In chemistry, a ternary compound is a compound containing three different elements. An example of this is sodium phosphate, Na_3PO_4. The sodium ion has a charge of 1+ and the phosphate ion has a charge of 3-. Therefore, three sodium ions are needed to balance the charge of one phosphate ion. Another example of a ternary compound is calcium carbonate. In naming and writing the formulae for ternary compounds, we follow rules that are similar to binary compounds ($CaCO_3$).

② carbohydrates

A carbohydrate is a biological molecule consisting of carbon (C), hydrogen (H) and oxygen (O) atoms, usually with a hydrogen–oxygen atom ratio of 2:1 (as in water); in other words, with the empirical formula $C_m(H_2O)_n$ (where m could be different from n). This formula holds true for monosaccharides. Some exceptions exist; for example, deoxyribose, a sugar component of DNA, has the empirical formula $C_5H_{10}O_4$. Carbohydrates are technically hydrates of carbon;

structurally it is more accurate to view them as polyhydroxy aldehydes and ketones.

③ organic acids

An organic acid is an organic compound with acidic properties. The most common organic acids are the carboxylic acids, whose acidity is associated with their carboxyl group –COOH. Sulfonic acids, containing the group $-SO_2OH$, are relatively stronger acids. Alcohols, with –OH, can act as acids but they are usually very weak. The relative stability of the conjugate base of the acid determines its acidity. Other groups can also confer acidity, usually weakly: the thiol group –SH, the enol group, and the phenol group. In biological systems, organic compounds containing these groups are generally referred to as organic acids.

④ alkaloids

Alkaloids are a group of naturally occurring chemical compounds that mostly contain basic nitrogen atoms. This group also includes some related compounds with neutral and even weakly acidic properties. Some synthetic compounds of similar structure are also termed alkaloids. In addition to carbon, hydrogen and nitrogen, alkaloids may also contain oxygen, sulfur and, more rarely, other elements such as chlorine, bromine, and phosphorus.

⑤ phosphate

Phosphate (PO_3–PO_4) is an inorganic chemical and a salt of phosphoric acid. In organic chemistry, a phosphate, or organophosphate, is an ester of phosphoric acid. Of the various phosphoric acids and phosphates, organic phosphates are important in biochemistry and biogeochemistry (ecology), and inorganic phosphates are mined to obtain phosphorus for use in agriculture and industry. At elevated temperatures in the solid state, phosphates can condense to form pyrophosphates.

⑥ chloride

Chloride is the anion (negatively charged ion) Cl^-. It is formed when the element chlorine (a halogen) gains an electron or when a compound such as hydrogen chloride is dissolved in water or other polar solvents. Chloride salts such as sodium chloride are often very soluble in water. It is an essential electrolyte located in all body fluids responsible for maintaining acid/base balance, transmitting nerve impulses and regulating fluid in and out of cells. Less frequently, the word chloride may also form part of the "common" name of chemical compounds in which one or more chlorine atoms are covalently bonded. For example, methyl chloride, with the standard name chloromethane (see IUPAC books) is an organic compound with a covalent C–Cl bond in which the chlorine is not an anion.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*

3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Sentence Practice

Directions: Please rewrite the sentences with the proper forms of the given words.

tasteful	lookalike	catalyse	transmutation	prefix
dissipate	puny	decompose	pushover	service

1. This substance resolves rapidly in the presence of rainwater.
2. I had a girlfriend with pigtail, a useful vehicle, and a job that paid more than enough for me to survive while catering to my increasingly expensive video game habit.
3. The medicine is nauseating but good for an epileptic.
4. The uncouth commandant has grandiose aims but low abilities.
5. Fixing a jukebox is very easy for his fiancée.
6. This is the stark reality, and the apothecary has no choice but to facilitate such change in a piecemeal fashion, one small victory at a time.
7. One of the supreme quests of alchemy is to transform lead into gold.
8. Earlier this year in Hong Kong, a man who resembled Bolt was employed to advertise Puma.
9. In the word "unzip", "un-" is an affix added in front of the word.
10. He tried to dispel the smoke by opening the windows of the cloister.

III. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text B the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. sear
2. dissolve
3. healthful
4. scurf
5. greatness
6. freezing
7. comparatively
8. moratorium
9. provide
10. plenty
11. pernicious
12. eliminate
13. similar
14. nourishing
15. tiny

Antonyms

1. suffix
2. elevate
3. harmless
4. continuance
5. inoffensive
6. synthesize
7. considerable
8. scorching
9. aroma
10. dissimilar

IV. Phrase Practice

Directions: Please translate the following verb+noun collocations into Chinese.

1. fulfill the duty
2. fulfill the promise
3. fulfill the task
4. transmute raw materials into finished products
5. transmute matter into pure energy
6. derive pleasure from reading
7. derive wisdom from experience
8. derive from Greek mythology
9. define the scope
10. define the policy
11. pour the milk into the cup
12. pour out the troubles
13. atone for a crime
14. atone for all the injustice
15. atone for the damaged goods

V. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 15 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. This super _____ green vegetable may also help lower levels of homocycteine, an amino acid associated with increased risk of heart disease and stroke.

   A) nutritious B) gratuitous C) intravenous D) voluptuous

2. Enjoy a romantic salad that incorporates _____, like pink grapefruit or mandarin oranges, or use a dressing made with lemon and lime.

   A) eucalyptus B) crocus C) citrus D) walrus

3. The only _____ of approval I received was when I won an award or had a perfect report card.

   A) prance B) trance C) seance D) semblance

4. The use of a solicitor trained as a mediator would _____ the need for independent legal advice.

   A) marinate B) obviate C) lubricate D) placate

5. Most nonmetal chlorides are _____ by water.

   A) demoted B) detoured C) decompressed D) decomposed

6. With the death of the suburbs and the farms had come a _____ to an almost prehistoric tranquillity in the Sacramento Valley.

   A) renaissance B) reconnaissance C) reversion D) rendition

7. And through reparations, trials, schoolbooks and monuments, Germany did much to _____ for the crimes of the Nazis.

A) attire B) atone C) attune D) attenuate

8. The commander made the prevention of civilian casualties and protection of Armenians the ______ of his new military strategy.
A) centrepiece B) masterpiece C) mouthpiece D) earpiece

9. We try to remake the ______ or alkaline lands vegetative near the seashore.
A) mainline B) touchline C) scoreline D) saline

10. When a group of fans appeared outside his boardroom and a host of pundits turned on him, he realised the ______ of what he had done.
A) booty B) annuity C) nicety D) enormity

11. You can ______ the nightshirt with the gas in the kitchen.
A) leach B) parch C) wench D) mulch

12. A priori, insurrection is ______ to them, because it often results in a catastrophe.
A) effluent B) intransigent C) repugnant D) lubricant

13. He was there befriended by a dog, who brought him ______ and licked the sores on his leg until he was healed.
A) suspense B) sustenance C) subscript D) suction

14. An Estonian ______ inadvertently proved the existence of a dietary factor (a vitamin) necessary for the health of humankind.
A) impressionist B) pragmatist C) bacteriologist D) atheist

15. Other foods high in tryptophan include non-fat Greek-style yogurts, ______ soup, raw sunflower seeds and turkey.
A) lentil B) gerbil C) quill D) abseil

VI. Proofreading

Directions: Please identify and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

1. The doorman had to perform penance to atone his transgression.
2. The decision is of abeyance until he returns from vacation in Salvador.
3. "Japan should make a sincere apology and make full reparation with the Korean nation for its aggression and crimes against humanity," said the spokeswoman.
4. The footman was a very honest person who was capable of dissembling.
5. These hairpins are inferior than those I bought last week.

VII. Paraphrase

Directions: Please restate the following sentences using other words without altering the original meaning.

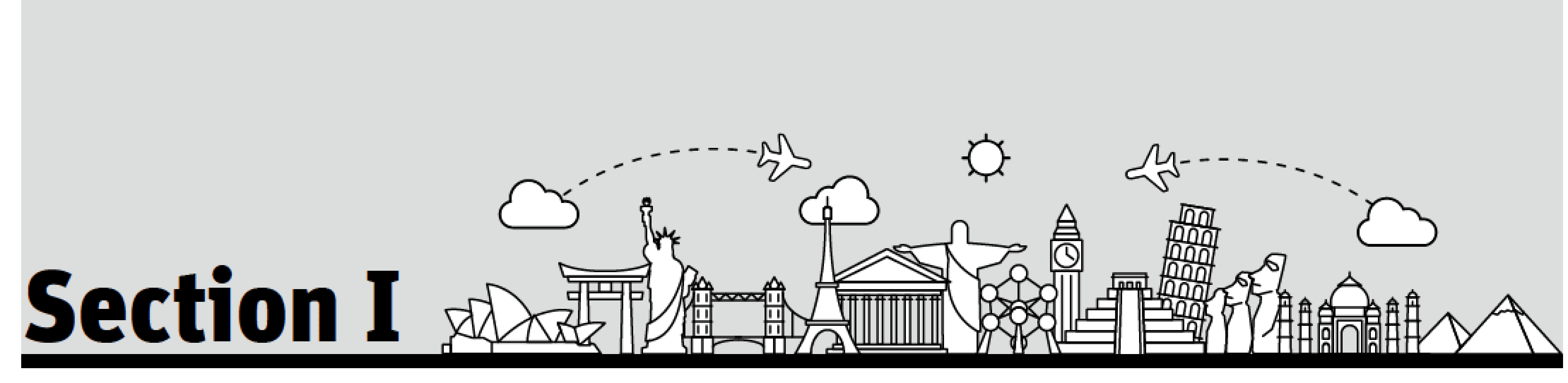
1. As a rule, fondness for salt is an acquired taste, and after its abeyance for a time, food thus flavoured becomes unpalatable and we may distaste them.
2. The Oils and Fats consist of the same elements as the carbohydrates, but the hydrogen is in larger quantity than is necessary to form water, and this surplus is available for the production of energy.
3. Not only does it vary much in freedom from acid and rancidity, but is frequently adulterated.
4. The fact that animals, capable of the most prolonged and powerful exertion, thrive on

vegetables of comparatively low proteid value, and that millions of the strongest races have subsisted on what most Englishmen would consider a meagre vegetarian diet, should have been sufficient evidence against the earlier view.

5. Even they consume substances which leave much indigestible residue, such as skin, ligaments and bones, but civilised man, when living on a flesh dietary, removes as much of such things as possible.
6. Highly manufactured foods, from which as much as possible of the non-nutritious matter has been removed is often advocated, generally by those interested in its sale.
7. In past times, when a simple dietary in which flesh food formed little or no part, and today, in those countries where one wholly or nearly all derived from vegetable sources and simply prepared is the rule, diseases of the digestive organs are rare.



Unit 4
Women's Roles



Section I

Focus on Critical Thinking and Critical Reading (4)

The Critical Thinking Process

No one is thinking critically all the time. Sometimes we think in almost any way but critically, for example, when we are affected by anger, sadness or other emotions. On the other hand, the good news is that, because our critical thinking ability varies with our current mode of thinking, most of the time our critical thinking ability can be improved by developing certain routine activities and applying them to all problems in our daily life.

Once you understand the theory of critical thinking, it only takes persistence and practice to improve your critical thinking ability.

You start thinking critically by trying the following exercise. Think of what someone has told you recently. Ask yourself the following questions:

Who said it?

Do you know him? Is he in a position of authority or power? Does it make any difference if someone else tells you about this matter?

What did they say?

Did they give facts or opinions? Did they give the whole fact? Did they leave anything out?

Where did they say it?

Was it in public or in private? Does anyone else have the chance to respond or provide alternative account?

When did they say it?

Was it before, during or after an important event? Was timing important?

Why did they say it?

Did they give the reasoning behind their point of view? Did they want to make someone look good or bad?

How did they say it?

Were they happy or sad, angry or indifferent? Did they write or say it? Could you understand what they said?

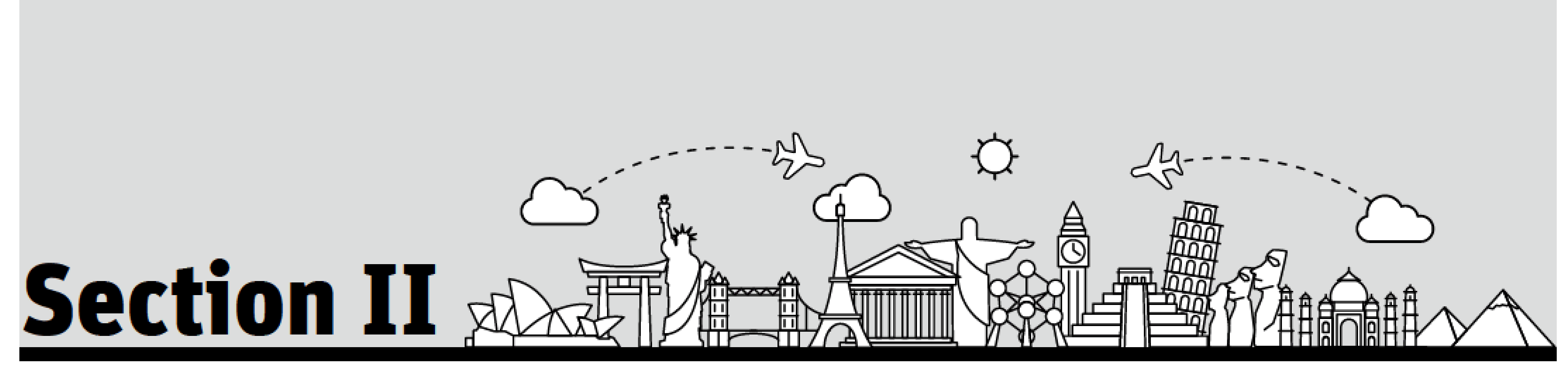
What Are Our Goals?

One of the most important aspects of critical thinking is to determine what our goal is, and then make a decision based on all possibilities.

Once you have identified your goals, you should use it as a starting point for all the future situations that require thought or further decision making. Where necessary, let your colleagues, family, or people around you know your intention to pursue this goal. You have to discipline yourself to keep on track until you have to restart the decision-making process.

However, sometimes there are obstacles that obstruct simple decision making. We all carry with us likes and dislikes, habitual behaviors and personal preferences in our lives. A major contribution to ensuring our critical thinking is to be aware of these personal characteristics, preferences and biases and make allowance for them when considering next possible steps, whether they are at the pre-action consideration stage, or as part of a rethink caused by unexpected or unforeseen obstacles to continued progress.

The clearer we are aware of ourselves, our strengths and weaknesses, the more productive our critical thinking is likely to be.



Section II

Text A: The Making of a Revolution

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **intractable** [ɪn'træktəbəl] ***adj.***

(someone) very difficult to control or influence; (something, such as a problem, situation, etc.) very difficult to deal with

synonym	difficult; testing; awkward
antonym	easy; effortless; toilless; facile; undemanding
word family	intractably; intractability
related phrase	intractable problems; intractable pain

Example 1 What may be done to reduce the influence of intractable opponents?

Example 2 The economy still faces intractable problems.

② **disincline** [ˌdɪsɪn'klaɪn] ***vt./vi.*** **(disinclined/disinclined/disinclining)**

to make or be unwilling, reluctant, or averse

synonym	be unwilling to; be reluctant to
word family	disinclination; disinclined
related phrase	disincline for/towards; disincline from

Example 1 His rareness disinclined me to grant his request.

Example 2 Some students disincline to study.

③ **spearhead** ['spɪəhed] ***vt.*** **(spearheaded/spearheaded/spearheading)**

to lead or initiate something (an activity, attack or campaign, etc.)

synonym	lead
word family	spearhead (*n.*); spearheaded; spearheading
related phrase	spearhead the attack

Example 1 Continuous bombing spearheaded the way to occupying the city.

Example 2 She is spearheading a nationwide campaign against domestic violence.

④ **stagnate** [stæg'neɪt] ***vt./vi.*** **(stagnated/stagnated/stagnating)**

to stop changing or progressing

synonym	depress; in the ditch

word family stagnation; stagnancy; stagnant; stagnantly
related phrase stagnate the steel industry

Example 1 My mind is stagnating because I have watched TV all day.

Example 2 The atmosphere of the talk was stagnated when they dealt with rights.

⑤ **maul** [mɔːl] ***vt.*** **(mauled/mauled/mauling)**

to violently attack and badly injure someone by tearing one's flesh; to attack aggressively, and often harm in some way; to strongly criticize something, especially a new book, play etc.

synonym wound; injure; attack
word family mauler
related phrase be mauled by a bear

Example 1 The troops were severely mauled and lost a quarter of their strength before evacuating the island.

Example 2 Her latest book was absolutely mauled by the critics.

⑥ **steep** [stiːp] ***vt.*** **(steeped/steeped/steeping)**

to soak or be soaked in a liquid in order to soften, cleanse, extract an element etc.; to saturate or imbue

synonym soak; dip; saturate; imbue
word family steeper; steepness; steeply
related phrase steep the tea in hot water; be steeped in happiness; an incident steeped in mystery

Example 1 Her skirt was steeped with blood.

Example 2 The peas have steeped for 12 hours.

⑦ **impunity** [ɪm'pjuːnətɪ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* impunities)**

the fact that someone is not punished for doing something bad

synonym let-off; exemption
antonym punishment; penalty
word family impunitive
related phrase do sth. with impunity

Example 1 These gangs operate with apparent impunity.

Example 2 This year's International Women's Day is devoted to ending impunity for violence against women and girls.

⑧ **cohort** ['kəʊhɔːt] ***n.***

someone's friends, supporters, or associates; a group of people of the same age, social class etc., especially when they are being studied

synonym advocate
related phrase a cohort of ; cohort study

Example 1 Drake and his cohorts were not pleased with my appointment.

Example 2 Tests were carried out by teachers on the entire cohort of eight to nine year-olds in their third year at primary school.

⑨ **deputise** ['depjʊtaɪz] ***vt./vi.*** **(deputised/deputised/deputising)**

to ask someone to do something on another person's behalf, for example, attend a meeting; to do something on another person's behalf

synonym deputize; represent; on behalf of
word family deputation; deputy; deputize; depute
related phrase deputise for

Example 1 The president said he could deputise the Florida National Guard to help with security.

Example 2 I sometimes had to deputise for him in the kitchen.

⑩ **permeate** ['pɜːmɪeɪt] ***vt./vi.*** **(permeated/permeated/permeating)**

(liquid, gas etc.) to enter something and spreads through every part of something; (an idea, feeling, or attitude etc.) to affect every part of something or is present throughout something

synonym filter; penetrate; prevail
word family permeability; permeation; permeable; permeant
related phrase permeate through

Example 1 The smell of diesel oil permeated the air.

Example 2 Racism continues to permeate our society.

⑪ **flout** [flaʊt] ***vt./vi.*** **(flouted/flouted/flouting)**

to deliberately disobey something, especially a law, an order, or an accepted way of behaving

synonym sneer at; scoff at; laugh at
word family flout (*n.*)
related phrase deliberately/openly flout sth.; flout the law

Example 1 The problem is that the regulations do not specify punishments for businesses or individuals who flout them.

Example 2 The foolish boy flouted his mother's advice.

⑫ **spree** [spriː] ***vi.*** **(spreed/spreed/spreeing)**

to engage without restraint in an activity and indulge, as when shopping

synonym cheer; whoop up
word family spree (*n.*)
related phrase spree for sb./sth.

Example 1 Hundreds of thousands of jubilant Americans gathered in the square and spreed for the new year.

Example 2 Ladies spree in the shopping malls during Black Friday in the U.S.

⑬ **peeve** [pi:v] ***vi.*** **(peeved/peeved/peeving)**

to cause to be annoyed, irritated, or resentful

synonym	hate
word family	peeve (*n.*)
related phrase	get/be peeved at sb./sth.; peeve sb.

Example 1 I don't believe that you'll ever be able to peeve the "yes-man".

Example 2 Soon I adopted other words, such as "You're beginning to peeve me".

⑭ **incriminate** [ɪn'krɪmɪneɪt] ***vt.*** **(incriminated/incriminated/incriminating)**

to make someone seem guilty of something bad, especially a crime

synonym	accuse
antonym	criminate
word family	incrimination; incriminating; incriminatory; self-incriminate
related phrase	incriminate sb./oneself

Example 1 He claimed that the drugs had been planted to incriminate him.

Example 2 The evidence seemed to incriminate him.

⑮ **betide** [bɪ'taɪd] ***vt./vi.*** **(betided/betided/betiding)**

to become of; to happen to

synonym	happen; occur
word family	betided; betoken
related phrase	woe betide sb.

Example 1 Woe betide anyone who got in his way.

Example 2 Whatever may betide, maintain your courage.

⑯ **saunter** ['sɔ:ntə] ***vi.*** **(sauntered/sauntered/sauntering)**

to walk in a slow, casual way

synonym	roam; stroll
word family	saunter (*n.*); saunterer; sauntering
related phrase	saunter off

Example 1 We watched our fellow students saunter into the building.

Example 2 On Monday morning Jemmy sauntered on the road of Madison Square.

⑰ **resurgent** [rɪ'sɜ:dʒənt] ***adj.***

becoming stronger and more popular after a period when something has been weak and unimportant

synonym	revivatory; redivious; born-again
word family	resurgence; resurrection; resurge
related phrase	the resurgent fascism; resurgent water

Example 1 This was an extraordinary concession for a proud, resurgent nation.

Example 2 Dr. DeLay cautioned countries to maintain against resurgent pandemic.

⑱ **serenity** [sɪ'renɪtɪ] ***n.***

a disposition free from stress or emotion; the absence of mental stress or anxiety

synonym peace; peacefulness; tranquility
antonym confusion; annoyance
word family serene; serenely
related phrase the serenity of

Example 1 It was their serenity which galled her most.

Example 2 I had a wonderful feeling of peace and serenity when I saw my husband.

⑲ **tenacity** [tɪ'næsɪtɪ] ***n.***

If you have tenacity, you are very determined and do not give up easily.

synonym toughness; perseverance
word family tenaciousness; tenacious
related phrase high tenacity; ultimate tenacity

Example 1 Tenacity is one quality that marks them out.

Example 2 Talent, hard work and sheer tenacity are all crucial to career success.

⑳ **sortie** ['sɔːtiː] ***n.***

a short flight made by a plane over enemy land, in order to bomb a city, military defences etc.; a brief trip away from one's home base, especially a trip to an unfamiliar place; an attempt to do or take part in something new

synonym sally; breakout
word family sortie (*v.*)
related phrase make a sortie; first sortie into sth.

Example 1 The US and its allies carried out 44,000 sorties during this period.

Example 2 We made a sortie from our hotel to the open-air market.

㉑ **snarl** [snɑːl] ***n.***

a vicious growl, utterance, or facial expression; a disorganized mass of things

synonym roar; chaos; disorder; confusion
word family snarl (*v.*); snarler; snarly; snarlingly
related phrase an angry snarl; the traffic snarls

Example 1 With a snarl, the second dog made a dive for his heel.

Example 2 She was tangled in a snarl of logs and branches.

㉒ chastise [tʃæ'staɪz] *vt.* (chastised/chastised/chastising)

to speak to someone angrily or punish someone for something wrong that has been done

synonym penalize; punish; castigate
word family chastisement; chasten
related phrase chastise sb. for sth.; chastise oneself; chastise with scorpions

Example 1 The Securities Commission chastised the firm but imposed no fine.

Example 2 They chastised the government for lacking vitality and strength.

㉓ blurt [blɜːt] *vt.* (blurted/blurted/blurting)

to say something suddenly, after trying hard to keep quiet or to keep something secret

synonym declare
related phrase blurt out sth.; blurt out the secret

Example 1 "I was looking for Sally," he blurted, and his eyes filled with tears.

Example 2 Peter blurted the news out before we could stop him.

㉔ scant [skænt] *adj.*

There is very little of something or not as much of something as there should be.

synonym insufficient; short; deficient; lacking; scarce
antonym sufficient; replete; wealthy; abundant; ample
word family scantily; scantiness; scanty
related phrase a scant cup/teaspoon etc.; be scant of; show scant respect for

Example 1 She began to berate the police for paying scant attention to the theft from her car.

Example 2 They produce goods with scant regard for quality.

㉕ of this ilk

of the same kind

synonym like this
related phrase sth. of this ilk

Example 1 It is the attitude of this ilk that has hurt females in the workforce and society.

Example 2 People of this ilk certainly exist in children's lives, and it is important to acknowledge and represent them rather than pretend that we can wish them away.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

alias	altruism	antidote	barricade	behead
bodice	bridleway	brotherhood	buyout	canyon
castigate	catalytic	chandelier	chasten	chauvinism
chiffon	coffer	courthouse	crackdown	crevice

customize	dainty	delta	despot	diction
disaffect	disavow	discolour	disconcerting	disinfect
disserve	draconian	egalitarian	egalitarianism	entrepreneurial
epitomize	ethos	excerpt	facelift	fictitious
fairway	fizzle	footloosely	freeway	fuselage
galley	hardback	hibernate	housemaid	Iberia
impasse	impersonate	infidel	intercontinental	laminate
Latvia	launder	lawsuit	legislature	locus
lore	malnutrition	microbiology	microcomputer	microelectronics
microprocessor	mortise	oboe	octagon	offshoot
onlooker	opal	ordinance	orphanage	painstakingly
panther	parsonage	payback	payout	peacekeeping
personage	pragmatism	predeterminate	pretext	readership
rendezvous	reproductive	reshape	ringleader	scruple
serene	slither	sluice	snout	spurious
squalor	stoat	straitjacket	subservient	subway
suckle	suffragette	supermodel	swimsuit	tenure
terminus	tether	threadbare	throwback	touchstone
trepidation	tumult	undervalue	upbeat	upholster
whist	woodpecker			

Part 2 Text

The Making of a Revolution

The earth is shifting. A new age is dawning. From Kabul and Cairo to Cape Town and New York, women are claiming their space at home, at work and in the public square. They are propelling changes so immense they're likely to affect intractable issues such as poverty, intercontinental strife, culture and religion, and the power brokers are finally listening.

The new ethos of change isn't about giving the "little woman" a fair shake or even about pushing disinclined regimes to adhere to hard-won international laws relating to women. It is based on the notion that the world can no longer afford to oppress half its population. The economist Jeffrey Sachs, spearheading the United Nations Millennium Project[1], claims that the status of women is directly related to the economy: where one is flourishing, so is the other; where one is stagnating, so is the other. The World Bank asserts that if women and girls are treated fairly, the economy of a village will improve.

Those who monitor the state of the world's women are speaking out as never before. There's this, from Isabel Coleman, senior fellow for U.S. foreign policy at the Council on Foreign Relations in New York: "Countries that oppress their women are predeterminate failed states."

"Together men and women are the two wings of a bird—both wings have to be not mauled, not broken, in order to push the bird forward." That's from Sima Samar, chair of the Afghan Independent Human Rights Commission[2].

And Canada's Marilou McPhedran, director of the Institute for International Women's Rights, says, "Change does not occur because we want it to occur or because it's fair for a just society. Change occurs because people are steeped in the process."

One of the most vocal leaders of the new age of women is Hillary Clinton, who has had plenty to say as U.S. Secretary of State: "Recent history shows that agreements that exclude women and ignore their concerns usually fail. In country after country, we have seen women help push peace agreements to the terminus. Where women are excluded, too often the agreements that result are disconnected from ground-truth and less likely to be successful and enjoy popular support."

Now, at last, is the time for women.

Most Western women thought that our time had come with the second wave of the women's movement during the 1960s and 1970s (the first wave being the fight for the right to vote led by suffragettes in Australia, New Zealand, the United Kingdom, the United States and Canada more than half a century earlier). Although much was accomplished, the finish line when it came to egalitarianism still eluded many women in the West; in the rest of the world it remained a seemingly unattainable dream. Not anymore. The catalytic of change today is women from the East as well as the West and Africa too. And they have powerful backing from mainstream economists, policy personages and political figures who have realized that educating and otherwise advancing the opportunities and rights of women and girls is the way forward.

Two unlikely factors have contributed to the dawning of this new age: distortion and disease. The rise of Islamism in the late twentieth century spurred women in Asia and the Middle East to resist what they saw as the extremist hijacking of their religion. In Africa, the HIV/AIDS pandemic brought women together as never before when they realized they would die if they didn't take action against the sexual improvidence of men. In the West, the information-based society that burst on the scene with the turn of the century moved a woman's style of management into the mainstream: networks rather than hierarchies and shared leadership rather than top-down management became new touchstones in the corporate world.

And Facebook, Twitter, e-mail and blogging brought women the world over together. Women wearing jeans discovered that women in hijab were not subjugated, whist victims. Women wearing hijab found out that contrary to what the fundamentalists said, women in blue jeans were not whores and infidels. Together they learned that the impunity and power of opportunistic men was holding all of them back, disserving their children, making the future bleak. And they knew it was time for systemic change. Today, women are becoming a force so powerful that everyone from presidents to pollsters is beginning to see us in a new light—as the way to end poverty and conflict, as the means of improving the economy. It's a change in attitude that centuries of women have painstakingly worked toward.

A new cohort of savvy game-changers has emerged. They deputise for millions of women who've been trapped in religious dogma, suffocating in cultural contradictions. Until recently they had been bullied into silence by extremists who claim, "This is our culture, our religion and none of your business." Now women have found their voices and told the rest of the world that it is our

business, that cultural traditions are no excuse for criminal behaviour.

After a flurry of changes in the West in the sixties, seventies and eighties, it seemed that a disconcerting quiet permeated. Some said feminism was dead. But early into the 2000s the aspirations of young people in war-torn regions like Afghanistan and disease-ravaged Africa were bubbling beneath the surface. They wanted to shed the parts of the past that choked their dreams. Like participants in the women's movement that had gone before, the new wave of young people challenged taboos. They tackled unmentionable topics such as female genital mutilation. They started asking questions that they had never asked before, about why men decided whether women would go to school, work outside the home, own property. The temperature rose and the lid on the pot began to rattle.

Young women began to flout old men with threadbare customs. Women who hadn't dared to speak up started denouncing cultural practices and spurious religious claims that had survived for centuries. The biggest trepidation for extremists, misogynists and chauvinists today is that women in Asia and Africa and the Americas are finding common ground.

In 2001, women the world over were riveted to the fate of the burka-clad women of Afghanistan who'd been denied education, jobs and health care under the Taliban. Ten years later, in 2011, there was Tahrir Square[3]; once again women around the world spreed for their sisters who were helping to topple Egypt's dictatorial regime. During the decade in between, Pakistan's were peeved by Hudood Ordinance[4], which demanded that a raped woman have four male witnesses to prove she didn't cause the rape, were brought down; the personal status laws in Egypt that disavow women rights in marriage were challenged for the first time; women in Kabul found the courage to march in the street; Liberian women surrounded the men at a peace conference and barricaded the building, saying they wouldn't leave until a peace accord was struck and held a "sex strike" to make their point. And in Canada, aboriginal women, who had incriminated the government of failing to take action on the file of their missing and likely murdered sisters, aunts, daughters and mothers, called for outside help from the United Nations[5] and got it, giving the government an embarrassing black eye.

None of these events would have betided without the change that women had begun to lead.

The upsurge in education is changing the way women and girls live their lives. In Saudi Arabia enrolment in primary and secondary schools for girls has been rising by 8.3 percent a year. The women who in 2011 and 2012 protested the ban against females' driving were dentists and professors and IT specialists. These women and their daughters are no longer willing to ask permission of male guardians to move about footloosely on their own in their home country, travel abroad or have a medical procedure. What's more, the birth rate in Saudi Arabia is falling to European levels, and customs such as marrying a first cousin are falling out of favour. Farida Shaheed says, "The more options women have, the less they are under the thumb of their husbands, fathers, priests and mullahs."

The changes I describe in this book are not about women triumphing over men, Western values over Eastern or one religion over another. They're aimed at solving the world's most intractable problems—poverty, tumult and violence. This new manifesto for women is being written in mud-brick houses in Afghanistan and in Cairo's Tahrir Square; in the forests of Congo even as women hide from sauntering militias; and in a shelter in northern Kenya where 160 girls between the ages of three and seventeen have launched a precedent-setting lawsuit against their government

for failing to protect them from rape.

Women revolutionaries and visionaries in cities and villages the world over are making history. Leading the way are women like Gloria Steinem, Hillary Clinton and Isobel Coleman, etc. who have marched and petitioned and stood in solidarity to eradicate religiously or culturally sanctioned acts of violence against women and children.

Supporters are jumping on this bandwagon like resurgent believers in the power of women. The philanthropist Bill Gates says, "The past decade has seen more progress against inequality than any of the previous five." Doug Saunders writes, "The most potent forces in the world right now … are all centred around the mythic figure of the teenage girl," commenting on a study released by the charity Plan International, "Because I'm a Girl, which recognizes that the fate of girls and young women is precisely the fate of their countries and communities."

The United Nations Security Council unanimously adopted Resolution 1325 on October 31, 2000—the first time the Security Council addressed the disproportionate and unique impact of armed conflict on women; recognized the undervalued and underutilized contributions that women make to conflict prevention, peacekeeping, conflict resolution and peace building and at the same time stressed the importance of women's equal and full participation as upbeat agents in serenity and security. Nice words, but the fact is, more than a decade later, that women still have to fight their way to the negotiating table and are often not included. Says Hillary Clinton, "If we want to make progress toward settling the world's most intractable conflicts, let's enlist women."

The idea isn't new. A dozen years ago, in 2001, Jane Jacobs explained the far-reaching effects of well-managed economies and the vital role that women play in them in her book *The Nature of Economies*. Using the form of a platonic dialogue—a conversation over coffee among five fictitious friends—Jacobs puts these words into the mouth of one of her characters: "This is why societies that are oppressive to women and contemptuous of their work are so backward economically. Half their populations, doing economically important kinds of work, such as cooking and food processing, cleaning and laundering, making garments and concocting home remedies, are excluded from taking initiatives to develop all that work—and nobody else does either. No wonder macho societies typically have pitiful, weak economies."

Since Jacobs wrote that passage, the concept of improving the economy and reducing poverty and violence by empowering women has taken flight. It's been a long time coming. The journey to get to this place has been a perilous one for women through thousands of years of oppression and trickery. Women were burned alive at the stake for daring to have opinions. They were beheaded for failing to produce a male heir. They suffered foot binding to create dainty, useless feet to please their men (so tiny, deformed and painful that they could barely walk, let alone run away). They continue to be subjected to female genital mutilation and honour killing and forced marriage. They're still jailed for being raped in places like Afghanistan. Some clerics and religious leaders have described women as whores, harlots and jezebels; as brainless and even soulless. Women's story of change is one of stunning courage, tenacity and wit.

Women such as Christine de Pizan were proclaiming women's rights in the 1400s in France. Mary Wollstonecraft was doing the same in England in 1792 when she wrote *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*. Between those historical points, Isabella of Castile, Elizabeth I of England, Christine of Sweden and Catherine the Great of Russia all reigned as monarchs, and each in her position embodied some form of female emancipation. Women led the bread riots in England and

France in the 1500s, marched to protest the salt shortages in the colonies of New England in the 1700s and made sorties into the world of equality rights as long as four and five centuries ago. The suffragettes and the Famous Five from Canada agitated for change early in the twentieth century. And the beginning of the second wave of the feminist movement in the sixties made women such as Betty Friedan and Doris Anderson famous. Helen Reddy's "I am woman, hear me snarl" sounded like a call to arms when she first sang it in 1972. But in the past the gains women made were often modified, and women themselves were cast back into their historical roles as mother, wife, caregiver or temptress.

...

There was a time when people were not chastised for making gross presumptions about women: that raped women asked for it and women who were beaten by their husbands liked it. No one would dare to talk that way now in countries where women have achieved emancipation. In 1994 an Alberta judge claimed that a young woman "wasn't exactly dressed in a bonnet and crinolines" when she applied for a job in a trailer at a construction site and was raped. He implied that it was her own fault and blurted, "A well-chosen expletive, a slap in the face or … a well-directed knee would have been a better response than charging the offender." He was removed from the bench.

In 2011, though, a story won an Academy Award for the filmmaker Sharmeen Obaid-Chinoy. In her documentary Saving Face, she chronicles the ghastly wounds that Pakistani women suffer when men throw acid in their faces. She has riveted attention on a hideous crime that nobody had wanted to talk about. In just ten years, the screen that filters public awareness has been lifted, and the silence has been broken in Pakistan and elsewhere. Talking is the antidote for oppression and injustice. The first result when women share stories of victimization is realizing that other people don't live that way. For the women of Afghanistan, that realization began when they understood that their religion had been manipulated by political opportunists: despite what the fundamentalist mullahs said, there was scant evidence in the Quran to support the actions of the extremists. The second result of telling our stories is overcoming the personally perturbing question, who will we be if we change the way we are?

The Arab Spring was the result of a collection of gatherings at the barricades, conversations at the well and petitions to rulers. But it took an unexpected reaction to oppression and corruption to trigger the revolution that raced through the Middle East and North Africa: the self-immolation of Mohamed Bouazizi in Tunisia on December 17, 2010. History has taught us that the barrier to change doesn't come down with the first assault. But each renewed strike will weaken the opposition and ultimately destroy it. The late Canadian journalist and social activist June Callwood put it this way: "The first thing to get out of the way is that virtue always triumphs; in truth most attempts to confront and defeat misdeeds are only partially successful or else seem to be outright fizzles. It doesn't matter. Nothing is wasted in the universe. Even an effort that apparently goes nowhere will influence the future. Though the system looks untouched, it has a fatal crack in it. The next assault or the one after that will bring it down. At the very least someone somewhere has learned a lesson and will be more thoughtful."

The people of Poland and Czechoslovakia and other former Soviet republics followed that strategy. Citizens in Tunisia, Egypt, Yemen, Syria, Libya and the rest of North Africa and the Middle East are doing the same today. Women invariably join these protests, exhibiting tenacity and

daring. But as much as they stand at the barricades with men, their fight for emancipation extends way beyond deposing a despot. During the two intifadas, Dr. Salwa Al-Najjab, an obstetrician and gynecologist in Ramallah on the West Bank, and her colleagues found that the number of honour killings in the Palestinian Territories fell dramatically. "During the intifada, women were seen as partners," she says. "The young women and men passed out pamphlets, threw stones and worked on the street together. At that time, the killing of women decreased. But when there was no change in the political situation, the women went back to their houses. Then they were seen as women, not as partners, and the rate of femicide increased [once more]."

This book is the story of the revolution in women's lives. One of the stories is about a young Afghan, Noorjahan Akbar, who along with her friend Anita Haidary, founded Young Women for Change (YWC), an organization that is as modern as it is provocative. And they have done this in one of the world's capitals of female oppression: Kabul. Their aim is to reshape the emotional landscape of Afghanistan.

Once in a very long while, maybe a lifetime, you get to tell a story about how lives can be altered. The process of change is usually daring, certainly time-consuming, invariably costly, occasionally heartbreaking but eventually an exercise so rewarding that it becomes the stuff of legends. But like all movements and most periods of change, there are invariably false starts and throwbacks. Change is fuelled by anger and disappointment, as well as inspiration and patience. What is happening today is the culmination of all the waves of women's efforts that went before. Once change of this ilk begins in earnest, once it has lifted off, the momentum picks up and it becomes unstoppable.

Lots of people remain pessimistic. They suggest that soon the Taliban will return to power and Afghan women will be thrown back into the dark ages. Others say the women of the Arab Spring are a one-off, that the draconian personal-status laws that govern family life, marriage, divorce and inheritance will keep them subservient.

I don't believe either prediction is true and neither do the women I interviewed for this book.

(Adapted from *Ascent of Women*)

Notes

① United Nations Millennium Project

The Millennium Project is an initiative that focuses on research implementing the organizational means, operational priorities, and financing structures necessary to achieve the Millennium Development Goals (or MDGs). The goals are aimed at the reduction of poverty, hunger, disease, illiteracy, environmental degradation, and discrimination against women.

② Afghan Independent Human Rights Commission

The Afghan Independent Human Rights Commission (AIHRC) is the national human rights institution (NHRI) of Afghanistan, dedicated to the promotion, protection and monitoring of human rights and the investigation of human rights abuses. The AIHRC describes itself as a "constitutionalized, national and independent human rights body in Afghanistan".

③ Tahrir Square

Tahrir Square, also known as "Martyr Square", is a major public town square in Downtown Cairo, Egypt. The square has been the location and focus for political demonstrations in Cairo, most notably those that led to the 2011 Egyptian revolution and the resignation of President Hosni Mubarak.

④ Hudood Ordinance

The Hudood Ordinances are laws in Pakistan that were enacted in 1977 as part of then military ruler Zia-ul-Haq's "Sharisation" or "Islamisation" process. It replaced parts of the British-era Pakistan Penal Code, adding new criminal offences of adultery and fornication, and new punishments of whipping, amputation and stoning to death. After much controversy and criticism, parts of the law were extensively revised in 2006 by the Women's Protection Bill.

⑤ United Nations

The United Nations (UN) is an intergovernmental organization to promote international co-operation. A replacement for the ineffective League of Nations, the organization was established on 24 October 1945 after World War II in order to prevent another such conflict. At its founding, the UN had 51 member states; there are now 193. The headquarters of the UN is in Manhattan, New York City, and experiences extraterritoriality. Further main offices are situated in Geneva, Nairobi, and Vienna. The organization is financed by assessed and voluntary contributions from its member states. Its objectives include maintaining international peace and security, promoting human rights, fostering social and economic development, protecting the environment, and providing humanitarian aid in cases of famine, natural disaster, and armed conflict. The UN has six principal organs: the General Assembly (the main deliberative assembly); the Security Council (for deciding certain resolutions for peace and security); the Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC, for promoting international economic and social co-operation and development); the Secretariat (for providing studies, information, and facilities needed by the UN); the International Court of Justice (the primary judicial organ); and the UN Trusteeship Council (inactive since 1994).

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text A the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. cranny
2. tyrant
3. subterfuge
4. banal
5. edict
6. conflict
7. occur
8. fear
9. reluctant
10. freely
11. tranquility
12. avow

Antonyms

1. overestimate
2. success
3. timidity
4. poison
5. factual
6. sunset

III. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 10 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. Ironically, the weekend incident raises an important question about whether there truly is ________ for Muslim women in America.
   A) fuselage B) suffrage C) orphanage D) parsonage
2. Stoats are small and fierce and quick and feral; they kill by biting the necks of their prey; they are said to ________ their larger victims with a snake-like dance.
   A) epitomise B) customise C) mortise D) mesmerise
3. The cells would take a cut of the money, then ________ it through expensive purchases or ship it wholesale to the global ringleaders.
   A) launder B) slither C) upholster D) coffer
4. During Lula's tenure, his government mishandled a legislature composed largely of politically footloose mercenaries, which provoked ________ and legislative paralysis.
   A) diction B) malnutrition C) corruption D) rendition
5. There is an ________ against cutting down trees in the canyon.
   A) oboe B) opal C) ordinance D) octagon
6. With its working bell tower, the Centre County Courthouse, built in 1805, looks like a ________ to simpler times.
   A) hardback B) payback C) clawback D) throwback
7. Her husband ________ her after 30 years of marriage and three children.
   A) disavowed B) discoloured C) disaffected D) disinfected
8. Why do some cities arise as fast-growth entrepreneurial hot spots while others ________ or decline?
   A) hibernate B) laminate C) stagnate D) impersonate
9. There should be a crackdown on rogue companies who continue to show ________ at the ban.
   A) snout B) flout C) buyout D) payout

10. A(n) ________ spoke for many when he remarked that "a man who could make so vile a pun would not scruple to pick a pocket".
A) chandelier B) onlooker C) woodpecker D) panther

IV. Cultural Kaleidoscope

Directions: Please choose the most appropriate answer to each statement.

1. According to Emma Watson, Goodwill Ambassador for UN Women, ________ is the belief that men and women should have equal rights and opportunities. It is the theory of political, economic and social equality of the sexes.
A) altruism B) feminism C) chauvinism D) pragmatism

2. The predominantly loose and flowing, but covering, garments are suited to the desert climate of ________.
A) Iberia B) Latvia C) Saudi Arabia D) U.K.

3. *Saving Face*, a 2012 documentary film which won the Academy Award, alias the Oscar, features two women attacked by acid and their struggle for ________ and healing.
A) justice B) chalice C) sluice D) crevice

4. News of the Altair 8800 excited Paul Allen and Bill Gates, who wrote the first ________ Basic for the 8800 and, within months, went on to found Microsoft together.
A) microbiology B) microelectronics
C) microprocessor D) microcomputer

5. The ________ system is a fast and efficient way of getting around Cairo, located near the Nile Delta, for its traffic is known to be overwhelming and overcrowded.
A) bridleway B) subway C) fairway D) freeway

V. Rhetoric Appreciation

Directions: A rhetorical device or a figure of speech is a technique that an author or speaker uses to convey to the reader or listener a meaning with the goal of persuading him or her towards considering a topic from a different perspective, using language designed to encourage or evoke an emotional response in the audience. The widely-used rhetorical devices include parallelism, metaphor, repetition, antithesis, simile, quotation, climax, alliteration, personification, etc. Please identify the rhetorical devices used in the following sentences. And then reread Text A to find out the rhetoric in use as much as you can.

1. ________________
... where one is flourishing, so is the other; where one is stagnating, so is the other.

2. ________________
Together men and women are the two wings of a bird—both wings have to be not mauled, not broken, in order to push the bird forward.

3. ________________
And they have powerful backing from mainstream economists, policy personages and political figures ...

4. ________________

Says Hillary Clinton, "If we want to make progress toward settling the world's most intractable conflicts, let's enlist women."

5. ________________

Between those historical points, Isabella of Castile, Elizabeth I of England, Christine of Sweden and Catherine the Great of Russia all reigned as monarchs ...

VI. Translation Practice

Directions: Please put the following sentences into Chinese.

1. The new ethos of change isn't about giving the "little woman" a fair shake or even about pushing disinclined regimes to adhere to hard-won international laws relating to women.
2. In the West, the information-based society that burst on the scene with the turn of the century moved a woman's style of management into the mainstream: networks rather than hierarchies and shared leadership rather than top-down management became new touchstones in the corporate world.
3. Supporters are jumping on this bandwagon like resurgent believers in the power of women.
4. He implied that it was her own fault and blurted, "A well-chosen expletive, a slap in the face or ... a well-directed knee would have been a better response than charging the offender." He was removed from the bench.
5. Others say the women of the Arab Spring are a one-off, that the draconian personal-status laws that govern family life, marriage, divorce and inheritance will keep them subservient.

VII. Writing Workshop

Directions: Please read the following poem and then write a short report based on your research about historical changes in Chinese women.

I Am a Female of the New Times

By Nicholas Gordon

I am a female of the new times,
Which means I really haven't any clue.
Men may carry over some belongings,
But women will be altogether new.

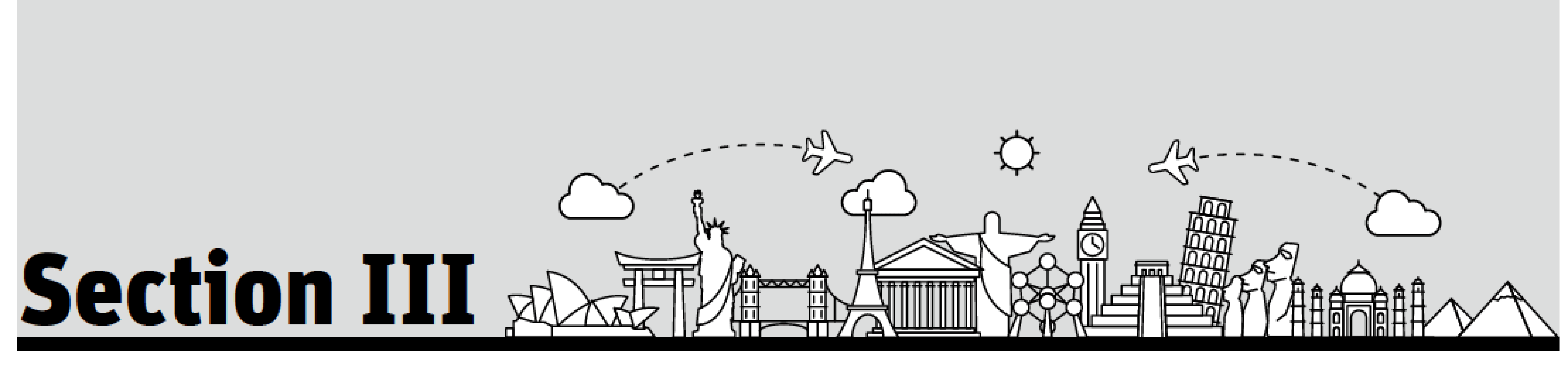
Each of us will have to be a sculptor
Carving madly every stage of life.
Our models must be pure imagination
Dancing in the winds of daily strife.

I'm sure there will be much I will regret:
Freedom offers vast fields for mistakes.
But I will spend my time among the mountains
Bathing in the shock of icy lakes.

I know that I don't know what I will be,
And find that total ignorance inviting.
May many of my sisters come with me!
The journey will be painful and exciting.

Words for Reference

career	housemaid	supermodel	fashion	tether
bodice	chiffon	straitjacket	swimsuit	facelift
status	suckle	reproductive	marriage	rendezvous
education	lore			



Section III

Text B: Peculiar Responsibilities of American Women

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **archetype** ['ɑːkitaɪp] ***n.***

something that is considered to be a perfect or typical example of a particular kind of person or thing, because of having the most important characteristics

synonym original form; antitype
word family archetypal
related phrase the mother archetype

Example 1 He came to this country 20 years ago and is the archetype of the successful Asian businessman.

Example 2 Old Mr. Duff is the archetype of the elderly British gentleman.

② **impediment** [ɪm'pedɪmənt] ***n.*** **(*pl.* impediments/impedimenta)**

a situation or event that makes it difficult or impossible for someone or something to succeed or make progress; a physical problem that makes speaking, hearing, or moving difficult

synonym hindrance
word family impedimental; impede
related phrase a speech impediment

Example 1 He was satisfied that there was no legal impediment to the marriage.

Example 2 John's slight speech impediment made it difficult for his mother to understand him.

③ **grandee** [græn'diː] ***n.***

a politician of the highest social class who has a lot of influence; a Spanish or Portuguese nobleman of the highest rank, in the past

synonym personage; nobility
word family grande; grandeur
related phrase a grandee of Spain

Example 1 He is a former defence secretary of the United States and a grandee of the Democratic Party.

Example 2 Alternatively, they could choose a political grandee capable of taking the world stage, but liable to snaffle prerogatives from national governments in the process.

④ **grovel** ['grɒvl] ***vi.*** **(grovelled/grovelled/grovelling)**

to behave too respectfully towards another person, for example because someone is frightened or because someone wants something; to crawl on the ground, for example in order to find something

synonym	cringe; kowtow
word family	groveler; grovelling
related phrase	grovel to sb.; grovel in the dirt; grovel in the dust

Example 1 I don't grovel to anybody.

Example 2 We grovelled around the room on our knees.

⑤ **capitulate** [kə'pɪtʃuleɪt] ***vi.*** **(capitulated/capitulated/capitulating)**

to stop resisting and do what someone else wants you to do

synonym	yield; succumb
word family	capitulation; capitulationist
related phrase	capitulate to

Example 1 The club eventually capitulated and now grants equal rights to women.

Example 2 They were finally forced to capitulate to the terrorists' demands.

⑥ **meekness** ['mi:knɪs] ***n.***

the feeling of patient submissive humbleness; a disposition to be patient and longsuffering

synonym	obedience
word family	meek; meekly
related phrase	do sth. with meekness

Example 1 Meekness is a virtue he appreciates in his wife.

Example 2 Perceiving the meekness and gentleness of the camel's temper, he summoned the courage to approach it.

⑦ **abject** ['æbdʒekt] ***adj.***

emphasizing that a situation or quality is extremely bad; feeling very ashamed, having no courage or respect for oneself

synonym	low-down; poor
word family	abjection; abjectly
related phrase	abject poverty/misery/failure etc.; an abject apology

Example 1 Both of them died in abject poverty.

Example 2 He is an abject liar.

⑧ **divest** [daɪ'vest, dɪ-] ***vt.*** **(divested/divested/divesting)**

to get rid of something or stop being responsible for something; to lose a particular quality or the quality is taken away from someone; to take something off someone or away from someone

synonym	deprive; shear; strip of

word family divestiture; divestment
related phrase divest sb. of sth.; divest oneself of sth.

Example 1 The company divested itself of its oil interests.

Example 2 The family was divested of its home.

⑨ **dilapidated** [dɪ'læpɪdeɪtɪd] ***adj.***

being old and in a generally bad condition

synonym destructive; obsolescent; poor
word family dilapidation; dilapidate
related phrase dilapidated buildings; an old dilapidated barn

Example 1 When they passed a dilapidated house, they saw a couple with their three children.

Example 2 A few horse-drawn carts still trundle through the dilapidated mining villages.

⑩ **medley** ['medlɪ] ***n.***

a collection of different tunes or songs that are played one after the other as a single piece of music; a mixture of different types of the same thing which produces an interesting or unusual effect; a swimming race in which the four main strokes are used one after the other

synonym mixture; mix; compound; combination
related phrase a medley of traditional songs; an exotic medley of smells; the 400-metre individual medley; the medley relay

Example 1 The singer performed a medley of popular songs and another which he composed.

Example 2 Japan won the Men's 200-metre individual medley.

⑪ **extricate** ['ekstrɪkeɪt] ***vt.*** **(extricated/extricated/extricating)**

to escape from a difficult or embarrassing situation, or to help someone escape; to remove someone from a place in which they are trapped

synonym save; ease of; rid
word family extricable; extrication
related phrase extricate yourself/sb. from sth.

Example 1 It represents a last-ditch attempt by the country to extricate itself from its economic crisis.

Example 2 Firemen had to extricate the driver from the wreckage.

⑫ **fidelity** [fɪ'delətɪ] ***n.***

loyalty to a person, organization, or set of beliefs; being loyal to one's husband, wife, or partner by not having a sexual relationship with anyone else

synonym loyalty; allegiance
related phrase the fidelity bond; the fidelity guarantee; the fidelity criteria

Example 1 People have failed to act in fidelity to their vows.

Example 2 Women expect fidelity from their men.

⑬ **scanty** ['skæntɪ] ***adj.***

There is less than someone think there should be.

synonym bare; lacking; scarce
antonym sufficient; replete; wealthy; abundant; ample
word family scant; scantily; scantiness
related phrase a scanty harvest; a model in scanty clothing

Example 1 So far, what scanty evidence we have points to two suspects.

Example 2 The scanty winter rainfall is brought by Mediterranean depressions, but the amounts are rather variable from year to year.

⑭ **exude** [ɪg'zju:d] ***vt./vi.*** **(exuded/exuded/exuding)**

to make apparent by one's mood or behavior, or have something to a great extent; (the liquid or smell) to come out of something slowly and steadily

synonym exhibit; shed; discharge; issue
word family exudate; exudation
related phrase exude odour; exude joy

Example 1 The guerrillas exude confidence. Every town, they say, is under their control.

Example 2 Nearby was a factory which exuded a pungent smell.

⑮ **usurpation** [ˌju:zɜ:'peɪʃən] ***n.***

entry to another's property without right or permission; wrongfully seizing and holding (an office or powers) by force (especially the seizure of a throne or supreme authority)

synonym seizure
word family usurper; usurp
related phrase judicial usurpation

Example 1 This is an unjustified usurpation of my authority.

Example 2 The emperor, who should be merciful, may pardon all other crimes but not the crime of attempted usurpation.

⑯ **brandish** ['brændɪʃ] ***vt.*** **(brandished/brandished/brandishing)**

to wave something around in a dangerous or threatening way, especially a weapon

synonym swing; wave; show off
word family brandish (*n.*); brandisher
related phrase brandish one's wisdom

Example 1 She rushed into the office brandishing a letter.

Example 2 He appeared in the lounge brandishing a knife.

⑰ **entrench** [ɪn'trentʃ] ***vt./vi.*** **(entrenched/entrenched/entrenching)**

to firmly establish as power, a custom, or an idea etc., so that it would be difficult to change

synonym radicate
word family entrenchment
related phrase entrench on/upon sth.; entrench oneself in

Example 1 Our soldiers were strongly entrenched on the river bank.

Example 2 These dictators have entrenched themselves politically and are difficult to move.

⑱ **grueling** ['grʊəlɪŋ] ***adj.***

characterized by toilsome effort to the point of exhaustion, especially physical effort

synonym torturous; strict
antonym relaxed; comfortable
word family grueling (*n.*); gruel
related phrase a grueling test; a grueling climb

Example 1 The recruits were put through a week of grueling endurance tests.

Example 2 The presentation of future plans had been a grueling work.

⑲ **malice** ['mælɪs] ***n.***

behaviour that is intended to harm people or their reputations, or cause them embarrassment and upset

synonym spite; malevolence
antonym kindness; goodwill
word family malicious; maliciously
related phrase with malice; sheer/pure malice

Example 1 There was a strong current of malice in many of his portraits.

Example 2 His eyes gleamed with malice.

⑳ **stalwart** ['stɔːlwət] ***adj.***

being loyal, steady, and completely reliable; being strong

synonym committed; firm
antonym infirm
word family stalwart (*n.*); stalwartly
related phrase a stalwart supporter/ally etc.

Example 1 The stalwart volunteers marched in this morning ready to go to work.

Example 2 I knew I was never in any danger with my stalwart bodyguard around me.

㉑ **jubilate** ['dʒuːbɪleɪt] ***vi.*** **(jubilated/jubilated/jubilating)**

to have or express great joy; to rejoice

synonym rejoice; cheer; acclaim

word family jubilation; jubilance; jubilancy; jubilant; jubilantly
related phrase jubilate in/at/upon/on/over sth.

Example 1 We jubilate over birth and dance at weddings.

Example 2 We jubilated in our good fortune.

㉒ clime [klaɪm] *n.*

a place that has a particular kind of climate

synonym climate; weather; district; place
word family climate; climatology; climatic; climatically
related phrase winter clime

Example 1 He left Seattle for the sunnier climes of Mexico.

Example 2 Japan today doesn't enjoy such a benevolent economic clime.

㉓ hew [hjuː] *vt./vi.* (hewed/hewn/hewing)

to cut something with a cutting tool

synonym cut
word family hewer
related phrase hew out/from/off ; hew stones; hew down a branch; hew to the rules/regulations/principles

Example 1 The hunters hewed a path through the jungle.

Example 2 He knew better than to attempt to hew rocks with razor.

㉔ take the helm

to start guiding a ship or boat; to start being in charge of something such as a business or organization

synonym take charge; take over; be at the helm; direct; steer; take the tiller
related phrase take the helm of sth.

Example 1 After years of training, the executive was to take the helm of the company.

Example 2 Wright took the helm at the food retailer in December, 2001.

㉕ entrench on

to gradually take more of someone's time, possessions, rights, etc. than someone should; to gradually cover more and more land

synonym entrench upon; encroach on; infringe on; trample
related phrase entrench on the domain; entrench on someone's right; entrench on the truth

Example 1 Skype isn't about to let others entrench on its hard-won territory without a fight.

Example 2 She tried to prevent her work from entrenching too far on her private life.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

absolve	aforementioned	aperture	artisan	autistic
ballerina	barmaid	Baroque	battlement	bedrock
blotch	cardiac	caricature	chalice	chrysanthemum
clergyman	closet	coagulate	coefficient	coupe
courtroom	crewman	denture	distrust	downstream
downgrade	elegize	encamp	enclave	encore
evangelical	excrement	extravaganza	finesse	flamingo
flowerbed	formative	garner	gasworks	gaunt
gusto	groundsman	habitation	helium	hydroxide
illustrious	interpolate	ironwork	largesse	leech
leopard	ley	lofty	maestro	majestic
manslaughter	manufactory	marksman	masochistic	meek
menial	mink	misrepresent	modulate	mosaic
outflow	outline	outnumber	outrun	overjoy
parchment	parity	paternalistic	paunch	peasantry
pigment	pipework	ponce	populace	posse
preconceive	preposterous	prevaricate	prise	prizewinner
proletarian	quotient	rebirth	recline	refract
regroup	retort	Samoa	sandal	shareholding
syntax	temperance	templar	trooper	underprivileged
venereal	wherein			

Part 2 Text

Peculiar Responsibilities of American Women

There are some reasons, why American women should feel an gusto in the support of the democratic institutions of their Country, which it is important that they should consider. The great maxim, which is the basis of all our civil and political institutions, is that "all men are created equal", and that they are equally entitled to "life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness".

But it can readily be seen, that this is only another mode of expressing the bedrock which the Great Ruler of the Universe has established, as the law of His eternal government. "Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself;" and "Whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them," are the Scripture[1] forms, by which the Supreme Lawgiver requires that each individual of our race shall regard the happiness of others, as of the same value as his own; and which forbid any institution, in private or civil life, which garners advantages to one class, by sacrificing the interests of another.

The principles of democracy, then, have an identical archetype with the principles of Christianity.

But, in order that each individual may pursue and secure the highest degree of happiness within his reach, without the impediment of considering the selfish interests of others, a system

of laws must be established, which sustain certain relations and dependencies in social and civil life. What these relations and their attending obligations shall be, are to be determined, not with reference to the wishes and interests of a few, but solely with reference to the general good of all; so that each individual shall have his own interest, as well as the public benefit, secured by them.

For this purpose, it is needful that certain relations be sustained, which involve the duties of subordination. There must be the magistrate and the subject, one of whom is the superior, and the other the inferior. There must be the relations of grandee and peasantry, husband and wife, parent and child, teacher and pupil, employer and employed, each involving the relative duties of subordination. The superior, in certain particulars, is to take the helm, and the inferior is to grovel. Society could never go forward, harmoniously, like clockwork nor could any craft or profession be successfully pursued, unless these superior and subordinate relations be instituted and sustained.

But who shall take the higher, and who the subordinate, stations in social and civil life? This matter, in the case of parents and children, is decided by the Creator. He has given children to the control of parents, as their superiors, and to them they remain subservient, to a certain age, or so long as they are members of their household. And parents can delegate such a portion of their authority to teachers and employers, as the interests of their children require.

In most other cases, in a truly democratic state, each individual is allowed to choose for himself, who shall take the position of his superior. No woman is forced to capitulate to any husband but the one she chooses for herself; nor is she obliged to take a husband, if she prefers to remain single. So every domestic, and every artisan or laborer, after passing from parental control, can choose the employer to whom he is to accord meekness, or, if he prefers to relinquish certain advantages, he can remain without taking a subordinate place to any employer.

Each subject, also, has equal power with every other, to decide who shall be his superior as a ruler. The weakest, the most underprivileged, the most illiterate, the most abject has the same opportunity to determine this question, as the richest, the most learned, and the most exalted.

And the various privileges that wealth secures, are equally open to all classes. Every man may aim at riches, unimpeded by any law or institution which secures peculiar privileges to a favored class, at the expense of another. Every law, and every institution, is tested by examining whether it secures equal advantages to all; and, if the populace become convinced that any regulation sacrifices the good of the majority to the interests of the smaller number, they have power to abolish it.

The institutions of monarchical and aristocratic nations are based on precisely opposite principles. They secure, to certain small and favored classes, advantages, which can be maintained, only by sacrificing the interests of the great mass of the people. Thus, the throne and aristocracy of England are supported by laws and customs, which burden the proletarians with taxes, so enormous, as to divest them of all the luxuries, and of most of the comforts, of life. Dilapidated dwellings, scanty food, unhealthy employments, excessive labor, and entire destitution of the means and time for education, are appointed for the lower classes, that a few may live in palaces, and riot in every indulgence.

The tendencies of democratic institutions, in reference to the rights and interests of the female sex, have been fully developed in the United States; and it is in this aspect, that the subject is one of peculiar interest to American women. In this Country, it is established, both by opinion and by practice, that woman has an equal interest in all social and civil concerns; and that no domestic,

civil, or political, institution, is right, which sacrifices her interest to promote that of the other sex. But in order to secure her the more firmly in all these privileges, it is decided, that, in the domestic relation, she take a subordinate station, and that, in civil and political concerns, her interests be intrusted to the other sex, without her taking any part in voting, or in making and administering laws. The result of this order of things has been fairly tested, and is thus caricatured by M. De Tocqueville, a writer, who, for intelligence, fidelity, and ability, ranks second to none.

There are people in Europe, who, confounding together the different characteristics of the sexes, would make of man and woman, beings not only equal, but alike. They would give to both the same functions, impose on both the same duties, and grant to both the same rights. They would mix them in all things,—their business, their occupations, their pleasures. It may readily be preconceived, that, by thus attempting to make one sex equal to the other, both are undervalued and, from so preposterous a medley of the works of Nature, nothing could ever result, but weak men and disorderly women.

It is not thus that the Americans understand the species of democratic equality, which may be established between the sexes. They admit, that, as Nature has appointed such wide differences between the physical and moral constitutions of man and woman, her manifest design was, to give a distinct employment to their various faculties; and they hold, that improvement does not consist in making beings so dissimilar do pretty nearly the same things, but in getting each of them to fulfil their respective tasks, in the best possible manner. The Americans have applied to the sexes the great principle of political economy, which governs the manufactories of our age, by carefully dividing the duties of man from those of woman, in order that the great work of society may be the better carried on.

In no country has such constant care been taken, as in America, to trace two clearly distinct lines of action for the two sexes, and to make them keep pace one with the other, but in two pathways which are always different. American women never manage the outward concerns of the family, or conduct a business, or take a part in political life; nor are they, on the other hand, ever compelled to perform the rough labor of the fields, or to make any of those laborious exertions, which demand the exertion of physical strength. No families are so poor, as to form an exception to this rule.

If, on the one hand, an American woman cannot extricate herself from the quiet circle of domestic employments, on the other hand, she is never forced to go beyond it. Hence it is, that the women of America, who often exude a masculine finesse of understanding, and a manly energy, generally preserve great delicacy of personal appearance, and always retain the manners of women, although they sometimes show that they have the hearts and minds of men.

Nor have the Americans ever supposed, that one consequence of democratic principles, is, the subversion of marital power, or the confusion of the natural authorities in families. They hold, that every association must have a head, in order to accomplish its object; and that the natural head of the conjugal association is man. They do not, therefore, deny him the right of directing his partner; and they maintain, that, in the smaller association of husband and wife, as well as in the great social community, the object of democracy is, to regulate and legalize the powers which are necessary, not to subvert all power.

"This opinion is not peculiar to one sex, and contested by the other. I never observed, that the

women of America considered conjugal authority as a fortunate usurpation of their rights, nor that they thought themselves degraded by submitting to it. It appears to me, on the contrary, that they attach a sort of pride to the voluntary surrender of their own will, and brandish bending themselves to the yoke, not to shake it off. Such, at least, is the feeling expressed by the most virtuous of their sex; the others are silent; and in the United States it is not the practice for a guilty wife to clamor for the rights of woman, while she is entrenching on her holiest duties."

"Although the travellers, who have visited North America, differ on a great number of points, they agree in remarking, that morals are far more grueling, there, than elsewhere. It is evident that, on this point, the Americans are very superior to their progenitors, the English." "In England, as in all other Countries of Europe, public malice is constantly attacking the frailties of women. Philosophers and statesmen are heard to deplore, that morals are not sufficiently strict; and the literary productions of the Country constantly lead one to suppose so. In America, all books, novels not excepted, suppose women to be chaste; and no one thinks of relating affairs of gallantry."

"It has often been remarked, that, in Europe, a certain degree of contempt lurks, even in the flattery which men lavish upon women. Although a European frequently affects to be the slave of woman, it may be seen, that he never sincerely thinks her his equal. In the United States, men seldom compliment women, but they daily show how much they esteem them. They constantly display an entire confidence in the understanding of a wife, and a profound respect for her freedom."

They have decided that her mind is just as fitted as that of a man to discover the plain truth, and her heart as stalwart to embrace it, and they have never sought to place her virtue, any more than his, under the shelter of prejudice, ignorance, and fear.

...

It appears, then, that it is in America, alone, that women are raised to a parity with the other sex; and that, both in theory and practice, their interests are regarded as of equal value. They are made subordinate in station, only where a regard to their best interests demands it, while, as if in compensation for this, by custom and courtesy, they are always treated as superiors. Universally, in this Country, through every class of society, precedence is given to woman, in all the comforts, conveniences, and courtesies, of life.

In civil and political affairs, American women take no interest or concern, except so far as they sympathize with their family and personal friends; but in all cases, in which they do feel a concern, their opinions and feelings have a consideration, equal, or even superior, to that of the other sex.

In matters pertaining to the education of their children, in the selection and support of a clergyman, in all benevolent enterprises, and in all questions relating to morals or manners, they have a superior influence. In such concerns, it would be impossible to carry a point, contrary to their judgment and feelings; while an enterprise, sustained by them, will seldom fail of success.

If those who are bewailing themselves over the fancied wrongs and injuries of women in this Nation, could only see things as they are, they would know, that, whatever remnants of a barbarous or aristocratic age may remain in our civil institutions, in reference to the interests of women, it is only because they are ignorant of them, or do not use their influence to have them rectified; for it is very certain that there is nothing reasonable, which American women would unite in asking, that would not readily be bestowed.

The aforementioned preceding remarks, then, illustrate the position, that the democratic institutions of this Country are in reality no other than the principles of Christianity carried into operation, and that they tend to place woman in her true position in society, as having equal rights with the other sex; and that, in fact, they have secured to American women a lofty and fortunate position, which, as yet, has been attained by the women of no other nation.

It thus appears, that the sublime and elevating anticipations which have filled the mind and heart of the religious world, have become so far developed, that philosophers and statesmen are perceiving the signs, and are predicting the approach, of the same majestic consummation. There is a day advancing, "by seers predicted, and by poets sung", when the curse of selfishness shall be removed; when "scenes surpassing fable, and yet true", shall be realized; when all nations shall jubilate and be made blessed, under those benevolent influences, which the Messiah came to establish on earth.

And this is the Country, which the Disposer of events designs shall go forth as the cynosure of nations, to guide them to the light and blessedness of that day. To us is committed the grand, the responsible privilege, of exhibiting to the world, the beneficent influences of Christianity, when carried into every social, civil, and political institution; and, though we have, as yet, made such imperfect advances, already the light is streaming into the dark prison-house of despotic lands, while startled kings and sages, philosophers and statesmen, are watching us with that interest, which a career so illustrious, and so involving their own destiny, is calculated to excite. They are studying our institutions, scrutinizing our experience, and watching for our mistakes, that they may learn whether "a social revolution, so irresistible, be advantageous or prejudicial to mankind".

There are persons, who regard these interesting truths merely as food for national vanity; but every reflecting and Christian mind, must consider it as an occasion for solemn and anxious reflection. Are we, then, a spectacle to the world? Has the Eternal Lawgiver appointed us to work out a problem, involving the destiny of the whole earth? Are such momentous interests to be advanced or retarded, just in proportion as we are faithful to our high trust? "What manner of persons, then, ought we to be", in attempting to sustain so solemn, so glorious a responsibility?

But the part to be enacted by American women, in this great moral enterprise, is the point to which special attention should here be directed.

The success of democratic institutions, as is conceded by all, depends upon the intellectual and moral character of the mass of the people. If they are intelligent and virtuous, democracy is a blessing; but if they are ignorant and wicked, it is only a curse, and as much more dreadful than any other form of civil government, as a thousand tyrants are more to be dreaded than one. It is equally conceded, that the formation of the moral and intellectual character of the young is committed mainly to the female hand. Let the women of a country be made virtuous and intelligent, and the men will certainly be the same. The proper education of a man decides the welfare of an individual; but educate a woman, and the interests of a whole family are secured.

If this be so, as none will deny, then to American women, more than to any others on earth, is committed the exalted privilege of extending over the world those blessed influences, which are to reshape degraded man, and "clothe all climes with beauty".

No American woman, then, has any occasion for feeling that hers is an menial or insignificant lot. The value of what an individual accomplishes, is to be estimated by the importance of the

enterprise achieved, and not by the particular position of the laborer. The drops of heaven which freshen the earth, are each of equal value, whether they fall in the lowland meadow, or the princely flowerbed. The builders of a temple are of equal importance, whether they labor on the foundations, or toil upon the dome.

Thus, also, with those labors which are to be made effectual in the rebirth of the Earth. And it is by forming a habit of regarding the apparently insignificant efforts of each isolated laborer, in a comprehensive manner, as indispensable portions of a grand result, that the minds of all, however humble their sphere of service, can be invigorated and cheered. The woman, who is rearing a family of children; the woman, who labors in the schoolroom; the woman, who, in her retired chamber, earns, with her needle, the mite, which contributes to the intellectual and moral elevation of her Country; even the humble domestic, whose example and influence may be formative and forming young minds, while her faithful services sustain a prosperous domestic state—each and all may be animated by the consciousness, that they are agents in accomplishing the greatest work that ever was committed to human responsibility. It is the building of a glorious temple, whose base shall be coextensive with the bounds of the earth, whose summit shall pierce the skies, whose splendor shall beam on all lands; and those who hew the lowliest stone, as much as those who carve the highest capital, will be equally honored, when its top-stone shall be laid, with new rejoicings of the morning stars, and shoutings of the sons of God.

(Adapted from *A Treatise on Domestic Economy*)

Note

Scripture

Scriptures (meaning "a writing") are texts in which religious traditions consider to be central to their religious practice or set of beliefs. Religious texts may be used to provide meaning and purpose, evoke a deeper connection with the divine, convey religious truths, promote religious experience, foster communal identity, and guide individual and communal religious practice. Religious texts often communicate the practices or values of a religious traditions and can be looked to as a set of guiding principles which dictate physical, mental, spiritual, or historical elements considered important to a specific religion. The terms "sacred" text and "religious" text are not necessarily interchangeable in that some religious texts are believed to be sacred because of their nature as divinely or supernaturally revealed or inspired, whereas some religious texts are simply narratives pertaining to the general themes, practices, or important figures of the specific religion, and not necessarily considered sacred.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Sentence Practice

Directions: Please rewrite the sentences with the proper forms of the given words.

fidelity	scanty	grovel	manufacture	represent
habitable	grandee	malicious	exoneration	meek

1. Mr. Claus is not the only Republican dignitary to have shifted nimbly rightward.
2. There is no law against such virtues as docility and temperance.
3. Hydrocarbons, helium, hydrogen, and volatiles in the solar system are important for human exploration and residence because they will provide essential high-energy, high-density fuels and feedstock for off-world manufactured goods and materials for construction.
4. If done right, the studies could catch six out of every seven drugs that cause harm to the cardiac muscle, and absolve some drugs completely.
5. In this area, mortality from venereal disease is common, access to health care is poor, and medical records of deaths are scarce or non-existent.
6. Down in the mystic, hidden fields bloomed chrysanthemums of love and loyalty and perfect faith.
7. We have a plant in Jiangshan currently, which specializes in producing hydroxide, and we also cooperate with many college technologists to manage new projects.
8. Manslaughter is defined in common law as an unlawful killing of another without malevolence.
9. I know that we distrust one another all the while, and instinctively conceal or distort our actual thoughts and emotions.
10. The leopard crouches at his feet when the gendarme shouts at it.

III. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text B the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. remodel
2. eminent
3. acquire
4. exponent
5. paragon
6. derelict
7. torturous
8. padre
9. artifice
10. renewal
11. steadfast
12. sublime
13. rejoice
14. parterre
15. mixture

Antonyms

1. cowardice
2. embroil
3. resist
4. copious
5. betrayal
6. kindness

7. ineffective   8. disparate
9. inferior   10. emerge

IV. Phrase Practice

Directions: Please translate the following verb+noun collocations into Chinese.

1. garner the prize
2. garner the grain
3. capitulate to pressure from outside
4. capitulate to the foe
5. divest oneself of responsibility
6. divest the president of all his power
7. exude perspiration
8. exude enthusiasm
9. rectify mistakes
10. rectify the market economic order
11. delegate authority by groups
12. delegate the task to his subordinate
13. entrench the rule of law
14. entrench stability in macroeconomic policy
15. entrench on the domain of another

V. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 14 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. Of course, faulty syntax by itself has never been a(n) _____ to successful advertising.
A) battlement   B) pigment   C) excrement   D) impediment

2. Typically, Mr. Maillot shows little interest in the ballerina's steps of any _____ or variety.
A) posse   B) finesse   C) impasse   D) largesse

3. Don't try to _____ the others if you're wearing sandals.
A) outrun   B) outlive   C) outnumber   D) outflow

4. With the help of the templar, Della was able to _____ herself and her two sons from her tumultuous and sometimes violent home life.
A) intoxicate   B) vindicate   C) extricate   D) prevaricate

5. Magazines and other periodicals will be delivered to your Baroque house like _____, whether you read them or not.
A) pipework   B) clockwork   C) ironwork   D) gasworks

6. During the trial in the courtroom, his accuser admitted that she had not been abused and that she had fabricated the accusation out of _____.
A) ponce   B) prance   C) malice   D) chalice

7. One thing the London extravaganza brought home is the awkward fact that there are not many sanctions a bishop can impose on an errant _____ unless the incumbent literally goes mad.
   A) marksman B) groundsman C) crewman D) clergyman
8. The _____ closet is also made of marble, set with elaborate mosaics of glass, stone, and mother-of-pearl.
   A) autistic B) majestic C) masochistic D) paternalistic
9. Even so, he's not the _____of the difficult, arrogant and tyrannical maestro.
   A) caricature B) aperture C) denture D) rapture
10. Trooper became the evangelical _____ of improving life for the have-nots.
    A) coefficient B) quotient C) proponent D) parchment
11. The 21-year-old from Samoa broke his own world record in winning the 200-meter individual _____.
    A) ley B) sley C) galley D) medley
12. Instead of discouraging corporate shareholding, the government plans to _____ it.
    A) enclave B) entrench C) encamp D) encore
13. The medical researcher was too committed to his work to pause and _____ even upon hearing that he had become the Nobel prizewinner.
    A) coagulate B) modulate C) interpolate D) jubilate
14. The body of the coupe was _____ to allow for more cargo space.
    A) reshaped B) reclined C) refracted D) retorted

VI. Proofreading

Directions: Please identify and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

1. Mr Jobs' thin frame and gaunt appearance sparked questions about his health and for how long would he continue to be in the helm of Apple.
2. Blocks of ice downstream ram them down, for a whole two days he was able to extricate them within the ice mound.
3. The processes pertain with each business unit are regrouped in the diagram into a corresponding swim-lane.
4. Soon the shoes will have new owners: privileged children in the United States and 20 other countries, thanks to Woodburn's S.O.S (Share Our Soles) charity.
5. The barmaid helped to divest the young lady off her mink coat.

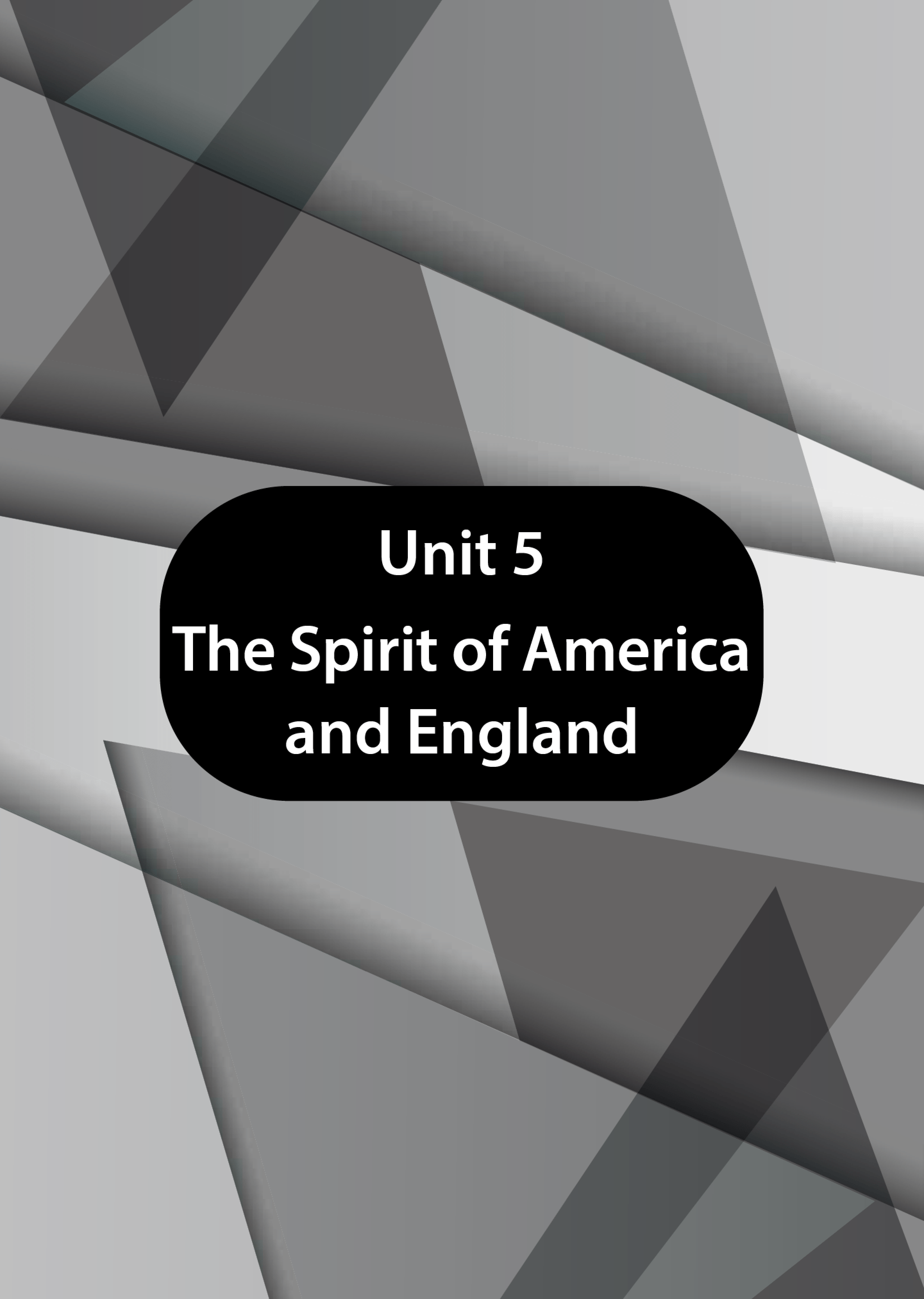
VII. Paraphrase

Directions: Please restate the following sentences using other words without altering the original meaning.

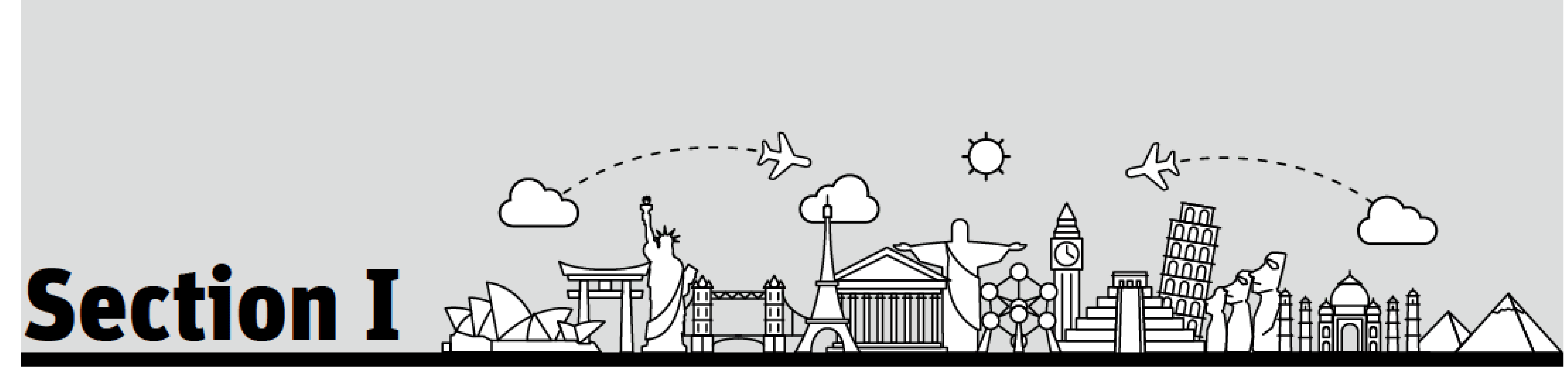
1. Society could never go forward, harmoniously, like clockwork nor could any craft or profession be successfully pursued, unless these superior and subordinate relations be instituted and sustained.
2. Every man may aim at riches, unimpeded by any law or institution which secures peculiar privileges to a favored class, at the expense of another.
3. If, on the one hand, an American woman cannot extricate herself from the quiet circle of

domestic employments, on the other hand, she is never forced to go beyond it.

4. They are made subordinate in station, only where a regard to their best interests demands it, while, as if in compensation for this, by custom and courtesy, they are always treated as superiors.
5. But the part to be enacted by American women, in this great moral enterprise, is the point to which special attention should here be directed.
6. No American woman, then, has any occasion for feeling that hers is an menial or insignificant lot.



Unit 5
The Spirit of America and England



Focus on Critical Thinking and Critical Reading (5)

What Is Critical Reading?

"Reading furnishes the mind only with the materials of knowledge; it is thinking that makes what we read ours." (John Locke, English philosopher, 1632-1704)

Sometimes we read just for pleasure or entertainment; sometimes we read just to obtain information, taking it for granted that the information is reliable. That's the so-called general reading. For critical reading, it's quite different.

For General Reading

1) Get a basic grasp of the text.
2) Understand: What a text SAYS? What is the text saying?
3) What information/knowledge/facts can I get out of it with the text?
4) Restatement, summary.

For Critical Reading

1) Form judgments.
2) Analyze/interpret/evaluate what a text DOES & MEANS.
3) How does the text work?
4) What are the choices made against the text?
5) Description, interpretation, evaluation.

Critical Reading Is an Active Reading

Critical reading is an active way of reading. It is a deeper and more complex engagement with a text. In the most basic sense of the word, reading is an active experience. When you read a book, you move your eyes over the words on the page. When you put the words together and make sense out of them, you've moved the simple action of reading into the more internal action of interpretation. When you read, you make up your own world through your imaginative process.

Active reading, then, is the ability to be fully engaged with content. You're affected by the material. You spend time making connections through images, dialogue, and descriptions. You're on a hunt to determine the author's intentions. You're also active in the desire to want to understand the material as well as you can.

Critical Reading Is an Analytical Reading

Critical reading is a process of analyzing, interpreting and evaluating the larger meanings of a text and how those meanings are created by the text. At the root of every article is a central

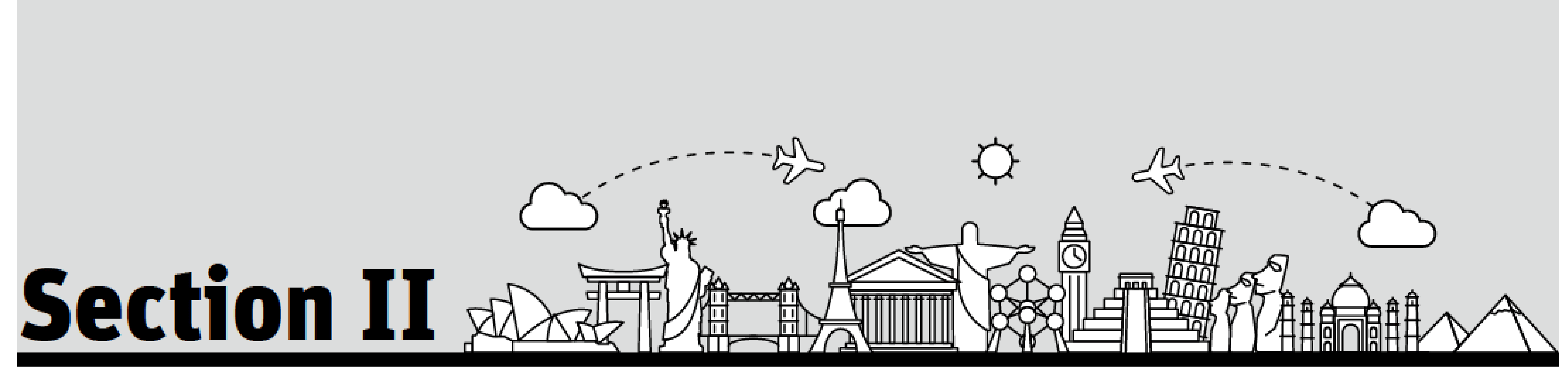
idea based on an outline of intentions. We have to dig up the basic structure of the article and the elements that make up the story (and/or the themes). The life of the story is based on your interpretation. You may wonder why we need to dig up the structure at all. Isn't the article's structure inherent in its outcome? Not always. You may find new interpretations if you look more closely at the core of the article. What you think is true in the outcome may change if you look closer at certain elements that make up the article.

Analyzing a text involves the ability to ask questions. Analysis does not have to lead to conclusions; it only leads you toward a deeper examination. When it does lead to answers, however, it makes for a more satisfying reading experience.

Critical Reading Is an Objective Reading

To read objectively means you have to shut down certain preconceptions or biases that you have. Objective reading requires you to go into the material with an open mind, which may be a very difficult task depending on how far the article varies from your own subjective thinking. When you read objectively, you should be asking yourself one basic question from the beginning: What do I want to learn from this article? Then, as you continue reading, you should be able to formulate more questions for yourself: What does this mean? Do I really understand this? What am I supposed to be getting from this? ... And finally, perhaps the two most important questions you can ask yourself are these: Has the author proven his or her point? What did I get out of this book?

Although your reading experience needs to be as objective as you can possibly make it in order to get the most out of the article, your reaction will be subjective. Sure, you might be able to see the author's points from an objective standpoint, but ultimately what you take away from the article will have a great deal to do with your own feelings and opinions.



Section II

Text A: The Spirit of America

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **inept** [ɪ'nept] ***adj.***

criticizing someone because they do something with a complete lack of skill

synonym	clumsy; awkward
antonym	capable; competent; able
word family	ineptitude; ineptness; ineptly
related phrase	inept leadership; inept behaviors; be politically/socially inept

Example 1 He was inept and lacked the intelligence to govern.

Example 2 Blake was intellectually able but politically inept.

② **punditry** ['pʌndɪtrɪ] ***n.***

the expressing of expert opinions

synonym	remark
word family	pundit
related phrase	investment punditry

Example 1 He is now focused on punditry and his property business.

Example 2 Data analysis has since spread everywhere from financial trading to political punditry.

③ **adept** ['ædept, ə'dept] ***adj.***

being good at something that needs care and skill

synonym	good; skillful; experienced; skilled
antonym	inexpert; unskillful; unskilled; prentice
word family	adept (*n.*); adeptness; adeptly
related phrase	be adept at; be adept in; an adept juggler

Example 1 I'm afraid she's also an adept liar.

Example 2 He's usually very adept at keeping his private life out of the media.

④ **frivolity** [frɪ'vɒlɪtɪ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* frivolities)**

behaviour or activities that are not serious or sensible, especially when someone should be serious or sensible; something that is silly and unimportant

synonym levity; triviality
word family frivolousness; frivolously
related phrase the tactical frivolity

Example 1 There is a serious message at the core of all this frivolity.

Example 2 Try not to be distracted by the frivolities of the world.

⑤ **erroneous** [ɪ'rəʊnɪəs] ***adj.***

(beliefs, opinions, or methods etc.) being wrong and based on facts that are not correct

synonym mistaken; false; wrong; improper; incorrect; inaccurate
antonym right; proper; correct; accurate
word family erroneousness; erroneously
related phrase erroneous data; erroneous cognition

Example 1 His economic predictions are based on some erroneous assumptions.

Example 2 No erroneous ideas should be allowed to spread unchecked.

⑥ **exposit** [ɪk'spɒzɪt] ***vt.*** **(exposited/exposited/expositing)**

to state; to add details, as to an account or idea; to clarify the meaning and discourse in a learned way, usually in writing

synonym illustrate; set forth; expound; elaborate
word family exposition; expositor; expository; expositive
related phrase exposit the mechanism

Example 1 This text exposited mainly the relevant contents of "transition of the thought" in rural subject novels of 17 years.

Example 2 This paper systematically exposits various patterns of the hot water supply systems in high-rise buildings.

⑦ **insolent** ['ɪnsələnt] ***adj.***

being rude to someone that ought to be respectful to

synonym haughty; robust; gross; rough
antonym civilized; polite; gracious; distingue
word family insolence; insolently
related phrase an insolent tone of voice; her insolent stare

Example 1 His insolent manner really got my blood up.

Example 2 The bandit bared his teeth in an insolent smile.

⑧ **affront** [ə'frʌnt] ***vt.*** **(affronted/affronted/affronting)**

to feel insulted and hurt because of something

synonym offend; insult
word family affront (*n.*); affrontedness; affronted; affrontedly
related phrase affront the female

Example 1 He stepped back, affronted by the question.

Example 2 Her speech affronted all of us.

⑨ **surmount** [sə'maʊnt] ***vt.*** **(surmounted/surmounted/surmounting)**

to succeed in dealing with a problem or difficulty

synonym	overcome; defeat; negotiate
antonym	compromise
word family	surmountable
related phrase	surmount oneself; surmount the obstacle

Example 1 He has had to surmount immense physical disabilities.

Example 2 I realized I had to surmount the language barrier.

⑩ **amiable** ['eɪmɪəbəl] ***adj.***

being friendly and pleasant to be with

synonym	pleasant; friendly
antonym	hostile; unfriendly
word family	amiably; amiability; amiableness
related phrase	amiable composition

Example 1 She had been surprised at how amiable and polite he had been.

Example 2 Edward is very amiable, and I love him tenderly.

⑪ **eerie** ['ɪərɪ] ***adj.***

seeming strange and frightening, and making someone feel nervous

synonym	eccentric; terrible; horrible; awesome; fearful; dire
word family	eeriness; eerily
related phrase	an eerie calm

Example 1 I walked down the eerie dark path.

Example 2 It's eerie to walk through a dark wood at night.

⑫ **grouse** [graʊs] ***vi.*** **(groused/groused/grousing)**

to be annoyed, not satisfied, or unhappy about something or someone

synonym	complain
word family	grouser
related phrase	grouse about sth.

Example 1 When they groused about the parking regulations, they did it with good humour.

Example 2 "How come we never know what's going on?" he groused.

⑬ **absolve** [əb'zɒlv] ***vt.*** **(absolved/absolved/absolving)**

to formally state that someone is not guilty or is not to blame

synonym	acquit; discharge; forgive

word family absolvent; absolution
related phrase absolve sb. from/of sth.; absolve oneself from sorrow

Example 1 A police investigation yesterday absolved the police of all blame in the incident.

Example 2 He was absolved from his promise.

14 frivolous ['frɪvələs] *adj.*

behaving in a silly or light-hearted way, rather than being serious and sensible; disapproving of something because of being not useful and wasting time or money

synonym trivial; silly; inane; flippant
antonym serious
word family frivolousness; frivolously
related phrase frivolous complaints; frivolous claims

Example 1 I just decided I was a bit too frivolous to be a doctor.

Example 2 The group says it wants politicians to stop wasting public money on what it believes are frivolous projects.

15 nebulously ['nebjʊləslɪ] *adv.*

to a faint degree or weakly perceived

synonym faintly; hazily; indistinctly
word family nebular; nebula; nebulous
related phrase a nebulously mocking smile

Example 1 In my dream I was nebulously aware that he came back.

Example 2 John smiled nebulously and shook his head.

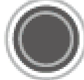
16 devout [dɪ'vaʊt] *adj.*

having deep religious beliefs; supporting something enthusiastically or opposing something strongly

synonym religious; sincere
antonym indevout; impious
word family devoutness; devoutly
related phrase a devout Catholic; a devout believer

Example 1 It is my devout hope that we can work together in peace.

Example 2 Devout Marxists believed fascism was the “last stand of the bourgeoisie”.



treacherous ['tretʃərəs] *adj.*

being likely to betray someone and cannot be trusted; being very dangerous and unpredictable

synonym faithless; dangerous
antonym reliable; devout; safe
word family treachery; treacherously
related phrase a treacherous plot to overthrow the leader; treacherous mountain roads

Example 1 He publicly left the party and denounced its treacherous leaders.

Example 2 The current of the river is fast flowing and treacherous.

⑱ **dissension** [dɪ'senʃən] ***n.***

disagreement and argument

synonym	feud; argument; dispute; discord
antonym	agreement; accordance
word family	dissentious
related phrase	the contract dissension

Example 1 The tax cut issue has caused dissension among administration officials.

Example 2 The Labour Party was torn by internal dissensions.

⑲ **engross** [ɪn'grəʊs] ***vt.*** **(engrossed/engrossed/engrossing)**

to occupy one's attention completely; to absorb

synonym	interest; absorb; attract; draw; engage
word family	engrossed; engrossing; engrossment
related phrase	engross (oneself/sb.) in sth.; be engrossed in sth.; engross the market

Example 1 Who's that guy Ally's been engrossed in conversation with all night?

Example 2 Our discussion engrossed his attention.

⑳ **gibe** [dʒaɪb] ***vt./vi.*** **(gibed/gibed/gibing)**

to laugh at with contempt and derision

synonym	jeer at; laugh at
word family	gibe (*n.*)
related phrase	gibe at sb.

Example 1 It's impolite to gibe at a foreign student's English.

Example 2 "Please don't gibe me," Lydia said.

㉑ **diatribe** ['daɪətraɪb] ***n.***

an angry speech or article which is extremely critical of someone's ideas or activities

synonym	scandal; irony
related phrase	a diatribe against sth.

Example 1 He launched a bitter diatribe against the younger generation.

Example 2 On Monday, when Gaddafi went on television with his Green Book in hand, his diatribe was incoherent but familiar.

㉒ **relapse** [rɪ'læps] ***n.***

a failure to maintain a higher state

synonym	recrudescency; palindromia
word family	relapse (*v.*); relapsed; relapsing
related phrase	in relapse; relapse free

Example 1 The treatment is usually given to women with a high risk of relapse after surgery.

Example 2 A wide range of emotionally stressful events may trigger a relapse.

㉓ sordid ['sɔːdɪd] *adj.*

being immoral or dishonest; being dirty, unpleasant, or depressing

synonym	squalid; vulgar
word family	sordidness; sordidly
related phrase	sordid business/affair/story, etc.; a sordid cottage

Example 1 He sat with his head buried in his hands as his sordid past was revealed.

Example 2 Once the family lived in a sordid small room.

㉔ banal [bə'nɑːl, -'næl] *adj.*

being so ordinary that something is not at all effective or interesting

synonym	stale; insipid; trite; bromidic
antonym	newfangle; novel; up-to-date
word family	banality; banally
related phrase	conversations about the most banal subjects; banal remarks

Example 1 Chris' banal advice was no help to us in solving our problem.

Example 2 When you explain poetry, it becomes banal.

㉕ cant [kænt] *n.*

insincere talk about moral or religious principles by someone who does not really believe what he/she is saying; inclination from a vertical or horizontal plane; slope; slant

synonym	decline
word family	cant (*v.*); canted
related phrase	hypocritical cant

Example 1 There has been a great deal of politician's cant.

Example 2 The ship took on a dangerous cant to port.

㉖ staid [steɪd] *adj.*

being serious, dull, and rather old-fashioned

synonym	composed; standing; settled; calm
word family	staidness; staidly
related phrase	staid people; a staid old bachelor; a staid seaside resort

Example 1 I always thought of him as a rather staid old gentleman.

Example 2 To some degree, the Chinese perception of British brands can be old-fashioned or staid.

㉗ have the endurance

to experience something and do not avoid something or give up, usually because someone cannot; (something) to continue to exist without any loss in quality or importance

synonym endure; put up with
related phrase have the endurance for sth.

Example 1 So then I am willing to remain and have the endurance whatever may fall to my share.

Example 2 Somehow the language has the endurance and continues to survive.

㉘ teem with

to be very full of people or animals, all moving about

synonym be full of
related phrase teem with sb./sth.

Example 1 The island was teeming with tourists.

Example 2 His composition teems with spelling mistakes.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

admiralty	aerodynamic	airplane	airlift	alertness
allegory	alto	aquarium	balk	banister
bludgeon	bolshevism	bravado	brawl	bullion
carefree	charlatan	chub	cognitive	compatriot
consensual	credulity	crotch	curation	dishonor
dishonorable	disincentive	disingenuous	dualism	emir
fallible	fauna	foothold	forthright	freemason
gentile	gipsy	glistening	gore	guffaw
harpsichord	heathland	Hellenic	hilarity	husky
hutch	hyena	inane	inbuilt	indignation
indignity	inert	inferno	insignia	insomnia
ionic	irretrievably	knell	koran	laze
lexicon	loll	Lutheran	Maori	mascara
mollusk	monastic	monasticism	monochrome	monosyllable
nebulous	nirvana	ochre	odeon	paradigm
pessimism	Pharisee	pigsty	plethora	radon
Ramadan	receptor	relativity	reshuffle	skylight
solace	solenoid	sonata	soprano	Spartan
spontaneity	subtlety	sundial	surety	synagogue
televise	thunderbolt	trash	treachery	treason
trilby	trillion	triplicate	tyrannical	upstart
vie	viola	yap	yoga	

Part 2 Text

The Spirit of America

An American friend of mine was telling me of his adventures as a cinema-producer down in the south-west where real Red Indians were procurable. He said that certain Indians were "very inept actors". It passed for me as a very ordinary punditry on a very ordinary or natural deficiency. It would hardly seem a crushing criticism to say that some wild Arab emir was not very adept at imitating a farmyard. But the remark might be natural in a man travelling in paper boats, or touring with an invisible farmyard for his menagerie. As my friend was a cinema-producer, I supposed he meant that the Indians were bad cinema actors. But the phrase has really a high and austere moral meaning, which my frivolity had wholly missed. A bad actor means a man whose actions are bad or morally reprehensible. So that I might have embraced a Red Indian who was dripping with gore, or covered with atrocious crimes, imagining there was nothing the matter with him beyond an erroneous choice of the theatrical profession. Surely there are here the elements of a play, not to mention a cinema play. Surely a New England village maiden might find herself among the hutches in the power of the formidable and fiendish "Little Blue Bison", merely through her mistaken sympathy with his financial failure as a Film Star. The notion gives me glimpses of all sorts of dissolving views of primeval forests and glistening theatres; but this impulse of irrelevant theatrical production must be curbed. There is one paradigm, however, of this complication of language actually used in contrary senses, about which the same figure can be used to exposit a more serious fact.

Suppose that, in such an international interlude, an English girl and an American girl are talking about the fiancé of the former, who is coming to call. The English girl will be insolent and aristocratic (on the stage), and the American girl will of course have short hair and skirts and will be cynical; Americans being more completely free from cynicism than any people in the world. It is the great glory of Americans that they are not cynical; for that matter, English aristocrats are hardly ever haughty; they understand the game much better than that. But on the stage, anyhow, the American girl may say, referring to her friend's fiancé, with a cynical wave of the cigarette, "I suppose he's bound to come and see you." And at this the blue blood of the Vere de Veres will boil over; the English lady will be deeply wounded and affronted at the suggestion that her lover only comes to see her because he is forced to do so. A staggering stage brawl will then ensue, and things will go from bad to worse; until the arrival of an Interpreter who can talk both English and American. He stands between the two ladies waving two pocket dictionaries, and explains the error on which the quarrel turns. It is very simple; like the seed of all tragedies. In English "he is bound to come and see you" means that he is obliged or constrained to come and see you. In American it does not. In American it means that he is bent on coming to see you, that he is irretrievably resolved to do so, and will surmount any balk to do it. The two young ladies will then embrace as the curtain falls.

If I were asked for a single symbolic figure summing up the whole of what seems eerie and interesting about America to an Englishman, I should be satisfied to select that one lady who groused about Mrs. Asquith's lecture and wanted her money back. I do not mean that she was typically American in complaining; far from it. I, for one, have a great and guilty knowledge of all

that amiable American audiences will have the endurance without complaint. I do not mean that she was typically American in wanting her money; quite the contrary. That sort of American spends money rather than hoards it; and when we convict them of vulgarity we absolve them of avarice. Where she was typically American, summing up a truth individual and indescribable in any other way, is that she used these words: "I've risen from a sick-bed to come and hear her, and I want my money back."

The element in that which really amuses an Englishman is precisely the element which, properly analysed, ought to make him admire an American. But my point is that only by going through the amusement can he reach the admiration. The amusement is in the vision of a tragic sacrifice for what is avowedly a rather frivolous object. Mrs. Asquith is a forthright lady of considerable humour; and I feel sure she does not regard the experience of hearing her read her diary as hilarity for which the sick should thus suffer martyrdom. She also is English; and had no other claim but to amuse Americans and possibly to be amused by them. This being so, it is rather as if somebody said, "I have risked my life in fire and pestilence to find my way to the music hall," or, "I have fasted forty days in the wilderness sustained by the hope of seeing Totty Toddles do her new dance." And there is something rather more subtle involved here. There is something in an Englishman which would make him feel nebulously ashamed of saying that he had fasted to hear Totty Toddles, or risen from a sick-bed to hear Mrs. Asquith. He would feel that it was dishonorable to confess that he had wanted mere amusement so much; and perhaps that he had wanted anything so much. He would not like, so to speak, to be seen rushing down the street after Totty Toddles, or after Mrs. Asquith, or perhaps after anybody. But there is something in it distinct from a mere embarrassment at admitting enthusiasm. He might admit the enthusiasm if the object seemed to justify it; he might perfectly well be serious about a serious thing. But he cannot understand a person being proud of serious sacrifices for what is not a serious thing. He does not like to admit that a little thing can excite him; that he can lose his breath in running, or lose his balance in reaching, after something that might be called inane.

That is the point about American sport; that it is not in the least sportive. It is because it is not very sportive that we sometimes say it is not very sporting. It has the vices of a religion. It has all the paradox of original sin in the service of aboriginal faith. It is sometimes untruthful because it is devout. It is sometimes treacherous because it is loyal. Men lie and cheat for it as they lied for their lords in a feudal conspiracy, or cheated for their chieftains in a Highland dissension. We may say that the vassal readily committed treason; but it is equally true that he readily endured torture. So does the American athlete endure torture. Not only the self-sacrifice but the solemnity of the American athlete is like that of the American Indian. The athletes in the States have the attitude of the athletes among the Spartans, the great historical nation without a sense of humour. They suffer an ascetic régime not to be matched in any monasticism and hardly in any militarism. If any tradition of these things remains in a saner age, they will probably be remembered as a mysterious religious order of fakirs or dancing dervishes, who shaved their heads and fasted in honour of Hercules[1] or Castor and Pollux[2]. And that is really the spiritual atmosphere though the gods have vanished; and the religion is subconscious and therefore irrational. For the problem of the modern world is that it has continued to be religious when it has ceased to be rational. Americans really would starve to win a cocoa-nut shy. They would fast or bleed to win a race of paper boats on a pond. They would rise from a sick-bed to listen to Mrs. Asquith.

But it is the real reason that engrosses me here. It is certainly not that Americans are so stupid as not to know that cocoa-nuts are only cocoa-nuts and paper boats only made of paper. Americans are, on an average, rather more intelligent than Englishmen; and they are well aware that Hercules is a myth and that Mrs. Asquith is something of a mythologist. It is not that they do not know that the object is small in itself; it is that they do really believe that the enthusiasm is great in itself. They admire people for being impressionable. They admire people for being excited. An American so struggling for some disproportionate trifle (like one of my lectures) really feels in a mystical way that he is right, because it is his whole morality to be keen. So long as he wants something very much, whatever it is, he feels he has his conscience behind him, and the common sentiment of society behind him, and God and the whole universe behind him. Wedged on one leg in a hot crowd at a trivial lecture, he has self-respect; his dignity is at rest. That is what he means when he says he is bound to come to the lecture.

Now the Englishman is fond of occasional larks. But these things are not larks; nor are they occasional. It is the essential of the Englishman's lark that he should think it a lark; that he should gibe it even when he does it. Being English myself, I like it; but being English myself, I know it is connected with weaknesses as well as merits. In its diatribe there is condescension and therefore embarrassment. This patronage is allied to the patron, and the patron is allied to the aristocratic tradition of society. The larks are a variant of laze because of leisure; and the leisure is a variant of the security and even supremacy of the gentleman. When an undergraduate at Oxford smashes half a hundred windows he is well aware that the incident is merely a trifle. He can be trusted to explain to his parents and guardians that it was merely a trifle. He does not say, even in the American sense, that he was bound to smash the windows. He does not say that he had risen from a sick-bed to smash the windows. He does not especially think he has risen at all; he knows he has descended (though with delight, like one diving or sliding down the banisters) to something flat and farcical and teem with the English taste for the bathos. He has collapsed into something entirely commonplace; though the owners of the windows may possibly not think so. This rather indescribable element runs through a hundred English things, as in the love of bathos shown even in the sound of proper names; so that even the yearning lover in a lyric yearns for somebody named Sally rather than Salome, and for a place called Wapping rather than a place called Westermain. Even in the relapse into rowdiness there is a sort of relapse into solace. There is also what is so large a part of comfort; carelessness. The undergraduate breaks windows because he does not care about windows, not because he does care about more fresh air like a hygienist, or about more light like a German poet. Still less does he heroically smash a hundred windows because they come between him and the voice of Mrs. Asquith. But least of all does he do it because he seriously prides himself on the energy apart from its aim, and on the will-power that carries it through. He is not "bound" to smash the windows, even in the sense of being bent upon it. He is not bound at all but rather carefree; and his violence is not only a relaxation but a laxity. Finally, this is shown in the fact that he only smashes windows when he is in the mood to smash windows; when some fortunate conjunction of stars and all the tints and subtleties of nature whisper to him that it would be well to smash windows. But the American is always ready, at any moment, to waste his energies on the wilder and more suicidal course of going to lectures. And this is because to him such excitement is not a mood but a moral ideal.

It is only by trying to get some notion of all this that an Englishman can enjoy the final crown

and fruit of all international friendship; which is really liking an American to be American. If we only think that parts of him are excellent because parts of him are English, it would be far more sensible to stop at home and possibly enjoy the society of a whole complete Englishman. But anybody who does understand this can take the same pleasure in an American being American that he does in a thunderbolt being swift and a barometer being sensitive. He can see that a vivid sensibility and alertness really radiate outwards through all the ramifications of machinery and even of materialism. He can see that the American uses his great practical powers upon very small provocation; but he can also see that there is a kind of sense of honour, like that of a duellist, in his readiness to be provoked. Indeed, there is some parallel between the American man of action, however sordid his aims, and the old feudal idea of the gentleman with a sword at his side. The gentleman may have been proud of being husky or sturdy; he may too often have been proud of being thick-headed; but he was not proud of being thick-skinned. On the contrary, he was proud of being thin-skinned. He also seriously thought that sensitiveness was a part of masculinity. It may be very absurd to read of two Irish gentlemen trying to kill each other for trifles, or of two Irish-American millionaires trying to ruin each other for trash. But the very pettiness of the pretext and even the purpose illustrates the same conception; which may be called the virtue of excitability. And it is really this, and not any yap about iron willpower and masterful mentality, that redeems with romance their clockwork cosmos and its industrial ideals. Being a livewire does not mean that the nerves should be like wires; but rather that the very wires should be like nerves.

Another approximation to the truth would be to say that an American is really not ashamed of curiosity. It is not so simple as it looks. Men will carry off curiosity with various kinds of guffaw and bravado, just as they will carry off drunkenness or bankruptcy. But very few people are really proud of lolling on a door-step, and very few people are really proud of longing to look through a key-hole. I do not speak of looking through it, which involves questions of honour and self-control; but few people feel that even the desire is dignified. Now I fancy the American, at least by comparison with the Englishman, does feel that his curiosity is consistent with his dignity, because dignity is consistent with vivacity. He feels it is not merely the curiosity of Paul Pry, but the curiosity of Christopher Columbus. He is not a spy but an explorer; and he feels his greatness rather grow with his refusal to turn back, as a traveller might feel taller and taller as he neared the source of the Nile or the North-West Passage. Many an Englishman has had that feeling about discoveries in dark continents; but he does not often have it about discoveries in daily life. The one type does believe in the indignity and the other in the dignity of the detective. It has nothing to do with ethics in the merely external sense. It involves no particular comparison in practical morals and manners. It is something in the whole poise and posture of the self; of the way a man carries himself. For men are not only affected by what they are; but still more, when they are fools, by what they think they are; and when they are wise, by what they wish to be.

There are truths that have almost become untrue by becoming untruthful. There are statements so often banal and disingenuous that one hesitates to use them, even when they stand for something more subtle. This point about curiosity is not the conventional complaint against the American interviewer. It is not the ordinary joke against the American child. And in the same way I feel the danger of it being identified with the cant about "a young nation" if I say that it has some of the attractions, not of American childhood, but of real childhood. There is some truth in the tradition that the children of wealthy Americans tend to be too precocious and luxurious. But there

is a sense in which we can really say that if the children are like adults, the adults are like children. And that sense is in the very best sense of childhood. It is something which the modern world does not understand. It is something that modern Americans do not understand, even when they possess it; but I think they do possess it.

The devil can quote Scripture for his purpose; and the text of Scripture which he now most commonly quotes is, "The kingdom of heaven is within you." That text has been the stay and support of more Pharisees and staid people and upstart spiritual bullies than all the dogmas in creation; it has served to identify self-satisfaction with the peace that passes all understanding. And the text to be quoted in answer to it is that which declares that no man can receive the kingdom except as a little child. What we are to have inside is the childlike spirit; but the childlike spirit is not entirely concerned about what is inside. It is the first mark of possessing it that one is interested in what is outside. The most childlike thing about a child is his curiosity and his appetite and his power of wonder at the world. We might almost say that the whole advantage of having the kingdom within is that we look for it somewhere else.

(Adapted from *What I Saw in America*)

Notes

① Hercules

Hercules is the Roman adaptation of the Greek divine hero Heracles, who was the son of Zeus (Roman equivalent Jupiter) and the mortal Alcmene. In classical mythology, Hercules is famous for his strength and for his numerous far-ranging adventures.

② Castor and Pollux

In Greek and Roman mythology, Castor and Pollux were twin brothers. When Castor was killed, Pollux asked Zeus to let him share his own immortality with his twin to keep them together, and they were transformed into the constellation Gemini. The pair were regarded as the patrons of sailors, to whom they appeared as St. Elmo's fire, and were also associated with horsemanship.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text A the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. hovel
2. fracas
3. impolite
4. hardship
5. bromidic
6. ire
7. overcome
8. comfort
9. levity
10. nicety
11. vigilance
12. obstacle

Antonyms

1. treacherous
2. impatience
3. serious
4. troubled
5. adept
6. indirect
7. courteous
8. dignity

III. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 10 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. Consensually, the real ________ for Washington is that, as it ponders a trade war with its biggest creditor, China is winning the currency war.
   A) relativity B) credulity C) indignity D) admiralty
2. Public ________ rose when some Moi-era hacks were brought back in a cabinet reshuffle last month.
   A) inferno B) indignation C) insignia D) insomnia
3. The sleek aerodynamic form of the Thunderbolt's titanium and sapphire envelope has its roots in Maximilian Büsser's childhood ________ for assembling model airplane kits.
   A) dualism B) bolshevism C) pessimism D) enthusiasm
4. It's also the most suitable title, summing up PVC's ________ and restraint, on a par with her compatriot Viola.
   A) subtlety B) surety C) pigsty D) spontaneity
5. This semester's Daily Sundial staff would rather not be remembered for fumbling the publication of an ________ comic strip.
   A) inbuilt B) inert C) inane D) ionic
6. Overnight guests can ________ about in four-poster beds and roll top baths, appreciate chubs in the aquarium and enjoy the harpsichord concert at their leisure.
   A) loll B) doll C) quill D) knell
7. Meanwhile, Targacept, a firm based in Winston-Salem, North Carolina, is looking at another group of nerve-cell proteins, the nicotinergic receptors, whose activation has been shown to increase ________ and may fend off cognitive decline.
   A) alto B) allegory C) airlift D) alertness
8. If relentless slate-grey skylight is wearing you down, ________ can be found in just 10 minutes of yoga.

A) sonata B) solace C) soprano D) solenoid

9. If convicted of ________, Crotch could face the death penalty or life in prison.
A) lexicon B) bullion C) treason D) freemason

10. I may be accused by the generals of attempting to create ________ within the army.
A) dissension B) disincentive C) discount D) dishonesty

IV. Cultural Kaleidoscope

Directions: Please choose the most appropriate answer to each statement.

1. The Hellenic historian Herodotus wrote that "Egypt was the gift of the Nile". The ________ in and along the river were more varied in ancient times than they are today, when much of the floodplain is given over to agriculture.
A) mana and mora B) hyena and mascara
C) fauna and flora D) nirvana and plethora

2. Spartan Race is a series of obstacle races of varying distance and difficulty ranging from 3 miles to ________ distances. They are held in North America, Europe, South Korea, Australia, etc.
A) marathon B) bludgeon C) odeon D) radon

3. What is believed by Muslims to be the infallible word of God dictated to Muhammad through the medium of the angel Gabriel?
A) Ramadan B) Charlatan C) Lutheran D) Koran

4. The introduction of ________ into the West may be dated from about AD 340 when St. Athanasius visited Rome accompanied by the two Egyptian monks. It is a religious way of life in which one renounces worldly pursuits to devote oneself fully to spiritual work.
A) mollusc B) monasticism C) monochrome D) monosyllable

5. Red ________, more specifically used by Europeans to refer to the Beothuk and considered pejorative, especially if used by non-Natives, are a people living on Newfoundland, who used red ochre in spring to paint not only their bodies, but also their houses, canoes, weapons, household appliances and musical instruments.
A) Gentiles B) Gipsies C) Maoris D) Indians

V. Rhetoric Appreciation

Directions: A rhetorical device or a figure of speech is a technique that an author or speaker uses to convey to the reader or listener a meaning with the goal of persuading him or her towards considering a topic from a different perspective, using language designed to encourage or evoke an emotional response in the audience. The widely used rhetorical devices include parallelism, repetition, antithesis, simile, quotation, climax, alliteration, inversion, end rhyme, etc. Please identify the rhetorical devices used in the following sentences. And then reread Text A to find out the rhetoric in use as much as you can.

1. ________________
It is very simple; like the seed of all tragedies.

2. ________________
The most childlike thing about a child is his curiosity and his appetite and his power of wonder

at the world.

3. ________________

... and the text of Scripture which he now most commonly quotes is, "The kingdom of heaven is within you."

4. ________________

So long as he wants something very much, whatever it is, he feels he has his conscience behind him, and the common sentiment of society behind him, and God and the whole universe behind him.

5. ________________

But the very pettiness of the pretext and even the purpose illustrates the same conception; which may be called the virtue of excitability.

VI. Translation Practice

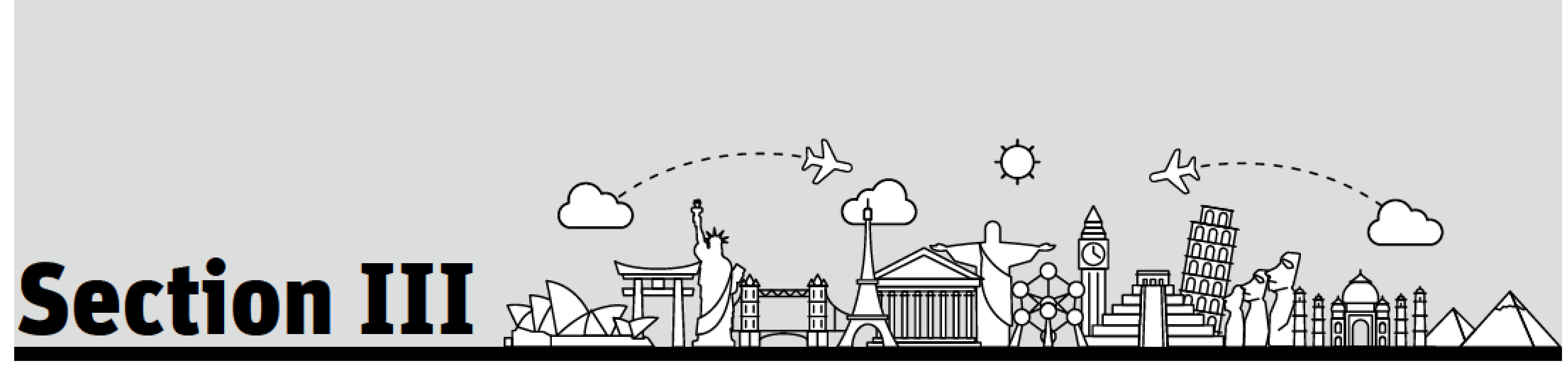
Directions: Please put the following sentences into Chinese.

1. So that I might have embraced a Red Indian who was dripping with gore, or covered with atrocious crimes, imagining there was nothing the matter with him beyond an erroneous choice of the theatrical profession.
2. If any tradition of these things remains in a saner age, they will probably be remembered as a mysterious religious order of fakirs or dancing dervishes, who shaved their heads and fasted in honour of Hercules or Castor and Pollux.
3. It is only by trying to get some notion of all this that an Englishman can enjoy the final crown and fruit of all international friendship; which is really liking an American to be American.
4. And in the same way I feel the danger of it being identified with the cant about "a young nation" if I say that it has some of the attractions, not of American childhood, but of real childhood.
5. That text has been the stay and support of more Pharisees and staid people and upstart spiritual bullies than all the dogmas in creation; it has served to identify self-satisfaction with the peace that passes all understanding.

VII. Writing Workshop

Directions: Please choose one from the following tasks and complete it as required.

1. *America: The Story of Us*, an epic 12-part, 9-hour documentary-drama miniseries televised on the History channel in 2010, tells the extraordinary story of how America was invented. From a few fragile footholds, in just 400 years, America has grown into the most powerful nation on earth, born from the enterprising experiment and piety of the first settlers, forged by revolutionary passion and high ideals, driven by a thirst for innovation and technological change, a nation drawn from across the world. To date it is the feature program most viewed on the History channel. Please write about what impresses you most after your viewing of it.
2. *America and the Americans* by Fei Xiaotong, a pioneering Chinese researcher and professor of sociology and anthropology, is a soul-stirring classic masterpiece in which a profound exploration into American character has been made. Please write a book report based on your reading.



Section III

Text B: The Spirit of England

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **sidestep** ['saɪdstep] ***vt./vi.*** **(sidestepped/sidestepped/sidestepping)**

to avoid discussing something or dealing with something; to avoid something or someone that is coming towards someone or going to hit someone

synonym	shun
word family	sidestep (*n.*); sidestepped; sidestepping
related phrase	sidestep a problem/issue/question; sidestep to make way for someone

Example 1 The report sidesteps the environmental issues.

Example 2 As I sidestepped, the bottle hit me on the left hip.

② **insular** ['ɪnsjʊlə] ***adj.***

being unwilling to meet new people or to consider new ideas

synonym	enclosed; hermitic
antonym	exoteric; open; on-limits; connected
word family	insular (*n.*); insularity; insulation; insulate
related phrase	an insular community; the insular world of the law

Example 1 They were an insular family.

Example 2 The British are often accused of being insular.

③ **steadfast** ['stedfɑːst] ***adj.***

being convinced that what someone is doing is right and refusing to change or to give up

synonym	committed; firm; constant; confirmed
antonym	unsteadfast; unfirm
word family	steadfastness; steadfastly
related phrase	one's steadfast love for sb.; steadfast force

Example 1 He has been Leonard Chuene's most steadfast defender.

Example 2 Dr. Faraday remained steadfast in his plea of innocence.

④ **shifty** ['ʃɪftɪ] ***adj.***

giving the impression of being dishonest

synonyms mean; devious; shifting
word family shift (*n.*&*v.*); shifting
related phrase shifty eyes

Example 1 He had a shifty face and previous convictions.

Example 2 He looks a bit shifty to me.

⑤ **arbiter** ['ɑːbɪtə] ***n.***

a person or institution that judges and settles a quarrel between two other people or groups; someone who has a lot of influence in deciding what is fashionable or socially desirable

synonym judge; arbitrator
word family arbitrament; arbitration; arbitral; arbitrable; arbitrate
related phrase the international arbiter

Example 1 The European Court of Justice will be the final arbiter in the dispute.

Example 2 The designer has received rave reviews from such arbiters of taste as *Elle* magazine.

⑥ **variegated** ['veərɪgeɪtɪd] ***adj.***

having different colours on something; consisting of many different parts or types

synonym varicolored; shot; party-coloured
word family variegation; variegate
related phrase variegated grasses; the variegated dialects

Example 1 They exhibit a most conspicuous figure in this great and variegated picture.

Example 2 This specimen is richly variegated in colour.

⑦ **hue** [hjuː] ***n.***

a colour or type of colour; a type of opinion, belief etc.

synonym colour
related phrase the dominant hue; of every hue; of all hues; political opinions of every hue

Example 1 The same hue will look different in different lights.

Example 2 Jerry Brown turned out to be of a very different political hue than his father.

⑧ **depraved** [dɪ'preɪvd] ***adj.***

(actions, things, or people, etc.) being morally bad or evil

synonym odious; immoral; perverse; perverted; reprobate
word family depravity; depravation; deprave
related phrase a disturbing and depraved film; depraved behaviours; a killer's depraved mind

Example 1 She described it as the work of depraved and evil criminals.

Example 2 I really shouldn't feed your depraved appetite.

⑨ **scavenge** ['skævɪndʒ] ***vt./vi.*** **(scavenged/scavenged/scavenging)**

to collect something by searching among waste or unwanted objects

word family scavenger

related phrase scavenge sth.; scavenge for sth.

Example 1 There are people who live in the dump and scavenge garbage for a living.

Example 2 Children scavenge through rubbish.

⑩ **deface** [dɪ'feɪs] ***vt.*** **(defaced/defaced/defacing)**

to spoil something (such as a wall, a notice etc.) by writing or drawing things on it

synonym disfigure; blemish; smear

word family defacement

related phrase deface the record

Example 1 It's illegal to deface property.

Example 2 Most of the monuments had been broken or defaced.

⑪ **rugged** ['rʌgɪd] ***adj.***

being uneven and covered with rocks, with few trees or plants; having strong, masculine features; being strong and determined, and having the ability to cope with difficult situations; being designed to last a long time, even if something (such as a vehicle or piece of equipment etc.) is treated roughly

synonym ragged; rough; sturdy

word family ruggedness; ruggedly

related phrase a rugged coastline; the rugged beauty of the Highlands; his rugged good looks; rugged individualism; the rugged furniture

Example 1 We left the rough track and bumped our way over a rugged mountainous terrain.

Example 2 The camera combines rugged reliability with unequalled optical performance and speed.

⑫ **hysteria** [hɪ'stɪərɪə] ***n.***

a state of uncontrolled excitement, anger, or panic

synonym craze; delirium; frenzy; fury; conniption

word family hysterics; hysterical; hysteric; hysterically

related phrase mass hysteria

Example 1 No one could help getting carried away by the hysteria.

Example 2 Can you hear the sound of hysteria?

⑬ **fugitive** ['fju:dʒɪtɪv] ***adj.***

trying to avoid being caught by the police

synonym mutable

word family fugitive (*n.*)

related phrase the fugitive train robber

Example 1 Clay said a better law was needed for the return of fugitive slaves to their owners.

Example 2 It now controls some 20 media companies, including two television stations seized from fugitive bankers.

⑭ **deputation** [ˌdepjʊ'teɪʃən] ***n.***

a small group of people who have been asked to speak to someone on behalf of a larger group of people, especially in order to make a complaint

synonym representation; mission; delegation; ambassador

word family depute; deputy; deputise; deputize

related phrase a trading deputation

Example 1 A deputation of elders from the village arrived headed by its chief.

Example 2 They sent a deputation to the ministry to complain.

⑮ **halcyon** ['hælsɪən] ***adj.***

Halcyon days refer to a time in the past that was peaceful or happy

synonym genial; peaceful; restful

antonym turbulent; unpeaceful

word family halcyon (*n.*)

related phrase halcyon days; the halcyon sea

Example 1 It was all a far cry from those halcyon days in 1990, when he won three tournaments on the European tour.

Example 2 Your halcyon days are over.

⑯ **acrimony** ['ækrɪmənɪ] ***n.***

bitter and angry words or quarrels

synonym piquancy; pungency

word family acrimonious; acrimoniously

related phrase (end) in acrimony

Example 1 The council's first meeting ended in acrimony.

Example 2 But instead of ending in agreement, the talks broke up in acrimony at the end of the week.

⑰ **estrangement** [ɪ'streɪndʒmənt] ***n.***

the state of being estranged from someone or the length of time for which someone is estranged

synonym detachment; distance; alienation

word family estranged; estrange

related phrase the social estrangement; the cultural estrangement

Example 1 The trip will bring an end to years of estrangement between the two countries.

Example 2 The biggest taboo is the estrangement between a mother and her daughter.

⑱ **epistle** [ɪ'pɪsəl] ***n.***

a letter; a series of books in the New Testament that were originally written as letters to the early Christians

synonym	letter
word family	epistolary
related phrase	a brief but poignant epistle; *The Epistle to the Hebrews*

Example 1 He wrote a lengthy epistle describing his college life.

Example 2 A reference to "natural law" can be found in *The Epistle of Paul to the Romans*.

⑲ **caustic** ['kɔːstɪk] ***adj.***

being very powerful and can dissolve other substances; being extremely critical, cruel, or bitter

synonym	sarcastic
word family	caustically
related phrase	caustic cleaning agents; caustic wit/comments/remarks etc.

Example 1 Remember that this is caustic; use gloves or a spoon.

Example 2 He delights in making caustic remarks.

⑳ **innuendo** [ˌɪnjʊ'endəʊ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* innuendos/innuendoes)**

indirect reference to something rude or unpleasant

synonym	satire; insinuation
word family	innuendo (*v.*)
related phrase	the innuendo effect

Example 1 The report was based on rumours, speculation, and innuendo.

Example 2 The facts did not support the accusations and innuendos.

㉑ **cowardice** ['kaʊədɪs] ***n.***

the trait of lacking courage, cowardly behaviour

synonym	poltroonery; recreancy
antonym	bravery
word family	cowardly
related phrase	cowardice in the face of danger

Example 1 He openly accused his opponents of cowardice.

Example 2 How I despised myself for my cowardice!

㉒ **hunch** [hʌntʃ] ***vt./vi.*** **(hunched/hunched/hunching)**

to bend down and forwards so that one's back forms a curve; to raise one's shoulders into a rounded shape because one is cold, anxious etc.

synonym	shrug

word family hunch (*n.*); hunched; hunchbacked
related phrase hunch one's shoulders; hunch over sth.

Example 1 He had to hunch over the steering wheel to see anything.

Example 2 Wes hunched his shoulders and leaned forward on the edge of the counter.

㉓ **disfigure** [dɪs'fɪgə] ***vt.*** **(disfigured/disfigured/disfiguring)**

to spoil the appearance that someone or something naturally has

synonym deface; destroy; blemish
word family disfiguration; disfigurement; disfiguring; disfigured
related phrase disfigure the landscape; a disfiguring disease; be badly disfigured

Example 1 His face had been disfigured in an accident.

Example 2 Her good name was disfigured by instances of favouritism.

㉔ **irksome** ['ɜːksəm] ***adj.***

irritating or annoying someone

synonym annoying; deadening; perishing; tedious; tiresome; wearisome
word family irk
related phrase an irksome journey; the irksome regulations

Example 1 As a matter of fact, it is irksome for me to clarify this non-existent issue.

Example 2 It would also lessen Europe's irksome dependence on Russian gas.

㉕ **sanctity** ['sæŋktɪtɪ] ***n.***

something that is very important and must be treated with respect

synonym devotion; dignity; saintliness
word family sanctify; sanctified
related phrase the sanctity of the Constitution; an aura of sanctity

Example 1 The circumstances of my parents' divorce shattered my faith in the sanctity of marriage.

Example 2 We must safeguard the uniformity and sanctity of the legal system and prevent or overcome local and departmental protectionism.

㉖ **at any rate**

used to indicate that a statement explains or supports a previous statement; if nothing else

synonym anyhow; in any case; at least; leastways

Example 1 Well, at any rate, let me thank you for all you did.

Example 2 He doesn't understand me, or at any rate not fully.

㉗ **gawp at**

to look at something for a long time, with surprise or amazement

synonym behold; gape at; stare at

related phrase gawp at sb./sth.

Example 1 I was carried out on a stretcher, with everyone gawping at me.

Example 2 Crowds of onlookers came to gawp at the wreckage of the aircraft.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

abound	advocacy	airbus	antelope	asymptomatic
avenge	begonia	bidet	biographer	birthplace
brethren	byre	cackle	calligraphy	causal
churlish	coherence	colic	copse	corny
curricula	dahlia	deceptive	delicatessen	depopulate
deprave	dialysis	defiance	disharmony	duet
ebony	epic	estrange	ethic	falcon
fanfare	fount	gaudy	glade	goalie
governess	grassland	hangar	idiomatic	impolite
indifferent	insulate	interstellar	jangle	journeyman
junkie	kestrel	leprechaun	limerick	loafed
locket	lunge	magnolia	mane	melodramatic
misrepresent	moorland	neural	newsreader	nozzle
onlooker	outmoded	overkill	oversized	pedagogy
pelmet	perestroika	pixie	prairie	predate
proletariat	quirk	ravenous	rheumatic	romance
Romany	rustic	sectarian	Serbian	shun
slapstick	slipper	snide	songwriter	sonic
sonnet	sorcerer	spinster	stepfather	superpower
tawny	temperate	toggle	underarm	undercoat
underplay	undertone	unscathed	viral	whirlpool

Part 2 Text

The Spirit of England

Nine times out of ten a man's broad-mindedness is necessarily the narrowest thing about him. This is not particularly paradoxical; it is, when we come to think of it, an issue not to be sidestepped. His vision of his own village may really be full of varieties; and even his vision of his own nation may have a rough resemblance to the reality. But his vision of the world is probably smaller than the world. His vision of the universe is certainly much smaller than the universe. Hence he is never so inadequate as when he is universal; he is never so limited as when he generalises. This is the fallacy in the many modern attempts at a creedless creed, at something variously described as essential Christianity or undenominational religion or a world faith to embrace all the faiths in the world. It is that every sectarian is more sectarian in his unsectarianism than he is in his sect. The emancipation of a Baptist[1] is a very Baptist emancipation.

But if this danger exists for all men, it exists especially for the Englishman. The Englishman is never so insular as when he is imperial; except indeed when he is international. In private life he is a good friend and in practical politics generally a steadfast ally. But theoretical politics are more practical than practical politics. And in theoretical politics the Englishman is the worst ally the world ever saw. This is all the more curious because he has passed so much of his historical life in the character of an ally. He has been in twenty great alliances and never understood one of them. He has never been farther away from European politics than when he was fighting heroically in the thick of them. I myself think that this splendid isolation is sometimes really splendid; so long as it is isolation and does not imagine itself to be imperialism or internationalism. With the idea of being international, with the idea of being imperial, comes the frantic and farcical idea of being impartial. Generally speaking, men are never so shifty and false and hypocritical as when they are occupied in being impartial. They are performing the first and most typical of all the actions of the devil; they are claiming the throne of God. Even when it is not hypocrisy but only mental confusion, it is always a confusion worse and worse confounded. We see it in the impartial historians of the Victorian age[2], who now seem far more Victorian than the partial historians. Hallam wrote about the Middle Ages; but Hallam was far less mediaeval than Macaulay[3]; for Macaulay was at least a fighter. Huxley[4] had more mediaeval sympathies than Herbert Spencer[5] for the same reason; that Huxley was a fighter. They both fought in many ways for the limitations of their own rationalistic epoch; but they were nearer the truth than the men who simply assumed those limitations as rational. The war of the controversionalists was a wider thing than the peace of the arbiters. And in the same way the Englishman never cuts a less convincing figure before other nations than when he tries to arbitrate between them.

What is wanted for the cause of England today is an Englishman with enough imagination to love his country from the outside as well as the inside. That is, we need somebody who will do for the English what has never been done for them, but what is done for any outlandish and rustic peasantry or even any ravenous tribe. We want people who can make England attractive; quite apart from disputes about whether England is strong or weak. We want somebody to explain, not that England is everywhere, but what England is anywhere; not that England is or is not really dying, but why we do not want her to die. For this purpose the official and conventional compliments or claims can never get any farther than gaudy abstractions about Law and Justice and Truth; the ideals which England accepts as every civilised state accepts them, and violates as every civilised state violates them. That is not the way in which the picture of any people has ever been painted on the sympathetic imagination of the world. Enthusiasts for old Japan did not tell us that the Japs recognised the existence of abstract morality; but that they lived in paper houses or wrote letters with paint-brushes. Men who wished to interest us in Arabs did not confine themselves to saying that they are monotheists or moralists; they filled our romances with the lunge of Arab steeds with thick mane or the variegated hues of strange tents or carpets. What we want is somebody who will do for the Englishman with his front garden what was done for the Jap and his paper house; who shall understand the Englishman with his dog as well as the Arab with his horse. In a word, what nobody has really tried to do is the one thing that really wants doing. It is to make England attractive as a nationality, and even as a small nationality.

For it is a wild folly to suppose that nations will love each other because they are alike. They will never really do that unless they are really alike; and then they will not be nations. Nations can

love each other as men and women love each other, not because they are alike but because they are different. It can easily be shown, I fancy, that in every case where a real public sympathy was aroused for some unfortunate foreign people, it has always been accompanied with a particular and positive interest in their most foreign customs and their most foreign externals. To take a serious example, such nations as Serbia had been largely commended to international consideration by the study of Serbian epics[6], or Serbian songs. The epoch of negro emancipation was also the epoch of negro melodies. Those who wept over Uncle Tom[7] also laughed over Uncle Remus[8]. But the sort of interest that is felt even in the scalp-hunter and the cannibal, the torturer and the devil-worshipper, that sort of interest has never been felt in the Englishman.

And this is the more extraordinary because the Englishman is really very interesting. He is interesting in a special degree in this special manner; he is interesting because he is individual. No man in the world is more misrepresented by everything official or even in the ordinary sense national. A description of English life must be a description of private life. In that sense there is no public life. In that sense there is no public opinion. There have never been those prairie fires of public opinion in England which often sweep over America. At any rate, there have never been any such popular revolutions since the popular revolutions of the Middle Ages. The English are a nation of amateurs; they are even a nation of people with quirks. An Englishman is never more English than when he is considered a lunatic by the other Englishmen. This can be clearly seen in a figure like Dr. Johnson[9], who has become national not by being normal but by being extraordinary.

I have already noted the commonplace that in order to teach internationalism we must talk nationalism. We must make the nations as nations less depraved or mysterious to each other. We do not scavenge the disharmony between men by defacing one as a monster with a million arms and legs, but by describing the men as men, with their separate and even solitary emotions. As this has a particular application to the emotions of the Englishman, I will return to the topic once more. Now Americans have a power that is the soul and success of democracy, the power of spontaneous social organisation. Their high spirits, their humane ideals are really creative, and they abound in unofficial institutions; we might almost say in unofficial officialism. Nobody who has felt the presence of all the leagues and guilds and college clubs will deny that Whitman was national when he said he would build states and cities out of the love of comrades. When all this communal enthusiasm collides with the Englishman, it too often seems literally to leave him cold. They say he is reserved; they possibly think he is churlish. And the Englishman, having been taught his own history all wrong, is only too likely to take the criticism as a compliment. He admits that he is reserved because he is stern and strong; or even that he is slipper because he is shrewd and candid. But as a fact he is not impolite and not especially reserved; at least reserve is not the meaning of his reluctance. The real difference lies, I think, in the fact that American high spirits are not only high but level; that the hilarious American spirit is like a plateau, and the humorous English spirit like a rugged mountain range.

In America there are no moods, or there is only one mood. It is the same whether it is called hustle or uplift; whether we regard it as the heroic love of comrades or the last hysteria of the herd instinct. It has been said of the typical English aristocrats of the Government offices that they resemble certain ornamental founts and play from ten till four; and it is true that an Englishman, even an English aristocrat, is not always inclined to play any more than to work. But American sociability is not like the Trafalgar fountains. It is like Niagara. It never stops, under the silent stars

or the rolling storms. There seems always to be the same human heat and pressure behind it; it is like the central heating of hotels as explained in the advertisements and announcements. The temperature can be regulated; but it is not. And it is always rather overpowering for an Englishman, whose mood changes like his own fugitive and shifting sky. The English mood is very like the English weather; it is a nuisance and a national necessity.

If any one wishes to understand the quarrel between Dickens and the Americans, let him turn to that chapter in *Martin Chuzzlewit*[10], in which young Martin has to receive endless defiles and deputations of total strangers each announced by name and demanding formal salutation without fanfare. There are several things to be noticed about this incident. To begin with, it did not happen to Martin Chuzzlewit; but it did happen to Charles Dickens. Dickens is incorporating almost without alteration a passage from a diary in the middle of a story; as he did when he included the admirable account of the prison petition of John Dickens as the prison petition of Wilkins Micawber[11].

American sociability sweeps away any such subtlety. It cannot be expected to understand the paradox or perversity of the Englishman, who thus can feel friendly and avoid friends. That is the truth in the suggestion that Dickens was melodramatic. It means that he probably felt most sociable when he was solitary. In all these attempts to describe the indescribable, to indicate the real but unconscious differences between the two peoples, I have tried to balance my words without the irrelevant bias of praise and blame. Both characteristics always cut both ways. On one side this comradeship makes possible a certain communal courage, a democratic derision of rich men in high places, that is not easy in our smaller and more stratified society. On the other hand the Englishman has certainly more liberty, if less equality and fraternity. But the richest compensation of the Englishman is not even in the word "liberty", but rather in the word "poetry". That humour of evasion or seclusion, that halcyon isolation, that healing of wounded friendship by what Christian Science[12] would call absent treatment, that is the best atmosphere of all for the creation of great poetry; and out of that came "bare ruined choirs where late the sweet birds sang" and "Thou was not made for death, immortal bird". In this sense it is indeed true that poetry is emotion remembered in tranquillity; which may be extended to mean affection remembered in loneliness. There is in it a spirit not only of estrangement but even of distance; a spirit which does desire, as in the old English epistle and sonnet, to be not only over the hills but also far away. In other words, in so far as it is true that the Englishman is an exception to the great truth of Aristotle, it is because he is not so near to Aristotle as he is to Homer. In so far as he is not by nature a political animal, it is because he is a poetical animal. We see it in his relations to the other animals; his quaint and almost illogical love of dogs and horses and dependants whose political rights cannot possibly be defined in logic. Many forms of hunting or fishing are but an excuse for the same thing which the shameless literary man does without any excuse. Sport is speechless poetry. It would be easy for a foreigner, by taking a few liberties with the facts, to make a caustic satire about the sort of silent Shelley who decides ultimately to shoot the skylark. It would be easy to answer these poetic suggestions by saying that he himself might be responsible for ruining the choirs where late the sweet birds sang, or that the immortal bird was likely to be mortal when he was out with his gun. But these international and innuendos are never just; and the real relations of an Englishman and an English bird are far more delicate. It would be equally easy and equally unjust to suggest a similar satire against American democracy; and represent Americans merely as birds of a feather who can do

nothing but flock together. But this would leave out the fact that at least it is not the white feather; that democracy is capable of defiance and of death for an idea. Touching the souls of great nations, these criticisms are generally false because they are critical.

But when we are quite sure that we rejoice in a nation's strength, then and not before we are justified in judging its weakness. The danger of democracy is not anarchy; on the contrary, it is monotony. And it is touching this that all my experience has increased my conviction that a great deal that is called female emancipation has merely been the increase of female convention. Now the males of every community are far too conventional; it was the females who were individual and criticised the conventions of the tribe. If the females become conventional also, there is a danger of individuality being lost. This indeed is not peculiar to America; it is common to the whole modern industrial world, and to everything which substitutes the indifferent atmosphere of the State for the personal atmosphere of the home. But it is emphasised in America by the curious contradiction that Americans do in theory value and even venerate the individual. But individualism is still the foe of individuality. Where men are trying to compete with each other they are trying to copy each other. They become featureless by "featuring" the same part. Personality, in becoming a conscious ideal, becomes a common ideal. In this respect perhaps there is really something to be learnt from the Englishman with his turn or twist in the direction of private life. Those who have travelled in such a fashion as to see all the American hotels and none of the American houses are sometimes driven to the excess of saying that the Americans have no private life. But even if the exaggeration has a hint of truth, we must balance it with the corresponding truth; that the English have no public life. They on their side have still to learn the meaning of the temperate and public thing, the republic; and how great are the dangers of cowardice and corruption when the very State itself has become a State secret.

The English are patriotic; but patriotism is the unconscious form of nationalism. It is being national without understanding the meaning of a nation. The Americans are on the whole too self-conscious, kept hunching too much in the pace of public life, with all its temptations to superficiality and fashion; too much aware of outside opinion and with too much appetite for outside criticism. But the English are much too unconscious; and would be the better for an increase in many forms of consciousness, including consciousness of sin. But even their sin is ignorance of their real virtue. The most admirable English things are not the things that are most admired by the English, or for which the English admire themselves. They are things now blindly neglected and in daily danger of being destroyed. It is all the worse that they should be destroyed, because there is really nothing like them in the world. That is why I have suggested a note of nationalism rather than patriotism for the English; the power of seeing their nation as a nation and not as the nature of things. We say of some ballad from the Balkans or some peasant costume in the Netherlands that it is unique; but the good things of England really are unique. Our very isolation from continental wars and revolutionary reconstructions have kept them unique. The particular kind of beauty there is in an English village, the particular kind of humour there is in an English public house, are things that cannot be found in lands where the village is far more simply and equally governed, or where the vine is far more honourably served and praised. Yet we shall not save them by merely sinking into them with the conservative sort of contentment, even if the commercial rapacity of our plutocratic reforms would allow us to do so. We must in a sense get far away from England in order to gawp at her; we must rise above patriotism in order to be practically patriotic; we must have some sense of more varied

and remote things before these vanishing virtues can be seen suddenly for what they are; almost as one might fancy that a man would have to rise to the dizziest heights of the divine understanding before he saw, as from a peak far above a whirlpool, how precious is his irksome soul.

(Adapted from *What I saw in America*)

Notes

① Baptist

Baptists are individuals who comprise a group of Evangelical Christian denominations and churches that subscribe to a doctrine that baptism should be performed only for professing believers (believer's baptism, as opposed to infant baptism), and that it must be done by complete immersion (as opposed to affusion or sprinkling). Other tenets of Baptist churches include soul competency (liberty), salvation through faith alone, Scripture alone as the rule of faith and practice, and the autonomy of the local congregation. Baptists recognize two ministerial offices, elders and deacons. Baptist churches are widely considered to be Protestant churches, though some Baptists disavow this identity.

② the Victorian age

The Victorian age was the period of Queen Victoria's reign, from 20 June 1837 until her death on 22 January 1901. It was a long period of peace, prosperity, "refined sensibilities" and national self-confidence for the United Kingdom. Some scholars date the beginning of the period in terms of sensibilities and political concerns to the passage of the Reform Act 1832.

③ Macaulay

Macaulay 1st Baron Macaulay (October 25, 1800–December 28, 1859), was a British historian and Whig politician. He wrote extensively as an essayist and reviewer; his books on British history have been hailed as literary masterpieces. Macaulay held political office as the Secretary at War between 1839 and 1841, and the Paymaster-General between 1846 and 1848. He played a major role in introducing English and western concepts to education in India, publishing his argument on the subject in the "Macaulay Minute" published in 1835. He supported the replacement of Persian by English as the official language, the use of English as the medium of instruction in all schools, and the training of English-speaking Indians as teachers.

④ Huxley

Thomas Henry Huxley (May 4, 1825–June 29, 1895) was an English biologist (comparative anatomist), known as "Darwin's Bulldog" for his advocacy of Charles Darwin's theory of evolution.

⑤ Herbert Spencer

Herbert Spencer (April 27, 1820–December 8, 1903) was an English philosopher, biologist, anthropologist, sociologist, and prominent classical liberal political theorist of the Victorian era.

⑥ Serbian epics

Serbian epic poetry is a form of epic poetry created by Serbs originating in today's Serbia,

Bosnia and Herzegovina, Croatia, Macedonia and Montenegro. The main cycles were composed by unknown Serb authors between the 14th and 19th centuries. They are largely concerned with historical events and personages. The instrument accompanying the epic poetry is the gusle.

⑦ Uncle Tom

Uncle Tom is the title character of Harriet Beecher Stowe's 1852 novel, *Uncle Tom's Cabin*. The term "Uncle Tom" is also used as a derogatory epithet for an excessively subservient person, particularly when that person is aware of their own lower-class status based on race. The use of the epithet is the result of later works derived from the original novel.

⑧ Uncle Remus

Uncle Remus is the fictional title character and narrator of a collection of African-American folktales adapted and compiled by Joel Chandler Harris, published in book form in 1881. A journalist in post-Reconstruction Atlanta, Georgia, Harris produced seven Uncle Remus books.

⑨ Dr. Johnson

Samuel Johnson (September 18, 1709–December 13, 1784), often referred to as Dr. Johnson, was an English writer who made lasting contributions to English literature as a poet, essayist, moralist, literary critic, biographer, editor and lexicographer. Johnson was a devout Anglican and committed Tory, and is described by the *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* as "arguably the most distinguished man of letters in English history". He is also the subject of perhaps the most famous biography in English literature, namely *The Life of Samuel Johnson* by James Boswell.

⑩ *Martin Chuzzlewit*

Martin Chuzzlewit is a novel by Charles Dickens, considered the last of his picaresque novels. It was originally serialised between 1842 and 1844. Dickens thought it to be his best work, but it was one of his least popular novels. Like nearly all of Dickens' novels, *Martin Chuzzlewit* was released to the public in monthly instalments. Early sales of the monthly parts were disappointing, compared to previous works, so Dickens changed the plot to send the title character to America. This allowed the author to portray the United States (which he had visited in 1842) satirically as a near wilderness with pockets of civilisation filled with deceptive and self-promoting hucksters.

⑪ Wilkins Micawber

Wilkins Micawber is a fictional character from Charles Dickens's 1850 novel, *David Copperfield*. He was modelled on Dickens' father, John Dickens, who like Micawber was incarcerated in debtors' prison (the King's Bench Prison) after failing to meet his creditors' demands.

⑫ Christian Science

Christian Science is a set of beliefs and practices belonging to the metaphysical family of new religious movements. It was developed in nineteenth-century New England by Mary Baker Eddy, who argued in her book *Science and Health* (1875) that sickness is an illusion that can be corrected by prayer alone. The book became Christian Science's central text, along with *The Bible*, and by 2001 had sold over nine million copies.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Sentence Practice

Directions: Please rewrite the sentences with the proper forms of the given words.

deliverance	sidestep	temperate	churlish	harmony
snidely	gawp	sectarianism	competitive	deprave

1. He is quick to note that denominational violence predates all other types of terrorism in Pakistan, making it an effective and easy tool for present day extremists to exploit.
2. Oiled and glistening men and women vied for the Muscle Beach Championship—bodybuilding and bikini competition—at Venice Beach in Los Angeles last Saturday.
3. There's not much evidence of coherence in your message, other than being sarcastic.
4. Brazil, by investing heavily in research, has turned itself into the first tropical farm giant, joining the ranks of the extratropical food superpowers such as America, Europe and Canada.
5. Crowds of onlookers came to stare at the wreckage of the airbus near the hangar.
6. Corny says it's hazardous to try to bypass periods of weak stock performance and then heavily invest in shares in the good times.
7. The spinster who had refused to admit to witchcraft and her punishments, in a salvation ceremony, became more horrendous until she admitted to being a sorcerer.
8. The disagreement between him and his brethren worries their family and toggles other kinsmen in some aspects.
9. He shows his rudeness by saying something like that to his stepfather.
10. It is generally believed that pornography perverts society as a whole.

III. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text B the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. dishonest	2. colour
3. craggy	4. disfigure
5. frenzy	6. unwavering
7. debauch	8. delegation
9. grassland	10. intermediary
11. eccentricity	12. alienation
13. disobedience	14. gaze

15. serene

Antonyms

1. animate
2. cosmopolitan
3. lasting
4. undramatic
5. partial
6. urban
7. sufficient
8. logical
9. internal
10. bustle

IV. Phrase Practice

Directions: Please translate the following verb+noun collocations into Chinese.

1. scavenge impurities
2. scavenge information from newspapers
3. sidestep the pitfalls
4. sidestep personal questions
5. deface an inscription
6. deface a bond
7. embrace the nature
8. embrace an idea
9. embrace an opportunity
10. embrace a new profession
11. embrace Christianity
12. embrace a great number of new curricula
13. violate the rules of syntax
14. violate the peace of the countryside
15. violate the sanctity of the church

V. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 15 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. In its struggle against the Bolshevik-Leninists it is compelled to seek support from the right, i.e., from the ______ and the petty bourgeoisie, counterposing them to the proletariat.
   A) pelmet　B) pedagogy　C) peasantry　D) perestroika
2. His birthplace is where the ______ battle between tyranny and freedom took place in history.
   A) epic　B) ethic　C) colic　D) sonic
3. The depopulation of rare species on the ______ has become a serious problem.
   A) goalie　B) junkie　C) pixie　D) prairie
4. I charge you by the Lord that this ______ be read unto all the holy brethren.
   A) cackle　B) epistle　C) jangle　D) nozzle

5. The reason why the _____ changes greatly is that people overkilled the animals on it.
   A) grassland B) heathland C) tideland D) moorland
6. In the blink of an eye, the lion _____ at the antelope, pulling it to the deep forest.
   A) lodged B) loafed C) lumped D) lunged
7. The method is often clinically applicable to crying with grief and _____ as well as diseases due to excessive grief.
   A) dahlia B) hysteria C) begonia D) magnolia
8. _____ between owners and players has led to eight work stoppages since 1972.
   A) Ebony B) Acrimony C) Romany D) Tawny
9. You could recite a ballad for me, a _____, a limerick or something!
   A) sonnet B) locket C) bidet D) duet
10. "Well," she said with the same _____ of contempt that seemed to pull her apart from him.
   A) underarm B) undercoat C) undertone D) underplay
11. Today's unknown route through a(n) _____ canyon might well become a dotted red line on some future map.
   A) unscathed B) rugged C) outmoded D) oversized
12. We do a better service to ourselves and others by remaining detached and avoiding _____ reactions.
   A) idiomatic B) rheumatic C) melodramatic D) asymptomatic
13. That governess is hired by a delicatessen to do _____ jobs.
   A) menial B) neural C) causal D) viral
14. Kestrels, the smallest falcons, _____ for prey in the glade.
   A) avenge B) scavenge C) revenge D) estrange
15. His most recent videotaped speech was a rambling _____ broadcast four days before the last United States presidential election.
   A) dialysis B) dialysate C) diatreme D) diatribe

VI. Proofreading

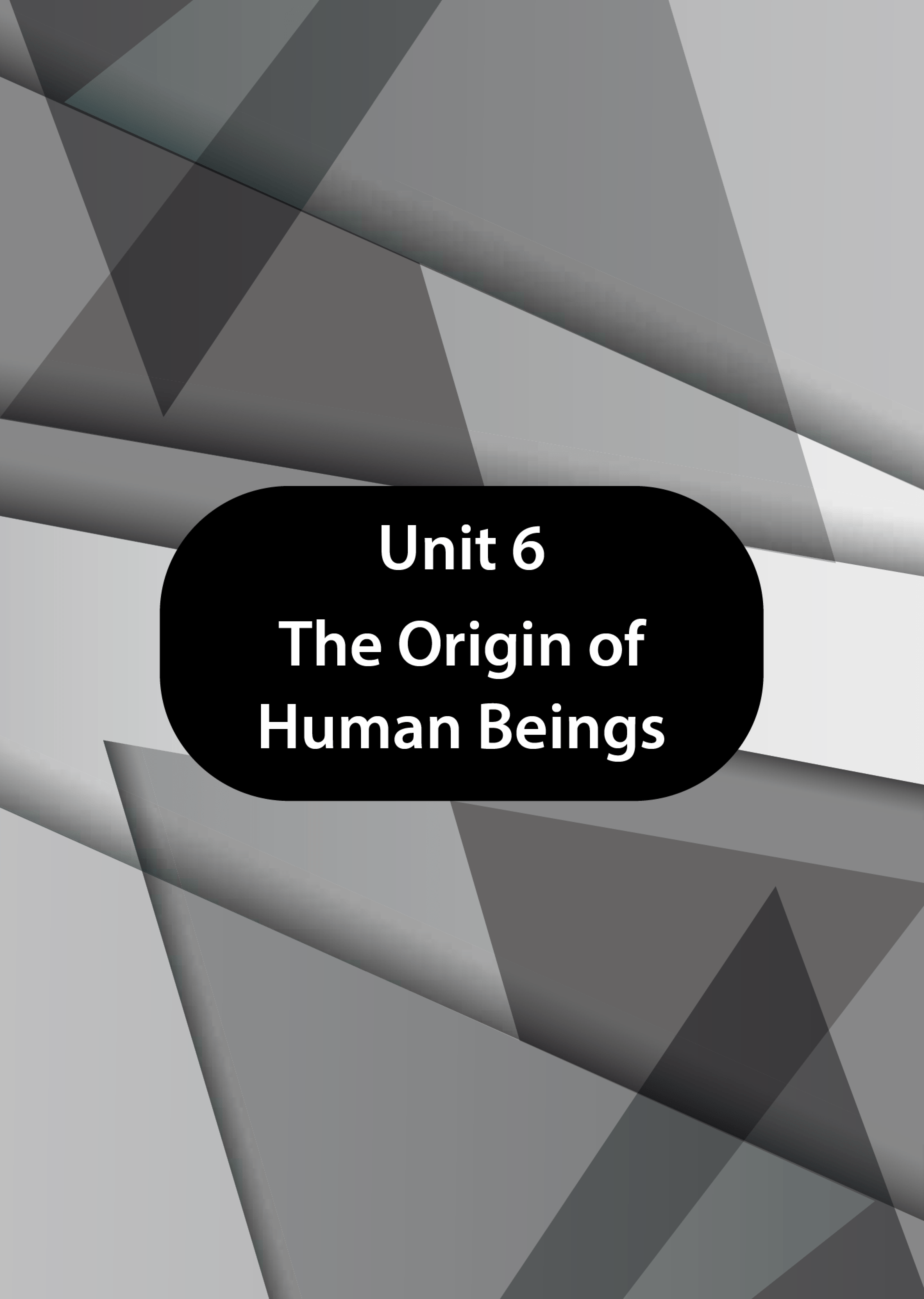
Directions: Please identify and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

1. Due to the polite language that songwriter yelled to the newsreader, people gave negative comments on him.
2. Stories about leprechauns abound Irish folklore.
3. His journeymen conspired against him, and confined him a byre behind a copse of dense spruce trees.
4. Such emissions can sweep along virtually all of the cold, compact interstellar dust in a galaxy, thereby preventing that dust from ever curdling into new stars.
5. Among the various tools of calligraphy, writing brush is peculiar with China.

VII. Paraphrase

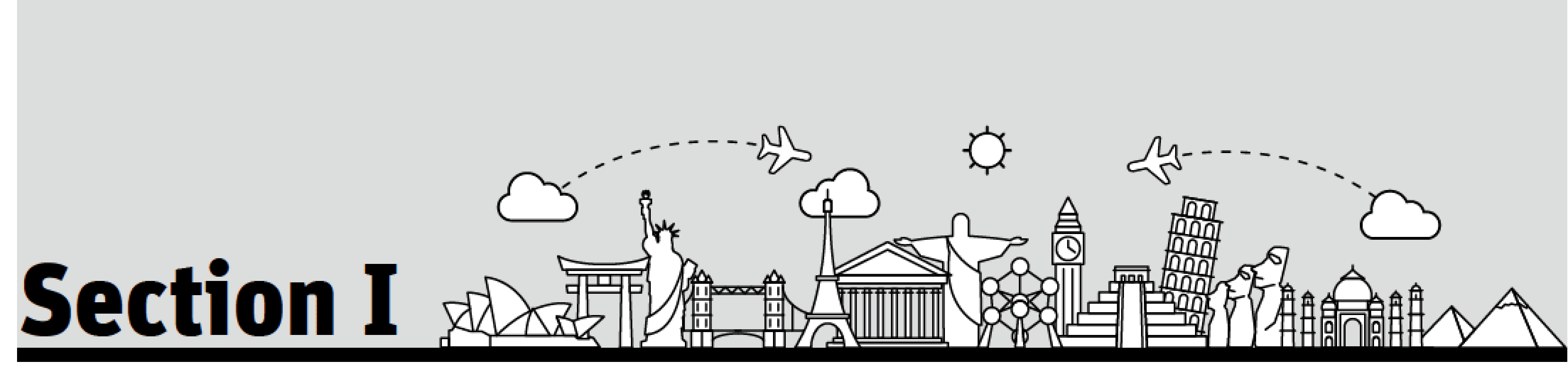
Directions: Please restate the following sentences using other words without altering the original meaning.

1. This is the fallacy in the many modern attempts at a creedless creed, at something variously described as essential Christianity or undenominational religion or a world faith to embrace all the faiths in the world.
2. And in the same way the Englishman never cuts a less convincing figure before other nations than when he tries to arbitrate between them.
3. What we want is somebody who will do for the Englishman with his front garden what was done for the Jap and his paper house; who shall understand the Englishman with his dog as well as the Arab with his horse.
4. No man in the world is more misrepresented by everything official or even in the ordinary sense national.
5. In all these attempts to describe the indescribable, to indicate the real but unconscious differences between the two peoples, I have tried to balance my words without the irrelevant bias of praise and blame.
6. And it is touching this that all my experience has increased my conviction that a great deal that is called female emancipation has merely been the increase of female convention.
7. Yet we shall not save them by merely sinking into them with the conservative sort of contentment, even if the commercial rapacity of our plutocratic reforms would allow us to do so.



Unit 6

The Origin of Human Beings



Section I

Focus on Critical Thinking and Critical Reading (6)

How to Read Critically

Starting Point: Asking Why, Who, and How

When you look for answers from a text, start by asking why. Why does the author tell this story? Why does the author reveal this particular argument? Why does the author choose this particular way of expressing himself or herself?

Then move on to who. Who is the author? Is this the voice of a storyteller? A journalist? A dreamer? A poet? A political activist? Is the author trying to be funny? Is he or she trying to teach me something?

Lastly, move on to how. How does the author put together this piece of writing? As important as it is to be involved in your own process as a reader, you must also be involved in the writer's process. To expose an article's main idea, you need to focus your interest on finding metaphors and symbols and how they connect with the author's message(s). Even more than that, you need to be interested in the creative process itself and how the author is attempting to communicate his or her message to you.

Don't be afraid to admit there are things you don't know, and don't feel frustrated if you can't answer these questions immediately. After all, you're playing the part of a literary archaeologist here. You're digging to reveal more about the text to yourself. As long as you're asking questions, you're on the right track!

The Author-Reader Relationship

As soon as the reading starts, a relationship between the author and the reader is established. And it is a deeply personal one, for the author doesn't know the reader, and the reader doesn't know the author, at least not personally. In writing a book or an article, the author is sharing a huge piece of himself with readers. Through his own feelings, experiences, and ideas, the writer is communicating some kind of message to a large audience—that means he is attempting to communicate with you. If the author can connect with a wide enough audience, it means he has successfully communicated a theme which produces resonance in many people.

What the Author Wants

All that an author wants is your time and attention so that he or she can tell you something. It's really that simple. However, you may discover that you don't relate at all to what the author is trying to say; you didn't learn anything new or you weren't entertained by the text. If that happens, it's okay. What matters is that you recognize the message. It is irrelevant whether you agree with it or don't relate to it at all. The author is asking for a chance from readers; he's not demanding that

readers accept everything he is saying.

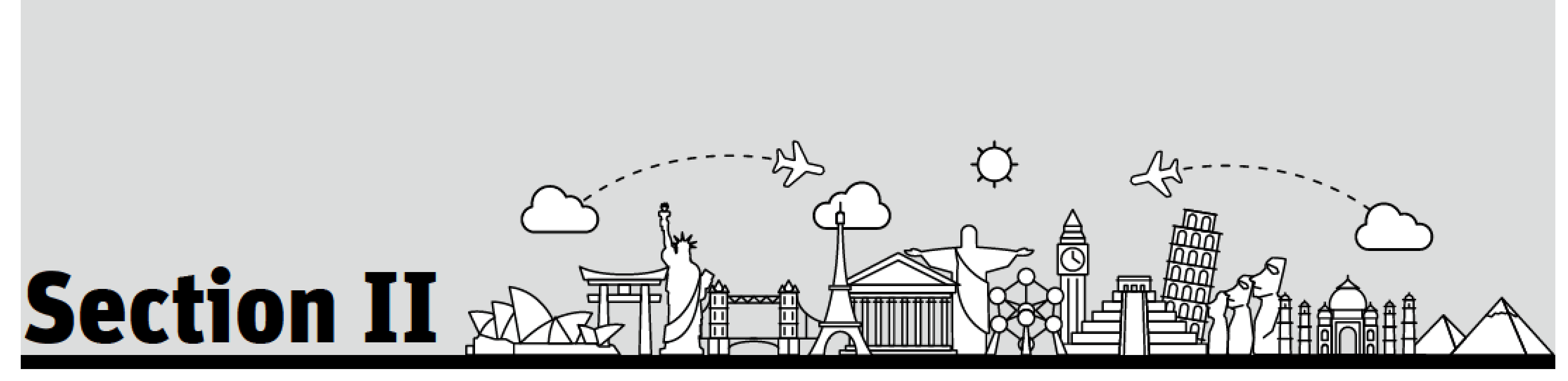
What the Reader Needs

Readers may want to connect with what the author says. They want to gain more insight into themselves, to learn something they didn't know before, or to be entertained. That makes the author-reader relationship a unique partnership.

What links a reader to an author is the piece of writing that's been created for you. Ultimately, the relationship between the reader and the author will be based on how much time, attention, and effort the reader gives to the author's works.

The Least You Need to Know

Critical reading is the ability to take a more in-depth look at a text with the intention of formulating your own opinions and conclusions. To understand an article, you need to first have a grasp of its structure, then to see how the text is organized around the structure to give it depth and complexity. Get to know the author both through his writing and from outside sources such as reviews, book signings, or lectures.



Section II

Text A: The Descent of Man

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **disdainful** [dɪs'deɪnfəl] ***adj.***

disliking something or someone because one thinks they are unimportant or not worth one's attention

synonym	contemptuous; sniffish; scornful
word family	disdain; disdainfulness; disdainfully
related phrase	be disdainful of sth.; a disdainful look

Example 1 He is highly disdainful of anything to do with the literary establishment.

Example 2 Edgar cast a disdainful look at his twin.

② **chivalrous** ['ʃɪvəlrəs] ***adj.***

being polite, kind, and unselfish, especially towards women

synonym	generous; knightly
word family	chivalrousness; chivalric; chivalrously
related phrase	the chivalrous spirit

Example 1 He was handsome, upright, and chivalrous.

Example 2 This chivalrous attitude was not endorsed by their followers in the party.

③ **perplex** [pə'pleks] ***vt.*** **(perplexed/perplexed/perplexing)**

to make someone feel confused and worried because something is difficult to understand

synonym	bepuzzle; confuse
word family	perplexity; perplexing; perplexed; perplexedly
related phrase	perplex sb.; a perplexing problem

Example 1 It perplexed him because he was tackling it the wrong way.

Example 2 Shea's symptoms perplexed the doctors.

④ **antiquated** ['æntɪkweɪtɪd] ***adj.***

being very old or old-fashioned, not suitable for modern needs or conditions

synonym	old; outdated; old-fashioned
antonym	new; updated; new-fashioned

word family antiquate
related phrase antiquated laws; antiquated notions

Example 1 He claims that the laws are antiquated and have no contemporary relevance.

Example 2 They attempted in vain to modernise these antiquated industries.

⑤ **superstition** [ˌsju:pə'stɪʃn] ***n.***

a belief that some objects or actions are lucky or unlucky, or that they cause events to happen, based on old ideas of magic

synonym aberglaube
word family superstitious; superstitiously
related phrase eradicate the superstition

Example 1 There are several possible origins for this superstition.

Example 2 His mind was besotted with fear, ignorance and superstition.

⑥ **avert** [ə'vɜ:t] ***vt.*** **(averted/averted/averting)**

to prevent something unpleasant from happening; to look away from someone or something

synonym avoid; shun; shift
word family avertable; avertible
related phrase avert your eyes/gaze etc.

Example 1 Talks with the teachers' union over the weekend have averted a strike.

Example 2 He avoids any eye contact, quickly averting his gaze when anyone approaches.

⑦ **cache** [kæʃ] ***vt.*** **(cached/cached/caching)**

to hide something in a secret place, especially weapons; to store information in a computer's memory for a short time

synonym conceal; hide
word family caching; cached
related phrase cache the file

Example 1 They cached their sweets in their sleeves.

Example 2 Their primary defense was to cache as much content as they could as static pages.

⑧ **allusion** [ə'lu:ʒən] ***n.***

an indirect reference to someone or something

synonym reference; implication
related phrase with the allusion that …; with the allusion of

Example 1 There has always been an onus on discount window borrowings, with the allusion that banks can't get the short-term funds they need from other banks.

Example 2 With the allusion of impatience, I didn't contact him for further information.

⑨ **fastidious** [fæ'stɪdɪəs] ***adj.***

paying great attention to detail because someone likes everything to be very neat, accurate, and in good order

synonyms	meticulous; particular
word family	fastidiousness; fastidiously
related phrases	be fastidious about personal hygiene; one's fastidious attention to historical detail

Example 1 Everything was planned in fastidious detail.

Example 2 She is too fastidious about her food or clothing.

⑩ **thwart** [θwɔːt] ***vt.*** **(thwarted/thwarted/thwarting)**

to prevent someone from doing or getting what they want

synonym	restrain; defeat; combat
word family	thwarted; thwarting; thwartwise
related phrase	thwart the enemy's conspiracy

Example 1 The security forces were doing all they could to thwart terrorists.

Example 2 He was thwarted in his plans.

⑪ **jib** [dʒɪb] ***vi.*** **(jibbed/jibbed/jibbing)**

to be unwilling to do or accept something

synonym	hesitate; hang off; be reluctant (to)
word family	jib (*n.*); jibbed; jibbing
related phrase	jib at (doing) sth.

Example 1 He jibbed at the price I asked for.

Example 2 The staff would jib at taking a cut in wages.

⑫ **resolute** ['rezəluːt] ***adj.***

being very determined not to change one's mind or not to give up a course of action

synonym	firm; determined; decided
antonym	hesitant; irresolute
word family	resolution; resolutely
related phrase	the resolute opposition; the resolute leadership

Example 1 She remained resolute in her belief that the situation would improve.

Example 2 Voters perceive him as a decisive and resolute international leader.

⑬ **indissoluble** [ˌɪndɪ'sɒljʊbəl] ***adj.***

incapable of being dissolved or broken; permanent

synonym	insoluble; indecomposable; resisting
antonym	dissoluble; soluble
word family	indissolubly

related phrase the indissoluble link between language and culture

Example 1 The Roman Catholic Church regards marriage as indissoluble.

Example 2 Going through the tragedy together forged an indissoluble friendship between them.

⑭ **impregnable** [ɪm'pregnəbəl] ***adj.***

being so strong that something cannot be entered by force; being strong and impossible to change or influence

synonym uninfluenced; impervious; unattackable
antonym pregnable
word family impregnability
related phrase the company's impregnable market position; her impregnable obstinacy

Example 1 The old Dutch fort with its thick high walls looks virtually impregnable.

Example 2 Watches have given up the impregnable position that they were thought to have.

⑮ **wince** [wɪns] ***vi.*** **(winced/winced/wincing)**

(the muscles of the face) to tighten suddenly because someone has felt a pain or because someone has just seen, heard, or remembered something unpleasant

synonym shrink
related phrase wince at the memory/thought/idea

Example 1 Sandra winced as the dentist started to drill.

Example 2 I still wince at the thought of that terrible evening.

⑯ **disgruntled** [dɪs'grʌntld] ***adj.***

being angry and dissatisfied because things have not happened the way that someone wanted them to happen

synonym unpleasant; malcontented; grouchy; dissatisfied
antonym gruntled; pleasant; contented; satisfied
word family disgruntlement; disgruntle
related phrase a disgruntled client

Example 1 Disgruntled employees recently called for his resignation.

Example 2 I left feeling disgruntled at the way I'd been treated.

⑰ **disreputable** [dɪs'repjʊtəbəl] ***adj.***

considered to be dishonest, bad, illegal, etc.

synonym humiliating; notorious
antonym reputable
word family disrepute
related phrase disreputable behaviors; a disreputable neighborhood; the noisiest and most disreputable bars

Example 1 She spent the evening with her disreputable brother Stefan.

Example 2 He had a vaguely disreputable appearance.

⑱ **rudimentary** [ˌruːdɪ'mentərɪ] ***adj.***

being very basic or simple and therefore unsatisfactory, such as equipment, methods, systems etc.; being the simplest and most basic, especially a knowledge or understanding of a subject

synonym	fundamental; underlying
antonym	advanced; sophisticated
word family	rudiment; rudimental
related phrase	subsistence farming in its most rudimentary form; rudimentary knowledge; my rudimentary German

Example 1 The classroom equipment is pretty rudimentary.

Example 2 He had only a rudimentary knowledge of French.

⑲ **enumerate** [ɪ'njuːməreɪt] ***vt.*** **(enumerated/enumerated/enumerating)**

to name a list of things one by one

synonym	itemize; recite; numerate
word family	enumeration; enumerator; enumerable
related phrase	enumerate the facts to someone; enumerate voters

Example 1 Let me enumerate many flaws in your hypothesis.

Example 2 I enumerate the work that will have to be done.

⑳ **ruffle** ['rʌfəl] ***vt./vi.*** **(ruffled/ruffled/ruffling)**

to make a smooth surface uneven; to offend or upset someone slightly

synonym	ripple; disturb; disorder; upset
word family	ruffle (*n.*); ruffled; ruffling
related phrase	ruffle one's feathers

Example 1 A light wind ruffled the water.

Example 2 Louise's sharp comments had ruffled his pride.

㉑ **impute** [ɪm'pjuːt] ***vt.*** **(imputed/imputed/imputing)**

to say that someone is responsible for something or is the cause of something

synonym	attribute; blame
word family	imputation; imputable
related phrase	impute sth. to sb.; impute one's failures to bad luck

Example 1 It is grossly unfair to impute blame to the United Nations.

Example 2 The police were not guilty of the violence imputed to them.

㉒ **mantle** ['mæntl] ***vt./vi.*** **(mantled/mantled/mantling)**

to spread over a surface, like a mantle; to cover like a mantle

synonym	cover

word family mantle (*n.*); mantled; mantling
related phrase be mantled in/with sth.; mantle with/in

Example 1 Snow mantled the hill.

Example 2 Her face mantled with shame.

㉓ call forth

to cause (something) to come into action or existence; to evoke or provoke to appear or occur

synonym call out; evoke
related phrase call forth no response

Example 1 She called forth all her courage.

Example 2 His speech called forth admiration from all the people present.

㉔ by virtue of

because of; as a result of

synonym by means of
related phrase by virtue of hardship/tenacity/power

Example 1 He got the job by virtue of his greater experience.

Example 2 He had won the game by virtue of his strength of will.

㉕ set forth

to explain something (such as a number of facts, beliefs, or arguments, etc.) in writing or speech in a clear, organized way; to start a journey

synonym expound; depart; set off
related phrase set forth one's views; set forth one's reasons; set forth at dawn; set forth with the car

Example 1 Dr. Mesibov set forth the basis of his approach to teaching students.

Example 2 It was during the reign of Queen Isabella that Christopher Columbus set forth on his epic voyage of discovery.

㉖ take for granted

to take to be the case or to be true; to accept without verification or proof

synonym go without saying; of course
related phrase take sth. for granted; take anything for granted; It is taken for granted that ...

Example 1 Don't take for granted how much your parents love you. You're very lucky.

Example 2 It is taken for granted that everyone may make a mistake.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

aegis	anaerobic	anatomical	apache	asexual
baboon	bangle	barbiturate	biochemical	blunder
blunder	boulder	bruiser	bugle	bursar
cairn	calico	cervix	coexist	courtship
criminology	curator	cyst	debonairly	doctorate
dragonfly	dynamically	embryo	embryonic	finale
gatepost	gnaw	grenadier	joist	locomotion
lumbar	molar	nymph	overprice	pancreas
paratrooper	pawnbroker	perpendicular	placenta	pulmonary
quadrant	requiem	reversion	ringlet	rudiment
rundown	shipbuilder	shirk	sidle	slacks
sonar	spasmodic	sulphuric	testes	transposable
truffle	underhand	underpants	uterus	vertebrate
wallflower	yak	zoology		

Part 2 Text

The Descent of Man

The problem of the origin of the human race, of the descent of man, is ranked by Huxley in his epoch-making book *Man's Place in Nature*[1], as the deepest with which biology has to concern itself, "the question of questions"—the problem which underlies all others. In the same brilliant and lucid exposition, which appeared in 1863, soon after the publication of Darwin's *On the Origin of Species*[2], Huxley stated his own views in regard to this great problem. He tells us how the idea of a natural descent of man gradually grew up in his mind. It was especially the assertions of Owen in regard to the total difference between the human and the simian brain that called forth strong dissent from the great anatomist Huxley, and he easily succeeded in showing that Owen's supposed differences had no real existence; he even established, on the basis of his own anatomical investigations, the proposition that the anatomical differences between the Marmoset and the Chimpanzee are much greater than those between the Chimpanzee and Man.

But why do we thus introduce the study of Darwin's *The Descent of Man*, which is to occupy us here, by insisting on the fact that Huxley had taken the field in defence of the descent of man in 1863, while Darwin's book on the subject did not appear till 1871? It is in order that we may clearly understand how it happened that from this time onwards Darwin and Huxley followed the same great aim in the most intimate association.

Huxley and Darwin worked at the same Problema maximum! Huxley, fiery, impetuous, eager for battle, disdainful of the resistance of a dull world, or dynamically triumphing over it. Darwin

calm, weighing every problem slowly, letting it mature thoroughly—not a fighter, yet having the greater and more lasting influence by virtue of his immense mass of critically sifted proofs. Darwin's friend, Huxley, was the first to do him justice, to understand his nature, and to find in it the reason why the detailed and carefully considered book on the descent of man made its appearance so late. Huxley, always chivalrous, never thought of claiming priority for himself. In enthusiastic language he tells how Darwin's immortal work, *On the Origin of Species*, first shed light for him on the problem of the descent of man; the recognition of a vera causa in the transformation of species illuminated his thoughts as with a flash. He was now content to leave what perplexed him, what he could not yet solve, as he says himself "in the mighty hands of Darwin". Happy in the bustle of strife against antiquated and deep-rooted prejudices, against intolerance and superstition, he wielded his sharp weapons on Darwin's behalf; wearing Darwin's armour, he debonairly overthrew adversary after adversary. Darwin spoke of Huxley as his "general agent". Huxley said of himself "I am Darwin's bulldog".

Thus Huxley openly acknowledged that it was Darwin's *On the Origin of Species* that first set the problem of the descent of man in its true light, that made the question of the origin of the human race a pressing one. That this was the logical consequence of his book Darwin himself had long felt. He had been reproached with intentionally shirking the application of his theory to Man. Let us hear what he says on this point in his autobiography: "As soon as I had become, in the year 1837 or 1838, convinced that species were transposable productions, I could not avert the belief that man must come under the same law. "

In a letter written in January, 1860, to the Rev. L. Blomefield, Darwin expressed himself in similar terms: "With respect to man, I am very far from wishing to obtrude my belief; but I thought it underhand to quite cache my opinion."

The brief allusion in *On the Origin of Species* is so far from prominent and so incidental that it was excusable to assume that Darwin had not touched upon the descent of man in this work. It was solely the desire to have his mass of evidence sufficiently complete, solely Darwin's great characteristic of never publishing till he had carefully weighed all aspects of his subject for years, solely, in short, his most fastidious scientific conscience that thwarted him from challenging the world in 1859 with a book in which the theory of the descent of man was fully set forth. Three years, frequently interrupted by ill-health, were needed for the actual writing of the book: the first edition, which appeared in 1871, was followed in 1874 by a much improved second edition, the preparation of which he very reluctantly undertook.

This, briefly, is the history of the work, which, with *On the Origin of Species*, marks an epoch in the history of biological sciences—the work with which the cautious, peace-loving investigator ventured forth from his contemplative life into the arena of strife and unrest, and laid himself open to all the annoyances that deep-rooted belief and prejudice, and the prevailing tendency of scientific thought at the time could devise.

Darwin always jibbed at giving publicity to his views in regard to religion. In a letter to Asa Gray on May 22, 1860, he declares that it is always painful to him to have to enter into discussion of religious problems. He had, he said, no intention of writing atheistically.

Finally, let us cite one characteristic sentence from a letter from Darwin to C. Ridley (on Nov. 28, 1878). A clergyman, Dr. Pusey, asserted that Darwin had written *On the Origin of Species* with

some relation to theology. Darwin wrote emphatically, "Many years ago when I was collecting facts for the *Origin*, my belief in what is called a personal God was as resolute as that of Dr. Pusey himself, and as to the eternity of matter I never troubled myself about such indissoluble questions." The expression "many years ago" refers to the time of his voyage round the world, as has already been pointed out. Darwin meant by this utterance that the views which had gradually developed in his mind in regard to the origin of species were quite compatible with the faith of the Church.

If we consider all these utterances of Darwin in regard to religion and to his outlook on life, we shall see at least so much, that religious reflection could in no way have influenced him in regard to the writing and publishing of his book on The Descent of Man. Darwin had early won for himself freedom of thought, and to this freedom he remained true to the end of his life, impregnable by the customs and opinions of the world around him.

Darwin was thus inwardly fortified and armed against the host of calumnies, accusations, and attacks called forth by the publication of *On the Origin of Species*, and to an even greater extent by the appearance of *The Descent of Man*. But in his defence he could rely on the aid of a band of distinguished auxiliaries of the rarest ability. His faithful confederate, Huxley, was joined by the botanist Hooker, and, after longer resistance, by the famous geologist Lyell, whose "conversion" afforded Darwin peculiar satisfaction. All three took the field with enthusiasm in defence of the natural descent of man. From Wallace, on the other hand, though he shared with him the idea of natural selection, Darwin got no aegis in this matter. Wallace expressed himself in a strange manner. He admitted everything in regard to the morphological descent of man, but maintained, in a mystic way, that something else, something of a spiritual nature must have been added to what man inherited from his animal ancestors. Darwin, whose esteem for Wallace was extraordinarily high, could not understand how he could give utterance to such a mystical view in regard to man; the idea seemed to him so "incredibly strange" that he thought some one else must have added these sentences to Wallace's paper.

Even now there are thinkers who, like Wallace, wince from applying to man the ultimate consequences of the theory of descent. The idea that man is derived from ape-like forms is to them disgruntled and disreputable.

So far I have been depicting the development of Darwin's work on the descent of man. In what follows I shall endeavour to give a condensed survey of the contents of the book.

It must at once be said that the contents of Darwin's work fall into two parts, dealing with entirely different subjects. *The Descent of Man* includes a very detailed investigation in regard to secondary sexual characters in the animal series, and on this investigation Darwin founded a new theory, that of sexual selection. With astonishing patience he gathered together an immense mass of material, and showed, in regard to Arthropods and Vertebrates, the wide distribution of secondary characters, which develop almost exclusively in the male, and which enable him, on the one hand, to get the better of his rivals in the struggle for the female by the greater perfection of his weapons, and on the other hand, to offer greater allurements to the female through the higher development of decorative characters, of song, or of scent-producing glands. The best equipped males will thus crowd out the less well-equipped in the matter of reproduction, and thus the relevant characters will be increased and perfected through sexual selection. It is, of course, a necessary assumption that these secondary sexual characters may be transmitted to the female, although perhaps in

rudimentary form.

As we have said, this story of sexual selection takes up a great deal of space in Darwin's book, and it needs only be considered here in so far as Darwin applied it to the descent of man. To this latter problem the whole of Part I is devoted, while Part III contains a discussion of sexual selection in relation to man, and a general rundown. Part II treats of sexual selection in general, and may be disregarded in our present study. Moreover, many interesting details must necessarily be passed over in what follows, for want of space.

The first part of *The Descent of Man* begins with an enumeration of the proofs of the animal descent of man taken from the structure of the human body. Darwin chiefly emphasises the fact that the human body consists of the same organs and of the same tissues as those of the other mammals; he shows also that man is subject to the same diseases and gnawed by the same parasites as the apes. He further dwells on the general agreement exhibited by young embryonic forms, and he illustrates this by two figures placed one above the other, one representing a human embryo, after Ecker, the other a dog embryo, after Bischoff.

Darwin finds further proofs of the animal origin of man in the reduced structures, in themselves extremely variable, which are either absolutely useless to their possessors, or of so little use that they could never have developed under existing conditions. Of such vestiges he enumerates: the defective development of the panniculus carnosus (muscle of the skin) so widely distributed among mammals, the ear-muscles, the occasional persistence of the animal ear-point in man, the rudimentary nictitating membrane (plica semilunaris) in the human eye, the slight development of the organ of smell, the general hairiness of the human body, the frequently defective development or entire absence of the third molar (the wisdom tooth), the vermiform appendix, the occasional reappearance of a bony canal (foramen supracondyloideum) at the lower end of the humerus, the rudimentary tail of man (the so-called taillessness), and so on. Of these rudimentary structures the occasional occurrence of the animal ear-point in man is most fully discussed. Darwin's attention was called to this interesting structure by the sculptor Woolner. He figures such an case observed in man, and also the head of an alleged orang-foetus, the photograph of which he received from Nitsche.

Darwin's interpretation of Woolner's case as having arisen through a folding over of the free edge of a pointed ear has been fully borne out by my investigations on the external ear. In particular, it was established by these investigations that the human foetus, about the middle of its embryonic life, possesses a pointed ear somewhat similar to that of the monkey genus Macacus. One of Darwin's statements in regard to the head of the orang-foetus must be corrected. A large ear with a point is shown in the photograph, but it can easily be demonstrated—and Deniker has already pointed this out—that the figure is not that of an orang foetus at all, for that form has much smaller ears with no point; nor can it be a gibbon-foetus, as Deniker supposes, for the gibbon ear is also without a point. I myself regard it as that of a Macacus-embryo. But this blunder, which is due to Nitsche, in no way affects the fact recognised by Darwin, that ear-forms showing the point characteristic of the animal ear occur in man with extraordinary frequency.

Finally, there is a discussion of those rudimentary structures which occur only in one sex, such as the rudimentary mammary glands in the male, the vesicula prostatica, which corresponds to the uterus of the female, and others. All these facts tell in favour of the common descent of man

and all other vertebrates. The finale of this section is characteristic: "It is only our natural prejudice, and that arrogance which made our forefathers declare that they were descended from demi-gods, which leads us to demur to this conclusion. But the time will before long come, when it will be thought wonderful that naturalists, who were well acquainted with the comparative structure and development of man, and other mammals, should have believed that each was the work of a separate act of creation."

In the second chapter there is a more detailed discussion, again based upon an extraordinary wealth of facts, of the problem as to the manner in which, and the causes through which, man evolved from a lower form. Precisely the same causes are here suggested for the origin of man, as for the origin of species in general. Variability, which is a necessary assumption in regard to all transformations, occurs in man to a high degree. Moreover, the rapid multiplication of the human race creates conditions which necessitate an energetic struggle for existence, and thus afford scope for the intervention of natural selection. Of the exercise of artificial selection in the human race, there is nothing to be said, unless we cite such cases as the grenadiers of Frederick William I, or the population of ancient Sparta. In the passages already referred to and in those which follow, the transmission of acquired characters, upon which Darwin does not dwell, is taken for granted. In man, direct effects of changed conditions can be demonstrated (for instance in regard to bodily size), and there are also proofs of the influence exerted on his physical constitution by increased use or disuse. Reference is here made to the fact, established by *Forbes*, that the Quechua Indians of the high plateaus of Peru show a striking development of lungs and thorax, as a result of living constantly at high altitudes.

Such special forms of variation as arrests of development (microcephalism) and reversion to lower forms are next discussed. Darwin himself felt that these subjects are so nearly related to the cases mentioned in the first chapter, that many of them might as well have been dealt with there. It seems to me that it would have been better so, for the citation of additional instances of reversion at this place rather ruffles the logical sequence of his ideas as to the conditions which have brought about the evolution of man from lower forms. The instances of reversion here discussed are microcephalism, which Darwin wrongly interpreted as atavistic, supernumerary mammae, supernumerary digits, bicornuate uterus, the development of abnormal muscles, and so on. Brief mention is also made of correlative variations observed in man.

Darwin next discusses the question as to the manner in which man attained to the perpendicular position from the state of a climbing quadruped. Here again he puts the influence of Natural Selection in the first rank. The immediate progenitors of man had to maintain a struggle for existence in which success was to the more intelligent, and to those with social instincts. The hand of these climbing ancestors, which had little skill and served mainly for locomotion, could only undergo further development when some early member of the primate series came to live more on the ground and less among trees.

A bipedal existence thus became possible, and with it the liberation of the hand from locomotion, and the one-sided development of the human foot. The upright position brought about correlated variations in the bodily structure; with the free use of the hand it became possible to manufacture weapons and to use them; and this again resulted in a degeneration of the powerful canine teeth and the jaws, which were then no longer necessary for defence. Above all, however, the intelligence immediately increased, and with it skull and brain. The nakedness of man, and the

absence of a tail (rudimentariness of the tail vertebrae) are next discussed. Darwin is inclined to impute the nakedness of man, not to the action of natural selection on ancestors who originally inhabited a tropical land, but to sexual selection, which, for aesthetic reasons, brought about the loss of the hairy mantling in man, or primarily in woman. An interesting discussion of the loss of the tail, which, however, man shares with the anthropoid apes, some other monkeys and lemurs, forms the conclusion of the almost superabundant material which Darwin worked up in the second chapter. His object was to show that some of the most distinctive human characters are in all probability directly or indirectly due to natural selection.

(Adapted from *Darwin and Modern Science*)

Notes

① ***Man's Place in Nature***

Evidence as to Man's Place in Nature is an 1863 book by Thomas Henry Huxley, in which he gives evidence for the evolution of man and apes from a common ancestor. It was the first book devoted to the topic of human evolution, and discussed much of the anatomical and other evidence. Backed by this evidence, the book proposed to a wide readership that evolution applied as fully to man as to all other life.

② ***On the Origin of Species***

Published on 24 November 1859, it is a work of scientific literature by Charles Darwin which is considered to be the foundation of evolutionary biology. Darwin's book introduced the scientific theory that populations evolve over the course of generations through a process of natural selection. It presented a body of evidence that the diversity of life arisen by common descent through a branching pattern of evolution. Various evolutionary ideas had already been proposed to explain new findings in biology. The book was written for non-specialist readers and attracted widespread interest upon its publication. As Darwin was an eminent scientist, his findings were taken seriously and the evidence he presented generated scientific, philosophical, and religious discussion.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text A the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. foetal
2. reproach
3. invincible
4. abjective
5. contemptuous
6. gallant
7. baffle
8. dissension
9. degradation
10. evade
11. shrink
12. outmoded

Antonyms

1. tolerance
2. mortal
3. honest
4. slovenly
5. aggressive
6. transitoriness
7. heed
8. natural

III. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 9 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. She made a ________ by accepting his marriage proposal after a whirlwind courtship.
   A) bruiser B) boulder C) blunder D) plunder
2. Now it has the ________ of a prefectural-level status after a ruling by the State Council.
   A) cache B) apache C) tache D) mache
3. Six-minute ________ Requiem in Denim and Leopardskin probably comes closest.
   A) bangle B) bugle C) sidle D) finale
4. The cells of this surrounding sheet have become different in some way and they develop into the placenta and the extra ________ tissues.
   A) embryonic B) spasmodic C) sulphuric D) anaerobic
5. So music and underpants are flogged by cricketing names to the Indian market and ________ Hindi is learnt, and tweeted.
   A) visionary B) pulmonary C) sedimentary D) rudimentary
6. I think it's impossible not to ________ when we imagine the painful tearing of the nymphs' tresses.
   A) wince B) mince C) sacrifice D) overprice
7. "That milk ________ was like no other hominid baby tooth I'd ever seen," Cairn announced, his gray-golden ringlets vibrating with emotion.
   A) bursar B) lumbar C) molar D) sonar
8. Michael Ryan, curator of ________ paleontology for the Cleveland Museum of Natural History, published the discovery in this month's *Journal of Paleontology*.
   A) barbiturate B) vertebrate C) doctorate D) juniorate
9. And there were outfits more in line with what's expected from Miller, including plaid slacks and a long calico dress in a wallflower print with a ________ front.

A) ruffle B) truffle C) shuffle D) reshuffle

IV. Cultural Kaleidoscope

Directions: Please choose the most appropriate answer to each statement.

1. The Renaissance did away with the dark domination of ________ in the Middle Ages in Europe.
   A) criminology B) physiology C) zoology D) theology
2. An offshoot of the cecum, the ________ is usually located in the lower right quadrant of the abdomen, near the right hip bone.
   A) cervix B) appendix C) testes D) pancreas
3. ________ is not a kind of mammal.
   A) Ape B) Yak C) Baboon D) Dragonfly
4. Pottery is one of the oldest materials for the works of ________, who often build small preliminary works called maquettes of ephemeral materials such as plaster of Paris, wax, unfired clay, or plasticine.
   A) paratroopers B) pawnbrokers C) sculptors D) shipbuilders
5. The peacock's shimmering train of feathers tipped with eye-shaped spots ranks among the most cited examples of what Darwin called ________ selection.
   A) natural B) sexual C) asexual D) biochemical

V. Rhetoric Appreciation

Directions: A rhetorical device or a figure of speech is a technique that an author or speaker uses to convey to the reader or listener a meaning with the goal of persuading him or her towards considering a topic from a different perspective, using language designed to encourage or evoke an emotional response in the audience. The widely-used rhetorical devices include parallelism, metaphor, repetition, antithesis, simile, quotation, rhetoric question, alliteration, personification, etc. Please identify the rhetorical devices used in the following sentences. And then reread Text A to find out the rhetoric in use as much as you can.

1. ______________
   Darwin chiefly emphasises the fact that the human body consists of the same organs and of the same tissues as those of the other mammals; he shows also that man is subject to the same diseases and gnawed by the same parasites as the apes.
2. ______________
   So far I have been depicting the development of Darwin's work on the descent of man.
3. ______________
   Darwin was thus inwardly fortified and armed against the host of calumnies, accusations, and attacks called forth by the publication of *On the Origin of Species*, and to an even greater extent by the appearance of *The Descent of Man*.
4. ______________
   Let us hear what he says on this point in his autobiography: "As soon as I had become, in the year 1837 or 1838, convinced that species were transposable productions, I could not avert the belief that man must come under the same law."

5. ________________

... the recognition of a vera causa in the transformation of species illuminated his thoughts as with a flash.

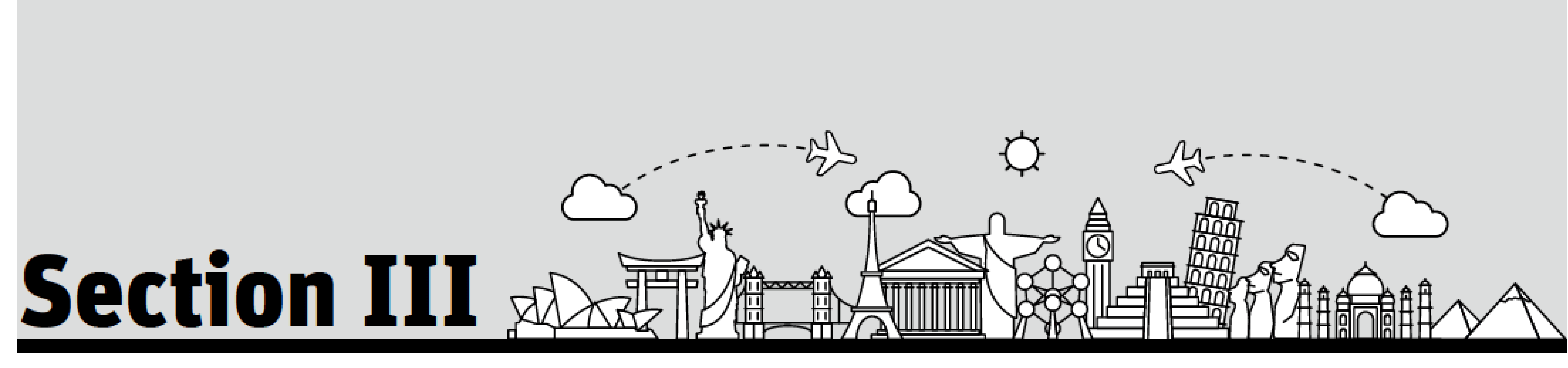
VI. Translation Practice

Directions: Please put the following sentences into Chinese.

1. Thus Huxley openly acknowledged that it was Darwin's *On the Origin of Species* that first set the problem of the descent of man in its true light, that made the question of the origin of the human race a pressing one.
2. This, briefly, is the history of the work, which, with *On the Origin of Species*, marks an epoch in the history of biological sciences—the work with which the cautious, peace-loving investigator ventured forth from his contemplative life into the arena of strife and unrest, and laid himself open to all the annoyances that deep-rooted belief and prejudice, and the prevailing tendency of scientific thought at the time could devise.
3. Even now there are thinkers who, like Wallace, wince from applying to man the ultimate consequences of the theory of descent.
4. Moreover, the rapid multiplication of the human race creates conditions which necessitate an energetic struggle for existence, and thus afford scope for the intervention of natural selection.
5. The upright position brought about correlated variations in the bodily structure; with the free use of the hand it became possible to manufacture weapons and to use them; and this again resulted in a degeneration of the powerful canine teeth and the jaws, which were then no longer necessary for defence.

VII. Writing Workshop

Directions: "Where do people come from? And where is it going?" This is the ultimate question that for thousands of years, and man never stopped asking themselves. So far, there have been no clear answers to the question but only a variety of theories, represented by creationism, evolution and extraterrestrial theory. The controversy over the origins of man is far from over. Supporters of the three theories, to date, haven't been able to prove their correctness by giving the evidence convincing all the people, especially the dissidents. Therefore, the origin of human beings is still a mystery. So what do you think about it? Please write down your opinions about human origins.



Section III

Text B: Geological Observations on Volcanic Islands

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **malleable** ['mælɪəbəl] ***adj.***

being easily influenced or controlled by other people; being soft and can easily be made into different shapes

synonym pliable; mouldable

antonym immalleable

word family malleability

related phrase a malleable child; malleable steel

Example 1 She was young enough to be malleable.

Example 2 Silver is the most malleable of all metals.

② **sporadic** [spə'rædɪk] ***adj.***

happening at irregular intervals

synonym intermittent

word family sporadically

related phrase a year of sporadic fighting in the north of the country

Example 1 The sound of sporadic shooting could still be heard.

Example 2 A British newspaper journalist in the city told the BBC he had heard sporadic explosions and automatic gunfire during the day.

③ **polygon** ['pɒlɪg(ə)n] ***n.***

a flat shape with three or more sides

word family polygonal

related phrase the regular polygon

Example 1 What is the perimeter of this polygon?

Example 2 He conceived the first proof that the 17-sided polygon is constructible.

④ **limestone** ['laɪmstəun] ***n.***

a whitish-coloured rock which is used for building and for making cement

word family limewater; limelight; limewash

related phrase high limestone cliffs; the limestone caves

Example 1 Cement is made from limestone.

Example 2 The boat was tied up alongside a crumbling limestone jetty.

⑤ **opaque** [əʊ'peɪk] ***adj.***

cannot see through something, such as glass or liquid etc.; being difficult to understand

synonym non-transparent; obscure
antonym transparent; pellucid; clear
word family opaqueness; opaquely
related phrase a shower with an opaque glass door; an opaque style of writing

Example 1 You can always use opaque glass if you need to block a street view.

Example 2 We are confused about the opaque language of the inspector's reports.

⑥ **mottle** ['mɒt(ə)l] ***vt.*** **(mottled/mottled/mottling)**

to colour with streaks or blotches of different shades

synonym spot; taint
word family mottle (*n.*); mottled; mottling
related phrase be mottled with white spots

Example 1 The windscreen was mottled with rain.

Example 2 His face was mottled red and white with embarrassment.

⑦ **mesmerize** ['mezməraɪz] ***vt.*** **(mesmerized/mesmerized/mesmerizing)**

to take an interest in something, or so attracted to something that one cannot think about anything else

synonym rivet
word family mesmerism; mesmerist; mesmerized; mesmeric
related phrase be mesmerized by; mesmerize sb./sth.

Example 1 The first time I saw Diana I was mesmerized by her beauty.

Example 2 He could mesmerize the audiences by the sheer force of his presence.

⑧ **intransigent** [ɪn'trænsɪdʒənt] ***adj.***

refusing to behave differently or to change one's attitude to something

synonym adamant; adamantine; inexorable; uncompromising; no-compromise
antonym transigent; exorable
word family intransigence; intransigency; intransigent (*n.*)
related phrase an intransigent attitude; Sami's opinionated and intransigent father

Example 1 They put pressure on the Government to change its intransigent stance.

Example 2 The worry is that the radicals will grow more intransigent.

⑨ **simmer** ['sɪmə] ***vt./vi.*** **(simmered/simmered/simmering)**

to cook something by keeping it at boiling point or just below boiling point; do not actually happen for a period of time, but eventually build up to the point where something does

synonym stew

word family simmer (*n.*); simmered; simmering

related phrase simmer meat/water; simmer for a few minutes; simmer with rage; simmer down

Example 1 Bring the soup to the boil and allow it to simmer gently for about half an hour.

Example 2 He was simmering with anger.

⑩ **vaulted** ['vɔ:ltɪd] ***adj.***

having a hemispherical vault or dome

synonym archy; arcuate; domed

word family vaulter; vaulting; vault (*n.&v.*)

related phrase the vaulted ceiling/roof etc.

Example 1 This large museum has long rooms with curved or vaulted ceilings.

Example 2 Beijing South Station is shaped like a flying saucer, with its silvery vaulted ceiling illuminated by skylights.

⑪ **turpentine** ['tɜ:pəntaɪn] ***n.***

a colourless liquid used, for example, for cleaning paint off brushes

synonym terebinth

word family turpentine (*v.*)

related phrase the turpentine oil

Example 1 This article reviews the utilization of turpentine.

Example 2 Turpentine can be used in medicine.

⑫ **translucent** [trænz'lu:sənt] ***adj.***

having a glowing appearance, as if light is passing through

synonym semitransparent

word family translucence; translucency

related phrase translucent paper; the translucent surface; the translucent rubber

Example 1 The building is roofed entirely with translucent corrugated plastic.

Example 2 Blue veins showed through her translucent skin.

⑬ **douse** [daʊs] ***vt./vi.*** **(doused/doused/dousing)**

to stop something from burning by pouring a lot of water over it; to throw a lot of liquid over someone or something; to plunge or be plunged into water or some other liquid; to duck

synonym duck; soak; splash; dip in;

word family douse (*n.*)

related phrase douse sb./sth. with/in sth.

Example 1 The pumps were started and the crew began to douse the fire with water.

Example 2 Mother doused the clothes in soapy water.

⑭ **precipice** ['presɪpɪs] ***n.***

a very steep cliff on a mountain; a dangerous situation in which someone is extremely close to disaster or failure

synonym steep; escarpment; krantz
related phrase on the edge of a precipice

Example 1 A loose rock tumbled over the precipice.

Example 2 The king now stands on the brink of a political precipice.

⑮ **waney** ['weɪnɪ] ***adj.***

being not complete or whole, lack of part of something; becoming gradually weaker or less, often so that something eventually disappears

synonym rugged
word family wane (*n.*&*v.*)
related phrase the waney edges; the waney lumber

Example 1 She felt lonely and suffered from homesick when she saw the waney moon.

Example 2 Her enthusiasm for the project was becoming waney.

⑯ **embroil** [ɪm'brɒɪl] ***vt.*** **(embroiled/embroiled/embroiling)**

to get someone or something deeply involved in something

synonym mingle; engage; involve
word family embroilment
related phrase embroil sb./sth. in sth; get embroiled in sth.; a history embroiled with legend

Example 1 I became embroiled in an argument with the taxi driver.

Example 2 Any hostilities could result in reprisal and further embroil U.N. troops in fighting.

⑰ **knead** [ni:d] ***vt.*** **(kneaded/kneaded/kneading)**

to press and squeeze something with one's hands so that it becomes smooth and ready to bake; to press or squeeze someone's body with the fingers

synonym massage; rub down
word family kneading; kneader
related phrase knead a dough; knead one's body

Example 1 Lightly knead the mixture on a floured surface for three minutes.

Example 2 Having been long sitting there, I have to knead the lame muscles of my legs.

⑱ **blanch** [blɑːn(t)ʃ] ***n.***

a kind of soft, grey, heavy metal

word family	blanch (*adj.*&*v.*)
related phrase	a large storage of blanch

Example 1 The area is very rich in blanch.

Example 2 How many tons of blanch can this machine crush in an hour?

⑲ **adhesive** [əd'hiːzɪv] ***adj.***

being able to stick firmly to something else

synonym	gluey
antonym	inadhesive
word family	adhesive (*n.*); adhesion; adhesiveness; adhesively
related phrase	the adhesive tape; the adhesive capacity; the adhesive bandage

Example 1 He also invented the adhesive postage stamp.

Example 2 That firm aims to develop an adhesive polymer that could stop vehicles in their tracks, without harming its occupants.

⑳ **dabble** ['dæbəl] ***vt./vi.*** **(dabbled/dabbled/dabbling)**

to work with in an amateurish manner; to dip a foot or hand briefly into a liquid; to play in or as if in water, as of small children

synonym	smatter; paddle; dip
word family	dabbler; dabbling; dabbled
related phrase	dabble in/at/with sth.; dabble sth. in sth.; be dabbled with/in sth.

Example 1 He dabbled in business.

Example 2 The children are dabbling their feet in the sea.

㉑ **topography** [tə'pɒgrəfɪ] ***n.***

the study and description of the physical features of an area, for example, its hills, valleys, or rivers, or the representation of these features on maps; the physical shape of *a particular area, including its hills, valleys, and rivers*

synonym	terrain
word family	topographer; topographic; topographical; topographically
related phrase	a map showing the topography of the island

Example 1 Parameters of surface topography are presented, including arithmetic mean deviation, root-mean-square (RMS) deviation, maximum height and so on.

Example 2 He carefully examined the surface topography, exposing a secret that had lain beneath the earth's surface for 60 million years.

㉒ expulsion [ɪk'spʌlʃən] *n.*

the act of forcing someone to leave a place; the act of stopping someone from going to the school where someone was studying or from being part of the organization where someone worked; the act of forcing air, water, gas etc. out of something

synonym ouster; exclusion

word family expulsive; expulse

related phrase the expulsion order; the expulsion of the protesters; his expulsion from the Soviet Union in 1964; the expulsion of dust from the volcano

Example 1 The headmaster threatened the boys with expulsion.

Example 2 These events led to the expulsion of senior diplomats from the country.

㉓ fallibly ['fæləbli] *adv.*

being likely to make mistakes or be wrong

synonym wrongly

antonym infallibly

word family fallibility; fallible

related phrase fallibly carry out a task

Example 1 These surveys often fallibly guide public opinion.

Example 2 They are only human and fallibly make decisions.

㉔ have… to do with

to be a matter or subject that someone has reasons to know about or be involved with; to have connections or influences with someone or something

synonym be connected with; be concerned in; be correlated with; have relation to; be related to

related phrase have nothing to do with sth.; have something to do with sth.; have more/less to do with sth.

Example 1 What does it have to do with you?

Example 2 As children develop, some of the most important things they learn have to do with their sense of self.

㉕ with a view to

with the aim of doing something

synonym with a view of

related phrase with a view to doing sth.

Example 1 The authors without doubt overstated their case with a view to catching the public's attention.

Example 2 We have made approaches to them with a view to forming a business partnership.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

affluence	acetylcholine	aground	alabaster	Antarctica
antenatal	antiquity	arrowhead	askew	auburn
babble	bagpipe	barefoot	bedspread	bibliography
bile	blindfold	bronchial	cheekbone	chintz
chromatography	circuitry	cistern	clammy	crater
crystalline	cylindrical	dollop	dysentery	effluent
embezzle	etch	ether	fieldwork	filament
flagstone	freckle	geological	gradation	gravestone
gypsum	hairline	heartland	invade	insulin
interlock	ironmonger	Kaiser	kerosene	keystone
lava	leper	lichen	ligand	limelight
liqueur	lithium	livery	lustre	marten
menstrual	moorland	nodule	overlay	pallor
patchwork	permutate	piecemeal	pillowcase	pliable
prescriptive	quartet	quartz	radial	reassemble
reconstitute	reprisal	rupee	shamrock	shank
sine	skyline	soiled	staffroom	stanza
stomp	swab	swatch	swig	syntactic
tabulate	taint	tandem	tankard	teal
thence	trademark	transvestite	tubular	turnstile
twin	twirl	unadulterated	utensil	wafer
wager	watchmaker	wavy	welt	windpipe

Part 2 Text

Geological Observations on Volcanic Islands

Mineralogical Description of the Rocks of the Lowest Series

These rocks, perpendicular or tabulate possess an extremely varying character; they consist of black, brown, and grey, compact, basaltic bases, with numerous crystals of augite, hornblende, olivine, mica, and sometimes glassy feldspar. A common variety is almost entirely composed of crystals of augite with olivine. Mica, it is known, seldom occurs where augite abounds; nor probably does the present case offer a real exception, for the mica (at least in my best characterised specimen, in which one nodule of this mineral is nearly half an inch in length) is as perfectly rounded as a pebble in a conglomerate, and evidently has not been crystallised in the base, in which it is now enclosed, but has proceeded from the fusion of some piecemeal pre-existing rock. These compact lavas alternate with tuffs, amygdaloids, and wacke, and in some places with coarse conglomerate. Some of the argillaceous wackes are of a dark green colour, others, pale yellowish-green, and others nearly white; I was surprised to find that some of the latter varieties, even where whitest, fused into a jet black enamel, whilst some of the green varieties afforded only a pale gray bead. Numerous

dikes, consisting chiefly of highly compact augitic rocks, and of gray amygdaloidal varieties, intersect the strata, which have in several places been dislocated with considerable violence, and thrown into highly inclined positions. One line of disturbance crosses the northern end of Quail Island[1], and can be followed to the moorland. These disturbances took place before the deposition of the recent sedimentary bed; and the surface, also, had previously been denuded to a great extent, as is shown by many truncated dikes.

Effects Produced by the Flowing of the Superincumbent Basaltic Lava over the Calcareous Deposit

These effects are very curious. The calcareous matter is altered to the depth of about a foot beneath the line of junction; and a most perfect gradation can be traced, from loosely aggregated, small, particles of shells, corallines, and Nulliporae, into a rock, in which not a trace of mechanical origin can be discovered, even with a microscope. Where the malleable trait (metamorphic change) has been greatest, two varieties occur. The first is a hard, compact, white, fine-grained rock, striped with a few parallel lines of black volcanic particles, and resembling a sandstone, but which, upon close examination, is seen to be crystallised throughout, with the cleavages so perfect that they can be readily measured by the reflecting goniometer. In specimens, where the change has been less complete, when moistened and examined under a strong lens, the most interesting gradation can be traced, some of the rounded sporadic particles retaining their proper forms, and others insensibly melting into the granulo-crystalline paste of polygon. The etched surface of this stone, as is so frequently the case with ordinary limestones, assumes a brick-red colour.

The second metamorphosed variety is likewise a hard and askew rock, but without any crystalline structure. It consists of a white, opaque, compact, calcareous stone, thickly mottled with rounded, though regular, freckles of a soft, earthy, ochraceous substance. This earthy matter is of a pale yellowish-brown colour, and appears to be a mixture of carbonate of lime with iron; it effervesces with acids, is infusible, but blackens under the blowpipe, and becomes magnetic. The rounded form of the minute patches of earthy substance, and the steps in the progress of their perfect formation, which can be followed in a suit of specimens, clearly show that they are due either to some power of aggregation in the earthy particles amongst themselves, or more probably to a strong attraction between the atoms of the carbonate of line, and consequently to the segregation of the earthy extraneous matter. I was much mesmerised by this fact, because I have often seen quartz rocks, with luster in a precisely analogous manner, with little spots of a white, earthy substance (earthy feldspar); and these rocks, there was good reason to suppose, had undergone the action of heat—a view which thus receives confirmation. This spotted structure may possibly afford some indication in distinguishing those patchwork of quartz, which owe their present structure to igneous action, from those produced by the agency of water alone; a source of doubt, which I should think from my own experience, that most intransigent geologists, when examining arenaceo-quartzose in their fieldwork districts must have experienced.

The lowest and most scoriaceous part of the lava, in rolling over the sedimentary deposit at the bottom of the sea, has caught up large quantities of calcareous matter, which now forms a snow-white, highly crystalline basis to a breccia, including small pieces of black, glossy scoriae. A little above this, where the lime is less abundant, and the lava more compact, numerous little balls, composed of spicula of calcareous spar, radiating from common centres, occupy the interstices.

I have already observed that the sea must have been shallow in which the calcareous deposit was accumulated. In this case, therefore, the carbonic acid gas has been retained under a pressure, insignificant compared with that originally supposed by Sir James Hall[2] to be requisite for this end: but since his prescriptive experiments, it has been discovered that pressure has less to do with the retention of carbonic acid gas, than the nature of the circumjacent atmosphere; and thence, as is stated to be the case by Mr. Faraday, masses of limestone are sometimes fused in radial form and reconstituted into crystallised substance even in common limekilns. Carbonate of lime can be heated to almost any degree, according to Faraday, in an atmosphere of carbonic acid gas, without being decomposed; and Gay-Lussac[3] found that fragments of limestone, placed in a tubular utensil and heated to a degree by simmering, not sufficient by itself to cause their decomposition, yet immediately evolved their carbonic acid, when a stream of common air or steam was passed over them: Gay-Lussac attributes this to the mechanical displacement of the nascent carbonic acid gas. The calcareous matter beneath the lava, and especially that forming the crystalline spicula between the interstices of the scoriae, although heated in an atmosphere probably composed chiefly of steam, could not have been subjected to the effects of a passing stream; and hence it is, perhaps, that they have retained their carbonic acid, under a small amount of pressure.

The fragments of scoriae, embedded in the crystalline calcareous basis, are of a jet black colour, with a glossy fracture like vaulted pitchstone which is connected with turpentine. Their surfaces, however, are coated with a layer of a reddish-orange, translucent substance, which can easily be scratched with a knife; hence they appear as if overlaid by a thin layer of rosin. Some of the smaller fragments are partially changed throughout into this substance: a change which appears quite different from ordinary decomposition. At the Galapagos Archipelago (as will be described in a future chapter), great beds are formed of volcanic ashes and particles of scoriae, which have undergone a closely similar change.

The Extent and Horizontality of the Calcareous Stratum

Under Signal Post Hill, the white stratum douses into the wavy sea in a remarkable manner. This hill is conical, 450 feet in height, and retains some traces of having had a crateriform structure; it is composed chiefly of matter erupted posteriorly to the elevation of the great basaltic plain, but partly of lava of apparently submarine origin and of considerable antiquity. The surrounding plain, as well as the eastern flank of this hill, has been worn into steep precipices, overhanging the sea. In these precipices, the white calcareous stratum may be seen, at the height of about seventy feet above the beach, running for some miles both northward and southward of the hill, in a line appearing to be perfectly horizontal; but for a space of a quarter of a mile directly under the hill, it dips into the sea and disappears. On the south side the dip is gradual, on the north side it is more abrupt. As neither the calcareous stratum, nor the superincumbent basaltic lava, appears to thicken as it dips, I infer that these strata were not originally accumulated in a trough, the heartland of which afterwards became a point of eruption; but that they have subsequently been disturbed and bent. We may suppose either that Signal Post Hill subsided after its elevation with the surrounding country, or that it never was uplifted to the same height with it. This latter seems to me the most probable alternative, for during the slow and equable elevation of this portion of the island, the subterranean motive power, from expending part of its force in repeatedly erupting volcanic matter from beneath this point, would, it is likely, have less force to uplift it. Something of the same kind seems to have occurred near Red Hill, for when tracing upwards the naked streams of lava from near Porto Praya towards the interior of the

island, I was strongly induced to suspect, that since the lava had flowed, the slope of the land had been slightly modified, either by a small subsidence near Red Hill, or by that portion of the plain having been uplifted to a less height during the elevation of the whole area.

Volcanic Eruptions Subsequent to the Elevation of the Coastland; the Ejected Matter Associated with Earthy Lime

These recent lavas have proceeded from those scattered, conical, reddish-coloured hills, which rise abruptly from the plain-country near the coast. I ascended some of them, but will describe only one, namely, Red Hill, which may serve as a type of its class, and is remarkable in some especial respects. Its height is about six hundred feet; it is composed of bright red, highly scoriaceous rock of a basaltic nature; on one side of its summit there is a hollow, probably the last remnant of a waneycrater. Several of the other hills of this class, judging from their external forms, are surmounted by much more perfect craters. When sailing along the coast, it was evident that a considerable body of lava had flowed from Red Hill, over a line of cliff about one hundred and twenty feet in height, into the sea: this line of arrowhead cliff is continuous with that forming the coast, and bounding the plain on both sides of this hill; these streams, therefore, were erupted, after the formation of the coast-cliffs, from Red Hill, when it must have stood, as it now does, above the level of the sea. This conclusion accords with the highly scoriaceous condition of all the rock on it, appearing to be of (subaerial) formation that is aground: and this is important, as there are some beds of calcareous matter near its summit, which might, at a blindfold glance, have been mistaken for a submarine deposit. These beds consist of white, earthy, carbonate of lime, extremely friable so as to be crushed with the least pressure; the most compact specimens not resisting the strength of the fingers. Some of the masses are as white as quicklime, and appear absolutely unadulterated; but on examining them with a lens, minute particles of scoriae can always be seen, and I could find none which, when dissolved in acids, did not leave a residue of this nature. It is, moreover, difficult to find a particle of the lime which does not change colour under the blowpipe, most of them even becoming glazed. The scoriaceous fragments and the calcareous matter are associated in the most irregular manner, sometimes in obscure beds, but more generally as a confused breccia, the lime in some parts and the scoriae in others being most abundant. Sir H. De la Beche has been so kind as to have some of the purest specimens analysed, with a view to discover, considering their volcanic origin, whether they contained much magnesia; but only a small portion was found, such as is present in most limestones.

Fragments of the scoriae embedded in the calcareous dollop, when broken, exhibit many of their cells lined and partly filled with a white, delicate, excessively fragile, lichen-like, or rather conferva-like, reticulation of carbonate of lime. These fibres, examined under a lens of one-tenth of an inch focal distance, appear cylindrical; they are rather above one-thousandth of an inch in diameter; they are either simply branched, or more commonly united into an irregular mass of network, with the meshes of very unequal sizes and of unequal numbers of sides. Some of the fibres are thickly covered with extremely minute spicula, occasionally aggregated into little tuffs; and hence they have a hairy appearance. These spicula are of the same diameter throughout their length; they are easily detached, so that the object-glass of the microscope soon becomes scattered over with them. Within the cells of many fragments of the scoria, the lime exhibits this fibrous structure, but generally in a less perfect degree. These cells do not appear to be connected with one another. There can be no doubt, as will presently be shown, that the lime was erupted, embroiled with the

effluent lava in its fluid state, and therefore I have thought it worth while to describe minutely this curious fibrous structure, of which I know nothing analogous. From the earthy condition of the fibres, this structure does not appear to be related to crystallisation.

Other fragments or flagstones of the scoriaceous rock from this hill, when broken, are often seen marked with short and irregular white streaks, which are owing to a row of separate cells being partly, or quite, filled with white calcareous powder. This structure immediately reminded me of the appearance in badly kneaded dough, of balls and drawn-out streaks of flour, which have remained unmixed with the paste; and I cannot doubt that small masses of the lime, in the same manner remaining unmixed with the fluid lava, have been drawn out when the whole was in motion. I carefully examined, by trituration and solution in acids, pieces of the scoriae, taken from within half-an-inch of those cells which were filled with the calcareous powder, and they did not contain an atom of free lime. It is obvious that the lava and lime have on a large scale been very imperfectly mingled; and where small portions of the lime have been entangled within a piece of the viscid lava, the cause of their now occupying, in the form of a powder or of a fibrous reticulation, the vesicular cavities, is, I think, evidently due to the confined gases having most readily expanded at the points where the incoherent lime rendered the lava less adhesive.

A mile eastward of the town of Praya, there is a steep-sided gorge, about one hundred and fifty yards in width, cutting through the basaltic plain and underlying beds, but since filled up by a stream of more modern lava. This lava is dark grey, and in most parts compact and rudely columnar; but at a little distance from the coast, it includes in an irregular manner a brecciated mass of red scoriae mingled with a considerable quantity of white, friable, and in some parts, nearly pure earthy lime, like that on the summit of Red Hill. This lava, with its entangled lime, has certainly flowed in the form of a regular stream; and, judging from the shape of the gorge, towards which the drainage of the country (feeble though it now be) still is directed, and from the appearance of the bed of loose water-worn blocks with their interstices unfilled, like those in the bed of a torrent, on which the lava rests, we may conclude that the stream was of subaerial origin. I was unable to trace it to its source, but, from its direction, it seemed to have come from Signal Post Hill, distant one mile and a quarter, which, like Red Hill, has been a point of eruption subsequent to the elevation of the great basaltic plain. It accords with this view, that I found on Signal Post Hill, a mass of earthy, calcareous matter of the same nature, mingled with scoriae. I may here observe that part of the calcareous matter forming the horizontal sedimentary bed, especially the finer matter with which the embedded fragments of rock are blanched, has probably been derived from similar volcanic eruptions, as well as from triturated organic remains: the underlying, ancient, crystalline rocks, also, are associated with much carbonate of lime, filling amygdaloidal cavities, and forming irregular masses, the nature of which latter I was unable to understand.

Considering the affluence of earthy lime near the summit of Red Hill, a volcanic cone six hundred feet in height, of subaerial growth—considering the intimate manner in which minute particles and large masses of scoriae are embedded in the masses of nearly pure lime, and on the other hand, the manner in which small kernels and streaks of the calcareous powder are included in solid pieces of the scoriae—considering, also, the similar occurrence of lime and scoriae within a filament of lava, also supposed, with good reason, to have been of modern subaerial origin, and to have flowed from a hill where earthy lime also occurs: I think, considering these facts, there can be no doubt that the lime has been erupted, mingled with the molten lava. I am not aware that any

similar case has been described: It appears to me an interesting one, inasmuch as most geologists must have speculated on the probable effects of a volcanic focus, bursting through deep-seated beds of different mineralogical composition. The great abundance of free silex in the trachytes of some countries, perhaps solves the inquiry with respect to deep-seated beds of quartz; and we probably here see it answered, where the volcanic action has invaded subjacent masses of limestone. One is naturally led to conjecture in what state the now earthy carbonate of lime existed, when ejected with the intensely heated lava: from the extreme cellularity of the scoriae on Red Hill, the pressure cannot have been great, and as most volcanic eruptions are accompanied by the emission of large quantities of steam and other gases, we here have the most favourable conditions, according to the views at present entertained by chemists dabbling in geography and topography, for the expulsion of the carbonic acid. (Whilst deep beneath the surface, the carbonate of lime was, I presume, in a fluid state. Hutton, it is known, thought that all amygdaloids were produced by drops of molten limestone floating in the trap, like oil in water: this no doubt is erroneous, but if the matter forming the summit of Red Hill had been cooled under the pressure of a moderately deep sea, or within the walls of a dike, we should, in all probability, have had a trap rock associated with large masses of compact, crystalline, calcareous spar, which, according to the views entertained by many geologists, would have been fallibly attributed to subsequent infiltration.) Has the slow re-absorption of this gas, it may be asked, given to the lime in the cells of the lava, that peculiar fibrous structure, like that of an efflorescing salt? Finally, I may remark on the great contrast in appearance between this earthy lime, which must have been heated in a free atmosphere of steam and other gases, while the white, crystalline, calcareous spar, produced by a single thin sheet of lava, sometimes as thin as a wafer, (as at Quail Island) rolling over similar earthy lime and the debris of clammy organic remains, at the bottom of a shallow sea.

(Adapted from *The Works of Charles Darwin*)

Notes

① Quail Island

Also known as Ilhéu de Santa Maria, it is a small uninhabited tiny islet of the Sotavento archipelago in Cape Verde located south of the Santiago. Like all Cape Verdean islands, the islet is of volcanic origin. The islet has an area of roughly 0.05 km^2 and is 420 meters long and 130 meters wide; it is situated in front of Praia da Gamboa and forms a part of the city of Praia since 1975; it is due south of the city center and is inside the harbor. Until the early 2010s, it was separated by about 120 meters from the beach, and know it separates nearly 250 meters from the beach.

② Sir James Hall

Sir James Hall of Dunglass, 4th Baronet FRS FRSE (January 17, 1761–June 23, 1832) was a Scottish geologist and geophysicist, born at Dunglass, East Lothian, to Sir John Hall, 3rd Baronet (died 1776), by his spouse, Magdalen (died 1763) daughter of Sir Robert Pringle, 3rd Baronet, of Stichill, Roxburghshire. Sir James was also Member of Parliament for St. Michael's borough (Mitchell, Cornwall) 1807–1812.

③ Gay-Lussac

Joseph Louis Gay-Lussac (December 6, 1778–May 9, 1850) was a French chemist and physicist. He is known mostly for his discovery that water is made of two parts hydrogen and one part oxygen (with Alexander von Humboldt), for two laws related to gases, and for his work on alcohol-water mixtures, which led to the degrees Gay-Lussac used to measure alcoholic beverages in many countries.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Sentence Practice

Directions: Please rewrite the sentences with the proper forms of the given words.

malleable	moorland	freckle	nodule	lustre
crystalline	mottle	reversion	adhesion	tabulate

1. The moment that sensors detect a hairline crack anywhere in the aircraft, microscopic nano-capsules containing a high-tech substance to stick things together would be released to seal the fissure.
2. He bought the game from Darrow, and rewrote the rules in his trademark transparent English.
3. Wavy, ribbon and curly grain is byproducts of spiral grain that switches itself periodically as a tree grows to produce a thing called interlocked grain.
4. They are mixed with animal glue and ox bile to make the shine stay.
5. First you arrange in columns all the permutations and combinations of transactions that can be potentially processed in a test environment.
6. The symptoms include tenderness in the thyroid area, ear or jaw pain, difficulty or discomfort swallowing, a tickling feeling in the throat and shortness of breath with exertion because the thyroid lump may be compressing the windpipe.
7. A marten lies dead—shot by a mystery stalker in the cold, misty dawn of a wild valley.
8. The beer soaked the bedspread covered with streaks and spots as the tankard fell to the auburn pillowcase.
9. Due to acute dysentery, Rosa, a redheaded girl with ephelides across her cheekbones, exhibited extreme pallor.
10. With its pliable and concise syntactic structure, and its advanced dynamic capabilities, Groovy is an ideal choice for implementing internal Domain-Specific Languages.

III. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text B the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. gradual
2. dispersive
3. site
4. wry
5. vertical
6. farrago
7. crystalline
8. vessel
9. centre
10. lukewarm
11. mass
12. entangled
13. exclusion
14. moss-like
15. wealth

Antonyms

1. transparent
2. compromising
3. significant
4. exterior
5. descend
6. correct
7. bottom
8. deep
9. tainted
10. withdrawal

IV. Phrase Practice

Directions: Please translate the following verb+noun collocations into Chinese.

1. occupy a seat
2. occupy the enemy's capital
3. occupy an important position
4. surmount the language barrier
5. surmount the pyramids
6. remind me to buy a bottle of liqueur
7. remind her of shamrocks
8. undergo many changes
9. undergo much suffering
10. undergo the test
11. retain one's balance
12. retain the flood water
13. render all possible help
14. render good for evil
15. render English into Chinese

V. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 16 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. Two things attracted him to the brand: It claimed to be Switzerland's oldest watchmaker and it had missed out on the technological revolution of _____ timers powered by batteries.
   A) quark B) quartz C) quartet D) quarter
2. The teals _____ in the stream.
   A) babbled B) dabbled C) embezzled D) reassembled
3. Lithographic tools for transferring lilliputian circuitry onto a _____ cost up to 50 million rupees a pop.
   A) wafer B) wager C) leper D) ether

4. These Antarctica cryptoendoliths are a type of _____ whose very name translates as "hiding inside rocks".
   A) ligand B) lithium C) livery D) lichen
5. The Kaiser died in 1740 and was interred in the royal _____.
   A) malt B) welt C) vault D) fault
6. For paint stains on the surface of chintz and silk fabrics, wipe it off with kerosene or _____ oil before washing.
   A) turnstile B) turpentine C) palatine D) acetylcholine
7. Alabaster is a kind of dense _____, white or tinted fine-grained gypsum.
   A) translucent B) transvestite C) transitory D) transferable
8. The cistern is _____ with ceramic tiles.
   A) overlay B) overlaid C) underlay D) underlaid
9. Unlike the flat _____ tubes of traditional needles, two serrated shanks form their needle's exterior, while a central shaft slides between.
   A) bronchial B) menstrual C) antenatal D) cylindrical
10. The new insulin products have been _____ in controversy.
    A) soiled B) subsoiled C) embroiled D) stenciled
11. Nevertheless, I'll fix it in my mind how you held my hand, when I was traipsing, barefoot, on the _____ walkway touched with hints of emerald moss.
    A) gravestone B) keystone C) flagstone D) touchstone
12. Twisting threads travel in tandem or are spun a _____ even greater strength.
    A) twirl B) twine C) sine D) skyline
13. It has been a(n) _____ for ironmongers, who are vying for the world's largest building market.
    A) bonanza B) stanza C) organza D) extravaganza
14. The track opens with understated stomps and drums, but eventually bursts into a _____ of piano, bagpipes and guitar.
    A) swab B) swig C) swarm D) swatch
15. In the staffroom, there is a map of the _____ of the coastline indicating a significant loss of wetlands.
    A) chromatography B) ethnography C) bibliography D) topography
16. When flamingo droppings fall on the paintwork, the acid begins to burn and _____ the paint. The longer the droppings remain, the greater the damage.
    A) etch B) leech C) blotch D) paunch

VI. Proofreading

Directions: Please identify and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

1. All localities and departments must proceed with their actual conditions and take effective measures to attain the objectives.
2. She contributes her great age to carefully planned diet.
3. To carry out the four modernizations is in accord of the general aspiration of the people.
4. In such areas we see villages denuded young people.

5. The son of a black man from Kenya and a white woman from Kansas, Obama is the first African-American to descend to the highest office in the land.

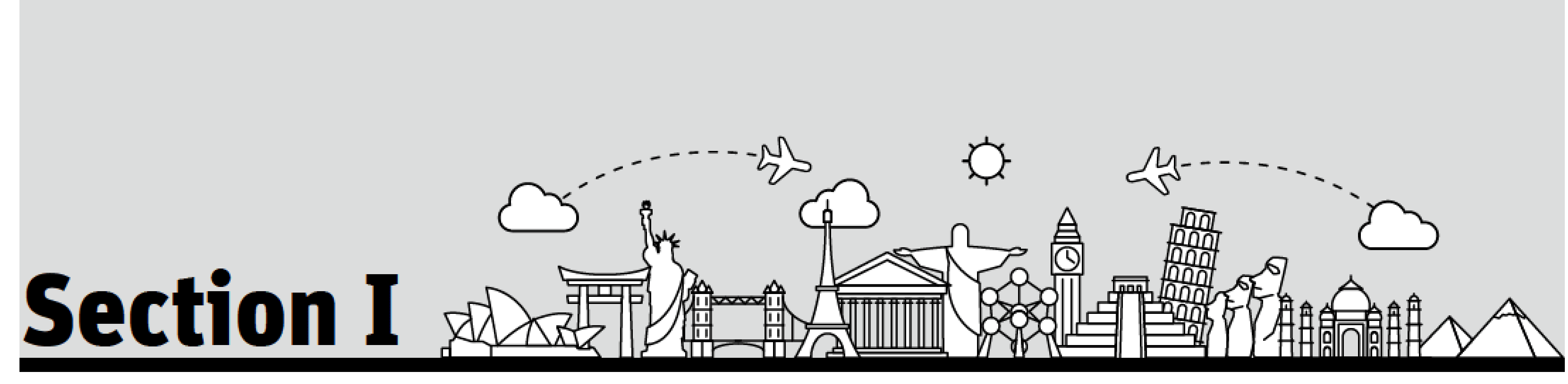
VII. Paraphrase

Directions: Please restate the following sentences using other words without altering the original meaning.

1. This spotted structure may possibly afford some indication in distinguishing those patchwork of quartz, which owe their present structure to igneous action, from those produced by the agency of water alone...
2. This hill is conical, 450 feet in height, and retains some traces of having had a crateriform structure; it is composed chiefly of matter erupted posteriorly to the elevation of the great basaltic plain, but partly of lava of apparently submarine origin and of considerable antiquity.
3. This conclusion accords with the highly scoriaceous condition of all the rock on it, appearing to be of (subaerial) formation that is aground: and this is important, as there are some beds of calcareous matter near its summit, which might, at a blindfold glance, have been mistaken for a submarine deposit.
4. There can be no doubt, as will presently be shown, that the lime was erupted, embroiled with the effluent lava in its fluid state, and therefore I have thought it worth while to describe minutely this curious fibrous structure, of which I know nothing analogous.
5. I am not aware that any similar case has been described: It appears to me an interesting one, inasmuch as most geologists must have speculated on the probable effects of a volcanic focus, bursting through deep-seated beds of different mineralogical composition.



Unit 7
Natural Calamities



Section I

Focus on Critical Thinking and Critical Reading (7)

Critical Reading Tool(i): Analysis

Critical reading shows us what to look for in a text(analysis) and how to think about what we find (inference). Analysis and inference are two tools of critical reading. When framing a presentation, authors must make choices regarding content, language, and structure. Critical readers thus rely on an examination of those choices and consider their effect on the meaning.

As a tool of critical thinking and critical reading, analysis is a special form of investigation. Generally, analysis refers to any close, careful, or systematic examination. Here in our discussion, the term "analysis" refers to the process of breaking a complex topic or substance into smaller parts in order to gain a better understanding of it. Complex topics are broken down into simpler topics. Complex patterns are broken down into less complex elements. The problem is simplified by limiting the amount that must be examined at any one time.

The purpose of the analysis is not simply to find parts within the whole, but to understand the whole. Once the parts are identified, analysis then seeks to determine how these parts are connected.

From a recognition of

- The nature of the parts, and
- The relationships between the parts

We infer additional meaning. In the analytic model, the whole is seen as greater than the sum of its parts.

Levels of Analysis

Analysis can be carried out on various levels. Any part can be analyzed into smaller parts. A table of contents, for instance, indicates the contents of a book at various levels of analysis: parts, chapters, sections, etc.

Bases of Analysis

Finally, note that a single topic can often be broken up for analysis in a number of ways. An anthropologist might view society in terms of cultural values and institutions; the sociologist might look at issues of group identity and social interaction. The anthropologist might look at how justice is administered, the sociologist at the social status of judges. One would speak in terms of mores and ethical principles, the other in terms of social class and socio-economic status. They may analyze the same society, but their different bases of analysis lead to different understandings.

Analyzing Texts

What are the parts of a text? The simplest answer is that texts are composed of words, which form sentences, which form paragraphs, which form larger sections of a text as a whole. Texts can also be analyzed in terms of elements or themes occurring throughout the discussion, like colors throughout plaid cloth.

Analysis: Patterns of a Text

When reading a text, the focuses of analysis should be placed on three basic elements of choice by the author: content, language, and structure.

- Choice of content: What ideas and examples have been selected?
- Choice of language: What words and sentence structures have been selected?
- Choice of structure: What arrangement has been selected to present the ideas in?

Analytical Questions 1

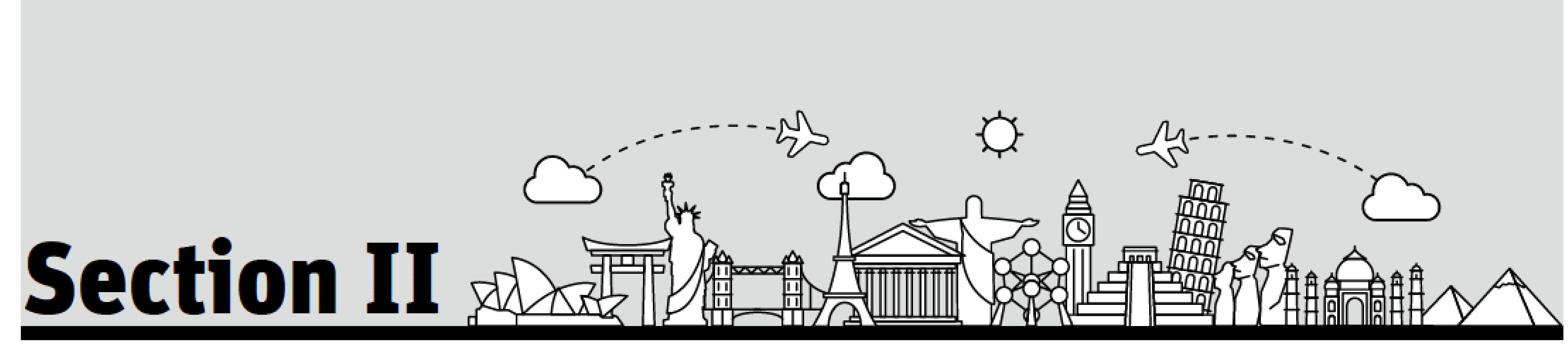
- What is the thesis or main idea?
- What are the supporting points that create the argument? How do they relate to each other? How do they relate to the thesis?
- What are the examples used as evidence for the supporting points? How do they relate to the points they support? To each other? To the thesis?
- What techniques of persuasion are used (appeals to emotion, reason, authority, etc.)?

Analytical Questions 2

- What rhetorical strategies (definition, explanation, description, narration, elaboration, argumentation, evaluation) and modes (illustration, comparison/contrast, cause and effect, process analysis, classification/division, definition) are used?
- In what order are the points presented (chronological, spatial, from general to specific, from similarity to difference, from cause to effect, from reason to conclusion)?

Analytical Questions 3

- What sources are used? Analysis enables you to understand how the text works so that you can then interpret its deeper meanings and evaluate its meanings and effectiveness.
- Have I understood the text correctly?



Section II

Text A: San Francisco and Its Terrific Earthquake

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **desolate** ['desəleɪt] *vt.* **(desolated/desolated/desolating)**

to upset someone and make someone very unhappy; to damage something very badly or completely; to leave the place, thing, or person permanently or for a long time, especially when someone should not do so

synonym	devastate; harshen
word family	desolation; desolated; desolately
related phrase	be desolated by sb./sth.; coastal villages desolated by the tornado; feel desolated by one's friends

Example 1 David was desolated by his wife's death.

Example 2 Many coastal towns were desolated by the hurricane.

② **memorabilia** [ˌmemərə'bɪlɪə] ***n.***

things that someone collects because he/she is connected with a person or organization in which someone is interested

word family	memorability; memorial; memorable; memorialize
related phrase	a collection of movie/sports memorabilia; the country's leading dealer in Beatles memorabilia

Example 1 He had a large collection of war memorabilia.

Example 2 The new-opened museum exhibits memorabilia in his long career.

③ **protrude** [prə'truːd] *vt./vi.* **(protruded/protruded/protruding)**

to stick out from somewhere

synonym	extend; stick out
word family	protrusion; protuberance; protrusive; protruding
related phrase	protrude from

Example 1 The envelope was protruding from her bag.

Example 2 He protruded his tongue.

④ **kudos** ['kju:dɒs] ***n.***

admiration or recognition that someone or something gets as a result of a particular action or achievement

synonym honor; prestige; glory; praise; fame

antonym dishonor

related phrase a new hotel chain that has won kudos for the way it treats guests

Example 1 Employees enjoy the kudos that the job brings as much as the financial rewards.

Example 2 He acquired kudos just by appearing on television.

⑤ **clasp** [klɑ:sp] ***vt./vi.*** **(clasped/clasped/clasping)**

to hold something tightly in one's hands or arms

synonym hold; grip

word family clasp (*n.*); clasped; clasping

related phrase clasp one's hands/arms around/behind sth.; clasp sb./sth. in one's hands/arms; clasp sb. to one's chest/bosom

Example 1 A baby monkey clasps its mother's fur tightly.

Example 2 She clasped the photograph in her hands.

⑥ **environ** [ɪn'vaɪrən] ***n.***

an area or space close by; the surrounding parts or districts, as of a city, outskirts, suburbs; surrounding objects

synonym vicinity; surroundings; environment

word family environ (*v.*); environment

related phrase in the environ of …

Example 1 You can get just about any kind of ethnic food in the environs of the university.

Example 2 The city and its environs total about a million in population.

⑦ **hamstring** ['hæmstrɪŋ] ***vt.*** **(hamstrung/hamstrung/hamstringing)**

to make something very difficult for someone to take any action

synonym disable; stop

word family hamstring (*n.*)

related phrase be hamstrung by sb./sth.

Example 1 Rural schools were hamstrung by their inability to attract and keep experienced staff.

Example 2 If he becomes the major opposition leader, he could hamstring a conservative-led coalition.

⑧ **tenement** ['tenəmənt] ***n.***

a large, old building which is divided into a number of individual apartments; one of the apartments in a tenement

synonym housing; tenement house

word family tenemental
related phrase the tenement building/house/block

Example 1 A complete tenement block was burnt to the ground.

Example 2 He struggled to pay the rent on his $88 a month tenement.

⑨ **remonstration** [ˌremən'streɪʃən] ***n.***

the act of expressing earnest opposition or protest

synonym advice; protest; expostulation; remonstrance
word family remonstrance; remonstrative; remonstratively; remonstrate
related phrase the art of remonstration

Example 1 His voice was full of remonstration; he repeated continually: "Time's up, sir."

Example 2 How to show your remonstration in a right way is a key point in interpersonal communication.

⑩ **concuss** [kən'kʌs] ***vt.*** **(concussed/concussed/concussing)**

to injure (the brain) by a violent blow, fall, etc.

synonym shake; intimidate
word family concussion; concussive
related phrase be badly/lightly concussed; concuss like the snapping of a whip

Example 1 He was caught by an avalanche and was seriously concussed.

Example 2 He was concussed by the blast.

⑪ **acclimatize** [ə'klaɪmətaɪz] ***vt./vi.*** **(acclimatized/acclimatized/acclimatizing)**

to become used to something, such as a new situation, place, or climate, etc.

synonym acclimate; accustom
word family acclimatization; acclimatized; acclimatizing
related phrase acclimatize (sb.) to (doing) sth.; be acclimatized to (doing) sth.

Example 1 I help them acclimatize to living in the U.S.

Example 2 Some ethnic groups can't become acclimatized to the mainstream.

⑫ **placidity** [plə'sɪdəti] ***n.***

a feeling of calmness, a quiet and undisturbed feeling; a disposition free from stress or emotion

synonym equanimity; tranquilness; serenity
word family placidness; placid; placidly
related phrase do sth. with placidity; answer with placidity

Example 1 Placidity is a living experience and elegance is a living attitude.

Example 2 Her only real comfort was when the child lay in the placidity of sleep.

⑬ **bid** [bɪd] ***vt./vi.*** **(bid/bid/bidding) (bade/bidden/bidding)**

to try to obtain something or do something; to offer to pay a particular amount of money for something

synonym	tender for
word family	bid (*n.*); bidder; bidding; biddable
related phrase	bid (sb./sth.) for sth.

Example 1 Singapore Airlines is rumoured to be bidding for a management contract to run both airports.

Example 2 The two men ended up bidding against each other at the auction.

⑭ **temerarious** [ˌteməˈreərɪəs] ***adj.***

presumptuously daring

synonym	desperate; reckless
word family	temerity; temerariously
related phrase	temerarious actions

Example 1 How often we have been temerarious and rushed unwisely in.

Example 2 Some people are just temerarious enough to break the rules for their own sake.

⑮ **nimbly** [ˈnɪmblɪ] ***adv.***

doing something in a nimble or agile manner; with quickness, lightness and ease

synonym	wisely; promptly; swiftly
antonym	awkwardly
word family	nimbleness; nimble
related phrase	move nimbly

Example 1 He dodged nimbly behind a tree.

Example 2 Sabrina jumped nimbly out of the van.

⑯ **headlong** [ˈhedlɒŋ] ***adv.***

moving in a particular direction very quickly; falling or moving with one's head furthest forward; doing something quickly without thinking carefully about it

antonym	precipitately; headfirst; rashly
word family	headlong (*adj.*)
related phrase	rush/plunge headlong into sth.; fall headlong into a pool of icy water; leap headlong into decisions

Example 1 He ran headlong for the open door.

Example 2 I fell headlong into a pool of icy water.

⑰ **fugitive** [ˈfjuːdʒɪtɪv] ***n.***

someone who is running away or hiding, usually in order to avoid being caught by the police

synonym	runagate; levanter
word family	fugitive (*adj.*)
related phrase	a fugitive from US justice

Example 1 The rebel leader was a fugitive from justice.

Example 2 The fugitive tried to hide from the police.

⑱ **kindle** ['kɪndəl] ***vt.*** **(kindled/kindled/kindling)**

to make someone start to feel something, especially a particular emotion; to light paper or wood in order to start it

synonym	enkindle; lamp; emblaze; inflame
word family	kindling; enkindle
related phrase	kindle at an insult; kindle a fire with some pieces of wood

Example 1 The Second World War kindled his enthusiasm for politics.

Example 2 I came in and kindled a fire in the stove.

⑲ **irradiate** [ɪ'reɪdɪeɪt] ***vt./vi.*** **(irradiated/irradiated/irradiating)**

to be exposed to a large amount of radioactivity; to be treated with radiation to kill bacteria and make it last longer

synonym	ray; beam; gleam
word family	irradiation; irradiator; irradiative; irradiated; irradiating
related phrase	the Chernobyl disaster, which irradiated large parts of Europe; irradiate energy; the risks and benefits of irradiated food

Example 1 He observed that leukaemia in children was more common if the fathers had been heavily irradiated.

Example 2 It's safe to eat foods that have been irradiated to prolong their shelf life.

⑳ **engulf** [ɪn'gʌlf] ***vt.*** **(engulfed/engulfed/engulfing)**

to completely cover or hide something, often in a sudden and unexpected way; to be strongly affected by a feeling or emotion etc.

synonym	gulf; devour
word family	gulf; engulfing; engulfment
related phrase	engulf many towns and villages along the banks; the pain that engulfed him; engulf the food whole

Example 1 A seven-year-old boy was found dead after a landslide engulfed an apartment block.

Example 2 She engulfed herself in her studies.

㉑ **tribulation** [ˌtrɪbjʊ'leɪʃən] ***n.***

the suffering or difficulty that someone experiences in a particular situation

synonym	affliction; hardship
antonym	enjoyment

word family tribulate
related phrase the trials and tribulations of everyday life; tribulation consciousness

Example 1 Even close friends were unaware of the tribulations she faced.

Example 2 Even in our awful tribulation we were quite optimistic.

㉒ peer at

to look at something very hard, usually because it is difficult to see clearly

synonym gaze on
related phrase peer at sb./sth.

Example 1 I had been peering at a computer print-out that made no sense at all.

Example 2 He was peering through the wet windscreen at the cars ahead.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

aquarium	automotive	aviary	balaclava	bane
bonanza	bonsai	bookshelf	booty	bothy
bough	breakwater	capacitor	carnival	chainsaw
clang	creek	cymbal	domicile	download
duct	fearsome	firelight	Flemish	grisly
grotto	haemorrhage	hepatitis	heterogeneity	hilltop
hinterland	holster	hostelry	inlet	inquisitive
irreparable	locum	metropolis	millet	monastery
more	mythology	nervosa	nightshirt	overstep
palladium	palliative	parenthesis	pathogenesis	piazza
pictorial	picturesque	plain	platelet	pomp
poodle	pothole	prolific	quench	reparable
rotor	sandal	serge	serum	sidle
singe	sniper	spontaneity	squall	stepmother
stupor	tantalizing	thoroughfare	tide	tremor
valet	visor			

Part 2 Text

San Francisco and Its Terrific Earthquake

On the splendid Bay of San Francisco, one of the noblest harbors on the whole vast range of the Pacific Ocean, long has stood, like a Queen of the West on its seven hills, the beautiful city of San Francisco, the youngest and in its own way one of the most beautiful and tantalizing of the large cities of the United States. Born less than sixty years ago, it has grown with the healthy rapidity of a young giant, outvying many cities of much earlier origin, until it has won rank as the eighth city of the United States, and as the unquestioned metropolis of our far Western States.

It is on this great and rich city that the dark demon of destruction has now descended, as it fell on the next younger of our cities, Chicago, in 1872. It was the rage of the fire-fiend that desolated the metropolis of the lakes. Upon the Queen City of the West the twin terrors of earthquake and conflagration have descended at once, careening through its thronged streets, its piazzas of trade, and its domiciles alike of poverty and wealth, and with the red hand of devastation sweeping one of the noblest centres of human industry and enterprise from the face of the earth. It is this story of almost irreparable ruin which it is our unwelcome duty to memorabilia. But before entering upon this sorrowful task some description of the city that has fallen a prey to two of the earth's chief agents of destruction must be given.

San Francisco is built on the end of a peninsula or tongue of land lying between the Pacific Ocean and the broad San Francisco Bay, a noble body of hinterland water protruding southward for about forty miles and with a width varying from six to twelve miles. Northward this splendid body of water is connected with San Pablo Bay[1], ten miles long, and the latter with Suisun Bay[2], eight miles long, the whole forming a grand range of navigable waters only overstepped by the great northern inlet of Puget Sound[3]. The Golden Gate, a channel five miles long, connects this great harbor with the sea, the whole giving San Francisco the greatest commercial advantages to be found on the Pacific coast.

The Character of the City

Since its early days the growth of the city has been very rapid. In 1900 it held 342,782 people, and the census estimate made from figures of the city directory in 1904 gave it then a population of 485,000, probably a considerable exaggeration. In it are mingled inhabitants from most of the nations of the earth, and it may claim the unenviable kudos of possessing the largest population of Chinese outside of China itself, the colony numbering over 20,000.

The city before the fire contained numerous handsome structures, including the famous old Palace Hotel, built at a cost of $3,000,000 and with accommodations for 1,200 guests; the nearly finished and splendid Fairmount Hotel; the City Hall, with its lofty dome, on which $7,000,000 is said to have been spent, much of it, doubtless, political plunder; a costly United States Mint and Post Office, an Academy of Science, and many churches, colleges, libraries and other public edifices. The city had 220 miles of paved streets, 180 miles of electric and 77 of cable railway, 62 hotels, 16 theatres, 4 large libraries, 5 daily newspapers, etc., together with 28 public parks.

Sitting, like Rome of old, on its seven hills, San Francisco has long been noted for its beautiful site, clasped in, as it is, between the Pacific Ocean and its own splendid bay, on a peninsula of some

five miles in width. Where this juts into the bay at its northernmost point rises a great promontory known as Telegraph Hill, from whose height homeless thousands have recently peered at the smoke rising from their ruined homes. In the early days of golden promise a watchman was stationed on this hill to look out for coming ships entering the Golden Gate from their long voyage around the Horn and signal the welcome news to the town below. From this came its name.

Cliffs rise on either side of the Golden Gate, and on one is perched the Cliff House, long a famous hostelry. This stands so low that in storms the surf is flung over its lower porticos, though its force is broken by the Seal Rocks. A chief attraction to this house was to see the seals play on these rocks, their favorite place of resort. The Cliff House was at first said to have been swept bodily by the earthquake into the sea, but it proved to be very little injured, and stands erect in its old picturesque location.

In the environs of Telegraph Hill are Russian and Nob Hills, the latter getting its peculiar title from the fact that the wealthy "nobs" or mining magnates, of bonanza days built their homes on its summit level. Farther to the east are Mount Olympus and Strawberry Hill, and beyond these the Twin Peaks, which really embrace three hills, the third being named Bernal Heights. Farther to the south and east is Rincan Hill, the last in the half moon crescent of hills, within which is a spread of flat ground extending to the bay. Behind the hills on the Pacific side stretches a vast sweep of sand, at some places level, but often gathered into great round dunes. Part of this has been transformed into the beautiful Golden Gate Park, a splendid expanse of green verdure which has long been one of San Francisco's chief attractions.

Beneath the whole of San Francisco is a rock formation, but everywhere on top of this extends the sand, the gift of the winds. This is of such a character that a grotto dug in the street anywhere, even if only to the depth of a few feet, must be shored up with planking or it will fill as fast as it is excavated, the sand running as dry as the contents of an hour glass. When there is an earthquake—or a "temblor", to use the Spanish name—it is the rock foundation that is disturbed, not the sand, which, indeed, serves to lessen the effect of the earth tremor.

The Foundations of the City

Leaving the region of the hills and descending from their crescent-shaped expanse, we find a broad extent of low ground, sloping gently toward the bay. On this low-lying flat was built all of San Francisco's business houses, all its principal hotels and a large part of its tenements and poorer dwellings. It was here that the earthquake was felt most severely and that the fire started which laid waste the city.

Rarely has a city been built on such doubtful foundations. The greater part of the low ground was a bay in 1849, but it has since been filled in by the drifting sands blown from the ocean side by the prevailing west winds and by earth dumped into it. Much of this land was "made ground". Forty-niners still alive say that when they first saw San Francisco the waters of the bay came up to Montgomery Street[4]. The Palace Hotel was in Montgomery Street, and from there to the ferry docks—a long walk for any man—the water had been driven back by a "filling-in" process.

This is the district that especially suffered, that south of Market and east of Montgomery Streets. Nearly all the large buildings in this section are either built on piles driven into the sand and mud or were raised upon wooden foundations. It is on such ground as this that the costly

Post Office building was erected, despite the remonstrations of nearly the entire community, who asserted that the ground was nothing but a filled-in bog.

In none of the earthquakes that San Francisco has had was any serious damage except to houses in this filled-in territory, and to houses built along the line of some of the many streams which ran from the hills down to the bay, and which were filled in as the town grew—for instance, the Grand Opera House was built over the bed of St. Anne's Creek. A bog, slough and marsh, known as the Pipeville Slough, was the ground on which the City Hall was built, and which was originally a burying ground. Sand from the western shore had blown over and drifted into the marsh and hardened its surface.

When the final grading scheme of the city was adopted in 1853, and work went on, the water front of the city was where Clay Street now is, between Montgomery and Sansome Streets. The present level area of San Francisco of about three thousand acres is an average of nine feet above or below the natural surface of the ground and the changes made necessitated the transfer of 21,000,000 cubic yards from hills to hollows. Houses to the number of thousands were raised or lowered, street floors became subcellars or third stories and the whole natural face of the ground was altered.

Through this infirm material all the ducts of the water and sewer system of San Francisco in its business districts and in most of the region south of Market street were laid. When the earthquake came, the filled-in ground shook like the jelly it is. The only firm and rigid material in its millions of cubic yards of surface area and depth were the iron pipes. Naturally they broke, as they would not bend, and San Francisco's water system was therefore instantly hamstringed, with the result that the fire became complete master of the situation and raged uncontrolled for three days and nights.

Although the earthquake wrecked the business and residential portions of the city alike, on the hills the land did not sink. All "made ground" sank in consequence of the quaking, but on the high ground the upper parts of the buildings were about the only portions of the structures wrecked. Most of the damage on the hills was done by falling chimneys. On Montgomery Street, half a block from the main office of the Western Union Company, the middle of the thoroughfare was cracked and blown up, but during the shocks which struck the Western Union building only the top stories were cracked. Similar phenomena were experienced in other localities, and the bulk of the disaster, so far as the earthquake was concerned, was confined to the low-lying region above described.

The Bane of the Earthquake

From the origin of San Francisco the earthquake has been its bane. During the past fifty years fully 250 shocks have been recorded, while all California has been subject to them. But frequency rather than violence of shocks has been the characteristic of the seismic history of the State, there having been few shocks that caused serious damage, and none since 1872 that led to loss of life.

There was a violent shock in 1856, when the city was only a mining town of small frame buildings. Several bothies were overthrown and a few persons killed by falling walls and chimneys. There was a severe shock also in 1865, in which many buildings were shattered. Next in violence was the shock of 1872, which cracked the walls of some of the public buildings and caused a panic. There was no great loss of life. In April, 1898, just before midnight, there was a lively shakeup which caused the tall buildings to concuss like the snapping of a whip and drove the tourists out of the

hotels into the streets in their nightshirts. Three or four old houses fell, and the Benicia Navy Yard, which is on made ground across the bay, was damaged to the extent of about $100,000. The last severe shock was in January, 1900, when the St. Nicholas Hotel was badly damaged.

These were the heaviest shocks. On the other hand, light shocks, as above said, have been frequent. Probably the sensible quakes have averaged three or four a year. These are usually tremblings lasting from ten seconds to a minute and just heavy enough to wake light sleepers or to shake dishes about on the bookshelves and other shelves. Tourists and newcomers are generally alarmed by these phenomena, but old Californians have learned to take them philosophically. To one who is not afraid of them, the sensation of one of these little tremblers is rather pleasant than otherwise, and the inhabitants grew so acclimatized to them as rarely to let them disturb their placidity.

After 1900 the forces beneath the earth seemed to fall asleep. As it proved, they were only biding their time. The era was at hand when they were to declare themselves in all their mighty power and fall upon the devoted city with ruin in their grasp. But all this lay hidden in the secret casket of time, and the city kept up to its record as one of the liveliest and in many respects the most temerarious and pleasure-loving on the continent, its people squandering their money with thoughtless improvidence and enjoying to the full all the good that life held out to them.

On the 17th of April, 1906, the city was, as usual, gay, careless, busy, its people attending to business or pleasure with their ordinary vim as inclination led them, and not a soul dreaming of the horrors that lay in wait. They were as heedless of coming peril and death as the inhabitants of Sodom and Gomorrah before the rain of fire from heaven descended upon their devoted heads. This is not to say that they were doomed by God to destruction like these "cities of the plains". We should more nimbly say that the forces of ruin within the earth take no heed of persons or places. They come and go as the conditions of nature demand, and if man has built one of his cities across their destined track, its doom comes from its situation, not from the moral state of its inhabitants.

The Great Disaster of 1906

That night the people went, with their wonted equanimity, to their beds, rich and poor, sick and well alike. Did any of them dream of disaster in the air? It may be so, for often, as the poet tells us, "Coming events cast their shadows before." But, forewarned by dreams or not, doubtless not a soul in the great city was prepared for the grisly event so near at hand, when, at thirteen minutes past five o'clock on the fearsome morning of the 18th, they felt their beds lifted beneath them as if by a Titan hand, heard the crash of falling walls and ceilings, and saw everything in their rooms tossed madly about, while through their windows came the squall of an awful disaster from the city without.

It was a matter not of minutes, but of seconds, yet on all that coast, long the prey of the earthquake, no shock like it had ever been felt, no such sudden terror awakened, no such terrible loss occasioned as in those few fearful seconds. Again and again the trembling of the earth passed by, three quickly repeated shocks, and the work of the demon of ruin was done. People woke with a start to find themselves flung from their beds to the floor, many of them covered with the fragments of broken ceilings, many lost among the ruins of falling floors and walls, many pinned in agonizing tribulation under the ruins of their houses, which had been utterly wrecked in those fatal seconds. Many there were, indeed, who had been flung to quick if not to instant death under their ruined homes.

Those seconds of the reign of the elemental forces had turned the gayest, most careless city on the continent into a wreck which no words can fitly describe. Those able to move stumbled in wild panic across the floors of their heaving houses, regardless of clothing, of treasures, of everything but the mad instinct for safety, and rushed headlong into the streets, to find that the earth itself had yielded to the energy of its frightful interior forces and had in places been torn and rent like the houses themselves. New terrors assailed the fugitives as fresh tremors shook the solid ground, some of them strong enough to bring down shattered walls and chimneys, and bring back much of the mad terror of the first fearful quake. The heaviest of these came at eight o'clock. While less forcible than that which had caused the work of destruction, it added immensely to the panic and dread of the people and put many of the wanderers to flight, some toward the ferry, the great mass in the direction of the sand dunes and Golden Gate Park.

The pomp of the entire population of a great city thus roused suddenly from slumber by a fierce earthquake shock and sent flying into the streets in utter panic, where not buried under falling walls or tumbling debris, is one that can scarcely be pictured in words, and can be given in any approach to exact realization only in the narratives of those who passed through its horrors and experienced the sensations to which it gave rise. Some of the more vivid of these personal accounts will be presented later, but at present we must confine ourselves to a general statement of the succession of events.

The earthquake proved but the beginning and much the least destructive part of the disaster. In many of the buildings there were fires, banked for the night, but ready to kindle the inflammable material hurled down upon them by the shock. In others were live electric wires which the shock brought in contact with woodwork. The terror-stricken fugitives saw, here and there, in all directions around them, the alarming vision of red firelights curling upward and outward, in irradiating contrast to the white light of dawn just showing in the eastern sky. Those lurid gleams climbed upward in engulfing haste, and before the sun had fairly risen a dozen or more conflagrations were visible in all sections of the business part of the city, and in places great buildings broke with startling suddenness into flame, which shot hotly high into the air.

(Adapted from *The San Francisco Calamity*)

Notes

① San Pablo Bay

San Pablo Bay is a tidal estuary that forms the northern extension of San Francisco Bay in the East Bay and North Bay regions of the San Francisco Bay Area in northern California. Most of the Bay is shallow; however, there is a deep water channel approximately in the middle of the bay, which allows access to major ports in Sacramento, Stockton, Benicia, and Martinez; and other smaller ports on the Sacramento–San Joaquin River Delta.

② Suisun Bay

Suisun Bay is a shallow tidal estuary (a northeastern extension of the San Francisco Bay) in northern California. It lies at the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, forming the entrance to the Sacramento–San Joaquin River Delta, an inverted river delta. Suisun Marsh, the tidal marsh land to the north, is the largest marsh in California. Grizzly Bay forms a northern extension of Suisun Bay. The bay is directly north of Contra Costa County.

③ Puget Sound

Puget Sound is a sound along the northwestern coast of the U.S. state of Washington, an inlet of the Pacific Ocean, and part of the Salish Sea. It is a complex estuarine system of interconnected marine waterways and basins, with one major and two minor connections to the open Pacific Ocean via the Strait of Juan de Fuca—Admiralty Inlet being the major connection and Deception Pass and Swinomish Channel being the minor. Puget Sound is also the third largest estuary in the United States, behind Chesapeake Bay and San Francisco Bay.

④ Montgomery Street

Montgomery Street is a north-south thoroughfare in San Francisco, California, in the United States. It runs about 16 blocks from the Telegraph Hill neighborhood south through downtown, terminating at Market Street. South of Columbus Avenue, Montgomery Street runs through the heart of San Francisco's Financial District and contains one of the highest concentrations of financial activity, investment business, and venture capital in the United States and the world. For this reason, it is known as "the Wall Street of the West". South of Market Street, the street continues as New Montgomery Street for two more blocks to terminate at Howard Street in the SOMA district.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text A the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. tourist	2. instantly
3. vicinity	4. honor
5. surpass	6. rivulet
7. tranquillity	8. reckless
9. awesome	10. spectacle
11. wanderer	12. protest

Antonyms

1. boring	2. reparable
3. outlet	4. release

5. slowly　　6. public
7. quench　　8. blessing

III. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 9 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. Several years ago, it was as dirty, potholed and crime-infested as much of the rest of the ________.
   A) hepatitis　B) metropolis　C) parenthesis　D) pathogenesis
2. Despite lingering doubts over the gates, construction has begun with a breakwater at the Malamocco ________ into the lagoon.
   A) inlet　B) valet　C) millet　D) platelet
3. A military unit loyal to Colonel Gaddafi is reportedly continuing to ________ the major central city of Misrata with artillery bombardment and sniper fire.
   A) serge　B) singe　C) besiege　D) haemorrhage
4. The ________ in a balaclava—wanted for chainsawing his girlfriend and her stepmother—drew the Browning Hi-Power from his shoulder holster when police moved in.
   A) automotive　B) fugitive　C) inquisitive　D) palliative
5. Shock, seizures, ________, disorientation, nervosa and stupor may be seen in the late stages.
   A) rotor　B) visor　C) tremor　D) capacitor
6. You can download the latest Dan Brown novel to your ________ in even less time than it takes to forget the content.
   A) kindle　B) bindle　C) sidle　D) poodle
7. Boys ________ up the hilltop, simply wanting to see the aviary.
   A) clang　B) clink　C) clamor　D) clamber
8. The former Flemish's ________, which became a youth hostel in 1933, has remained unaltered for many years.
   A) booty　B) bothy　C) bough　D) bonsai
9. Recently Jews in synagogues around the world heard an ancient prophesy about a time of ________ for the Christians.
   A) trilby　B) tribulation　C) trillion　D) triplicate

IV. Cultural Kaleidoscope

Directions: Please choose the most appropriate answer to each statement.

1. One of the seven wonders of the modern world and perhaps San Francisco's most famous landmark, ________ opened in 1937 after a four-year struggle against relentless winds, fog, rock and treacherous tides.
   A) the City Hall　B) Telegraph Hill
   C) Golden Gate Bridge　D) the Grand Opera House
2. The Pacific Ocean is the biggest ocean of the world and the name "Pacific" comes from the Latin word "pacificus" which means ________.

A) prolific B) peaceful C) pictorial D) palatial

3. The California Academy of Sciences is a renowned scientific and educational institution dedicated to exploring, explaining, and sustaining life on Earth. Based in San Francisco's Golden Gate Park, it is home to a world-class ________, planetarium, and natural history museum—all under one living roof.
   A) locum B) serum C) palladium D) aquarium
4. In Greek mythology, Poseidon was the cause and god of earthquakes. When he was in a bad mood, he struck the ground with a trident, causing earthquakes and other ________.
   A) enormities B) calamities C) spontaneities D) heterogeneities
5. An hourglass comprises two glass bulbs connected vertically by a narrow neck that allows a regulated trickle of sand from the upper bulb to the lower one. Factors affecting the time ________ measured include sand quantity, sand coarseness, bulb size, and neck width.
   A) interval B) carnival C) cymbal D) sandal

V. Rhetoric Appreciation

Directions: A rhetorical device or a figure of speech is a technique that an author or speaker uses to convey to the reader or listener a meaning with the goal of persuading him or her towards considering a topic from a different perspective, using language designed to encourage or evoke an emotional response in the audience. The widely used rhetorical devices include parallelism, repetition, antithesis, simile, quotation, personification, alliteration, metaphor, end rhyme, etc. Please identify the rhetorical devices used in the following sentences. And then reread Text A to find out the rhetoric in use as much as you can.

1. ________________
   After 1900 the forces beneath the earth seemed to fall asleep. As it proved, they were only biding their time.
2. ________________
   It may be so, for often, as the poet tells us, "Coming events cast their shadows before."
3. ________________
   ... no shock like it had ever been felt, no such sudden terror awakened, no such terrible loss occasioned ...
4. ________________
   ... the trembling of the earth passed by, three quickly repeated shocks, and the work of the demon of ruin was done.
5. ________________
   In April, 1898, just before midnight, there was a lively shakeup which caused the tall buildings to concuss like the snapping of a whip ...

VI. Translation Practice

Directions: Please put the following sentences into Chinese.

1. Born less than sixty years ago, it has grown with the healthy rapidity of a young giant, outvying many cities of much earlier origin, until it has won rank as the eighth city of the United States, and as the unquestioned metropolis of our far Western States.

2. In the early days of golden promise a watchman was stationed on this hill to look out for coming ships entering the Golden Gate from their long voyage around the Horn and signal the welcome news to the town below.
3. To one who is not afraid of them, the sensation of one of these little tremblers is rather pleasant than otherwise, and the inhabitants grew so acclimatized to them as rarely to let them disturb their placidity.
4. Those able to move stumbled in wild panic across the floors of their heaving houses, regardless of clothing, of treasures, of everything but the mad instinct for safety, and rushed headlong into the streets, to find that the earth itself had yielded to the energy of its frightful interior forces and had in places been torn and rent like the houses themselves.
5. Those lurid gleams climbed upward in engulfing haste, and before the sun had fairly risen a dozen or more conflagrations were visible in all sections of the business part of the city, and in places great buildings broke with startling suddenness into flame, which shot hotly high into the air.

VII. Writing Workshop

Directions: Please read the following lines and then write about your afterthoughts on terrifying earthquakes in modern history.

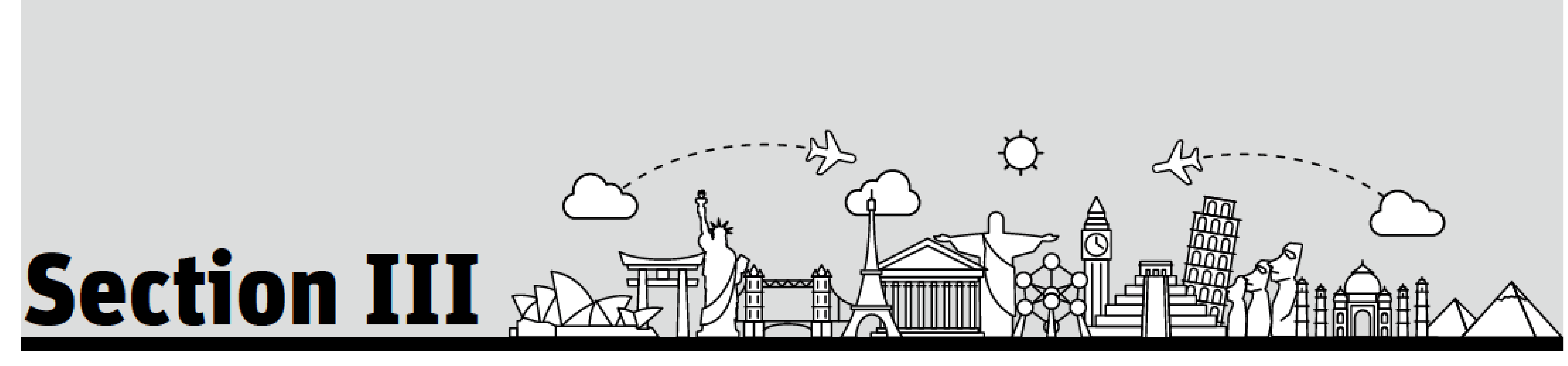
烨烨震电，不宁不令。百川沸腾，山冢崒崩。高岸为谷，深谷为陵。(《小雅·十月之交》)

烈风驾地震，狞雷驱猛雨。（杜牧《李甘诗》）

有声四出嘻可怕，谁击万鼓何雷硠。（曾巩《地动》）

万宇变旋室，百城如转机。（苏舜钦《地动联句》）

天公恶作剧，翻手变炎凉。海运三山动，江高数尺缰。(陆文圭《和心渊雷雨地震诗》)



Section III

Text B: Charleston, Galveston, Johnstown—Our American Disasters

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **indelible** [ɪn'delɪbəl] ***adj.***

being very unlikely to be forgotten; cannot be removed or washed out

synonym	unforgettable; memorable
antonym	delible
word family	indelibly
related phrase	indelible ink/pencil/marker etc.; indelible impressions

Example 1 My visit to India in 1986 left an indelible impression on me.

Example 2 The message was written in indelible ink.

② **clank** [klæŋk] ***vt./vi.*** **(clanked/clanked/clanking)**

to make a noise because large metal objects are hitting together or hitting against something hard

synonym	clink
word family	clank (*n.*); clanking
related phrase	the clanking noise of the ferry; the clanking of machinery

Example 1 A pan rattled and clanked.

Example 2 "Here we are now." Beth said, as the train clanked into a tiny station.

③ **hurtle** ['hɜːtəl] ***vt./vi.*** **(hurtled/hurtled/hurtling)**

to move very quickly, often in a rough or violent way

synonym	dash; collapse; rush at
word family	hurtle (*n.*); hurtling
related phrase	hurtle down/away/around/by; hurtle down the stairs

Example 1 His motorboat hurtled along the river.

Example 2 All of a sudden, a car came hurtling round the corner.

④ **hoarse** [hɔːs] ***adj.***

(the voice) sounding rough and unclear, for example because one's throat is sore

synonym	throaty
antonym	clangorous

word family	hoarseness; hoarsely
related phrase	hoarse voice/whisper/groan, etc.

Example 1 "So what do you think?" she said in a hoarse whisper.

Example 2 He was hoarse from laughing.

⑤ deject [dɪ'dʒekt] ***vt.*** **(dejected/dejected/dejecting)**

to have a depressing effect on; to dispirit; to dishearten

synonym	dampen; dispirit
antonym	delight; inspire
word family	deject (*adj.*); dejected
related phrase	deject someone's spirits

Example 1 Such news dejects me.

Example 2 I must deject you now and make you listen to me; there is not much more to hear.

⑥ burly ['bɜːlɪ] ***adj.***

having a broad body and strong muscles

synonym	husky
antonym	frail; feeble; weak
related phrase	a burly policeman

Example 1 He was a big, burly man.

Example 2 The burly brute swaggered forward, towering over me, and shouted.

⑦ aural ['ɔːrəl] ***adj.***

related to the sense of hearing

synonym	acoustic
word family	aura; aurally
related phrase	an aural stimulus

Example 1 He became famous as an inventor of astonishing visual and aural effects.

Example 2 In fact, I've long adored Klipsch's unique aural qualities across all of the speakers.

⑧ impend [ɪm'pend] ***vi.*** **(impended/impended/impending)**

to be about to happen; to be imminent

synonym	occur; close in
word family	impendence; impendency; impending; impendent
related phrase	the impending death

Example 1 He knew the danger impending over him.

Example 2 Crucial events impend in Europe.

9 **deliverance** [dɪ'lɪvərəns] ***n.***

rescue from imprisonment, danger, or evil

synonym salvation; emancipation
word family deliver; deliverer
related phrase prayed to God for deliverance

Example 1 The opening scene shows them celebrating their sudden deliverance from war.

Example 2 No matter who you are, if you have a problem with sin, look to Jesus for deliverance.

10 **abscond** [əb'skɒnd] ***vi.* (absconded/absconded/absconding)**

to escape from somewhere or leave somewhere without permission; to secretly leave somewhere, taking with something that does not belong to someone

synonym absquatulate; elope; escape
word family absconder; abscondee; abscondence
related phrase abscond with; abscond from

Example 1 A dozen inmates have absconded from the jail in the past year.

Example 2 Unfortunately, his partners were crooks and absconded with the funds.

11 **summon** ['sʌmən] ***vt.* (summoned/summoned/summoning)**

to order someone to come to you; to make a great effort to have something such as courage, energy, or strength

synonym nerve; stir
word family summons; summoner
related phrase summon sb. to do sth.; summon to hold a meeting; summon up

Example 1 Suddenly we were summoned to the interview room.

Example 2 It took her a full month to summon the courage to tell her mother.

12 **cower** ['kaʊə] ***vi.* (cowered/cowered/cowering)**

to bend forward and downward because someone is very frightened

synonym huddle
word family cowering
related phrase cower in a corner; cower at the sight of a snake

Example 1 The hostages cowered in their seats.

Example 2 He cowered against the wall.

13 **gory** ['gɔːrɪ] ***adj.***

clearly describing or showing violence, blood, and killing; covered in blood

synonym bloodstained; cruel
word family gore (*n.*&*v.*)
related phrase a gory horror movie; gory tales of murder; (all) the gory details

Example 1 I'm terribly squeamish. I can't bear gory films.

Example 2 Come on, I want to hear all the gory details.

⑭ romp [rɒmp] *vi.* (romped/romped/romping)

to win a race or competition very easily; to play noisily and happily

synonym frolic
word family romp (*n.*); romper
related phrase romp home; romp in; romp to a win/victory; romp around/about; romp through sth.

Example 1 Mr. Foster romped home with 141 votes.

Example 2 Dogs and little children romped happily in the garden.

⑮ insurrection [ˌɪnsə'rekʃən] *n.*

violent action that is taken by a large group of people against the rulers of their country, usually in order to remove someone from office

synonym rebellion; sedition; riot
word family insurrectionist; insurrectionary; insurrectional
related phrase an armed insurrection against the party in power

Example 1 They were plotting to stage an armed insurrection if negotiations with the government should fail.

Example 2 Those found guilty of rebellion and insurrection will be sentenced to life imprisonment.

⑯ melee ['meleɪ] *n.*

a noisy, confusing fight between the people in a crowd; a large, confusing, disorganized group of something

synonym scrimmage; mix-up; in-fighting
related phrase the melee of streets around the waterfront

Example 1 A policeman was killed and scores of people were injured in the melee.

Example 2 The shoppers' voices grew tense as they argued over the last doll, and for a moment I feared that a melee might erupt.

⑰ downcast ['daʊnkɑːst] *adj.*

feeling sad and without hope; looking toward the ground, usually because someone is feeling sad or embarrassed

synonym sad; disappointed; depressed
antonym excited; stimulated
word family downer; downcast (*n.*)
related phrase a glum, downcast expression; with one's eyes downcast

Example 1 She was silent, with her eyes downcast.

Example 2 Barbara looked increasingly downcast as defeat loomed.

⑱ **outcast** ['aʊtkɑːst] ***n.***

someone who is not accepted by a group of people or by society

synonym	castaway; transportee
word family	outcast (*adj.*); outcaste
related phrase	a social outcast

Example 1 He had always been an outcast, unwanted and alone.

Example 2 Smokers often feel as though they are being treated as social outcasts.

⑲ **multilateral** [ˌmʌltɪ'lætərəl] ***adj.***

involving at least three different groups of people or nations

synonym	plurilateral; many-sided
antonym	unilateral; bilateral
word family	multilateralism
related phrase	a multilateral arms treaty; a multilateral agreement; a multilateral system

Example 1 Many want to abandon the multilateral trade talks in Geneva.

Example 2 As the title of this session implies, strong multilateral action is needed.

⑳ **doomsday** ['duːmzdeɪ] ***n.***

a day or time when someone expects something terrible or unpleasant is going to happen; in the Christian religion, Doomsday is the last day of the world, on which God will judge everyone

synonym	domesday
word family	doom
related phrase	till/until doomsday; the doomsday scenario.

Example 1 This work will take me till doomsday.

Example 2 The film is based on the Mayan doomsday prediction.

㉑ **raze** [reɪz] ***vt.*** **(razed/razed/razing)**

to completely destroy something, such as a town or building, etc.

synonym	devastate
word family	razed; razing
related phrase	be razed to the ground

Example 1 They have razed those buildings to make way for the new highway.

Example 2 He razed her from his remembrance.

㉒ **sacrosanct** ['sækrəʊsæŋkt] ***adj.***

being special and unwilling to see something criticized or changed

synonym	sacred
word family	sacrosanctity

related phrase a sacrosanct ceremony

Example 1 Freedom of the press is sacrosanct.

Example 2 Weekends are sacrosanct in our family.

㉓ annihilate [ə'naɪəleɪt] *vt./vi.* (annihilated/annihilated/annihilating)

to destroy something completely; to defeat someone in a contest or argument etc.

synonym ruin; suppress; defeat
word family annihilation; annihilator; annihilated; annihilative
related phrase annihilate the planet; annihilate the visiting team

Example 1 Just one of these bombs could annihilate a city the size of New York.

Example 2 The Dutch annihilated the Olympic champions 5-0.

㉔ avalanche ['ævəlɑːnʃ] *n.*

a large mass of snow that falls down the side of a mountain

synonym slide; snowslide; lawine
word family avalanche (*v.*)
related phrase an avalanche of sth.

Example 1 Two skiers were killed in the avalanche.

Example 2 The school received an avalanche of applications.

㉕ protracted [prə'træktɪd] *adj.*

lasting a long time, especially longer than usual or longer than someone hoped

synonym prolonged; lingering; lengthy
word family protractor; protraction; protractedly; protract
related phrase a protracted civil war; the expense of a protracted legal battle; protracted negotiations/discussions/debate, etc.

Example 1 However, after protracted negotiations Ogden got the deal he wanted.

Example 2 We don't want to see Europe weakened by a protracted crisis.

㉖ from afar

from a long distance away

synonym from a distance; from way back
related phrase come from afar; a letter from afar

Example 1 I saw him from afar.

Example 2 Seen from afar, its towering buildings beckon the visitor in.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

AGM	agrarian	airbase	alertness	awning
bedridden	bulkhead	busker	buttercup	celluloid
choppy	chancery	clef	clinking	clique
clubhouse	cocoon	crossover	dazed	deathbed
dejected	desktop	disable	dispirit	dormitory
downwind	duo	easel	ellipse	emeritus
flashpoint	floodlight	floorboard	flyover	flywheel
forlorn	gamma	hairdryer	Haiti	hammock
headset	heartache	husky	hydrochloric	impotence
inanimate	incapacitated	Kuomintang	lettering	liqueur
masonry	mayhem	miscalculate	morgue	mutiny
navy	offload	outbuilding	outstretch	pancreatic
Passover	pickup	Playboy	PLC	polka
postgraduate	postmaster	posy	psychedelic	punt
putt	quadratic	rookie	sabbatical	scorpion
scuba	seabed	secretariat	shopfloor	slink
sloop	slush	snorkel	sodden	splint
staccato	stagecoach	stampede	starboard	starling
stirrup	sunrise	tarot	thanksgiving	torso
typhoon	warhead	wastepaper	watchfulness	waterlogged
weedkiller	workbook			

Part 2 Text

Charleston[1], Galveston[2], Johnstown—Our American Disasters

Our own land has experienced very few great convulsions of nature. True, there have been frequent earthshocks in California, and all along the Western coast, and occasionally slight tremors have been felt in other agrarian sections, but the damage done to life and property has been in almost every instance comparatively light. The only really great disaster of this class that has been recorded in the United States since the white man first set his foot upon the soil, occurred in 1886, when the partial destruction of Charleston, South Carolina, was accomplished by the earthquake and fire.

On the morning of August 28, a slight shock was felt throughout North and South Carolina, and in portions of Georgia. It was evidently a warning of the calamity to follow, but naturally was not so recognized, and no particular attention was paid to it. But on the night of August 31, at about ten o'clock, the city was rent asunder by a great shock ever and anon which swept over it from afar, carrying death and destruction in its path.

During the night there were ten distinct shocks, but they were only the subsiding of the earth-waves. The disaster was wrought by the first. Its force may be inferred from the fact that the whole area of the country between the Atlantic coast and the Mississippi river, and as far to the north as

Milwaukee, felt its power to a greater or lesser degree.

Charleston, however, was the special victim of this elemental destruction. The city was in ruins, two-thirds of its houses were uninhabitable. Railroads and telegraph lines were torn up and destroyed. Fires burst forth in different sections of the city, adding to the horror of the panic-stricken people. Forty lives were lost, over 100 seriously wounded were reported, and property valued at nearly $5,000,000 was destroyed.

A writer in the *Charleston News and Courier* gave a vivid account of the catastrophe. Extracts from his story follow:

"It is not given to many men to look in the face of the destroyer and yet live; but it is little to say that the group of strong men who shared the experiences of that awful night will carry with them the indelible recollection of it to their dying day. None expected to escape. A sudden stampede was simultaneously made for the open air, but before the door was reached all reeled together to the tottering wall and stopped, feeling that hope was vain; that it was only a question of death within the building or without, to be buried by the sinking roof or crushed by the toppling walls. Then the uproar slowly died away in seeming distance."

"The earth was still, and O, the blessed relief of that stillness! But how rudely the silence was broken! As we hurtled down the stairway and out into the street, already on every side arose the shrieks and clanking, the cries of pain and fear, the prayers and wailings of terrified women and children, commingling with the hoarse shouts of excited men. Out in the street the air was filled with a whitish cloud of dry, stifling dust, through which the floodlights flickered dimly. On every side were hurrying forms of men and women, bareheaded, partly dressed, many of whom were crazed with fear and excitement. Here a dejected woman is supported, half fainting, in the arms of her husband, who vainly tries to soothe her while he carries her to the open space at the street corner beside the crossover, where present safety seems assured; there a woman lies on the pavement with upturned face and outstretched limbs, and the crowd passes her by, not pausing to see whether she be alive or on her deathbed."

"A sudden light flares through a window overlooking the street, it becomes momentarily brighter, and the cry of fire resounds from the multitude. A rush is made toward the spot. A burly busker is seen through the flames trying to abscond. But at this moment, somewhere—out at sea, overhead, deep in the ground—is heard again the low, ominous roll which is already too well known to be mistaken. It grows louder and nearer, like the growl of a wild beast swiftly approaching his prey. All is forgotten in the frenzied rush for the open space, where alone there is hope of security, faint though it be."

"The tall buildings on either hand blot out the skies and stars and seem to overhang every foot of ground between them; their shattered cornices and coping, the tops of their frowning walls, appear piled from both sides to the center of the street. It seems that a touch would now send the shattered masses left standing, down upon the people below, who look up to them and shrink together as the tremor of the earthquake again passes under them, and the mysterious reverberations swell and roll along, like some aural summon of death. It passes away, and again is experienced the blessed feeling of deliverance from impending calamity, which it may well be believed evokes a mute but earnest offering of mingled prayer and thanksgiving from every heart in the cowering throng."

One of the most awful tragedies of modern times visited Galveston, Texas, on Saturday, September 8, 1900. A tempest, so terrible that no words can adequately describe its intensity, and a flood which swept over the city like a raging and choppy sea, left death and ruin behind it. Sixty-seven blocks in a thickly populated dormitory section of the city were devastated, and not a house withstood the storm. The few that might have held together if dependent upon their own construction and foundations, were buried beneath the stream of buildings and wreckage that rushed west from the Gulf of Mexico, demolishing hundreds of homes and carrying the unfortunate inmates to their death.

A terrific wind, which attained a velocity of from 100 to 120 miles an hour, blew the debris downwind inland and piled it in a hill ranging from ten to twenty feet high. Beneath this long ridge many hundred men, women, and children were buried, and cattle, horses and dogs, and other animals, were piled together in one confused mass.

The principal work of destruction was completed in six short hours, beginning at three o'clock in the afternoon and ending at nine o'clock the same night. In that brief time the discontinuous accumulations of many a life time were swept away, thousands of lives went out, and the dismal Sunday sunrise following the catastrophe found a stricken population disabled and helpless.

Every hour the situation changed for the worse, and the mind became dazed midst the gruesome scenes. The bodies of human beings, the carcasses of animals, were strewn on every hand. The bay was filled with them. Like jelly-fish, the corpses were swept with the changing tide. Here a face protruded above the water; there the foot of a child; here the long, silken tresses of a young girl; there a tiny hand, and just beneath the glassy surface of the water full outlines of bodies might be seen. Such scenes drove men and women to desperation and insanity. A number sought freedom in the death which they fought so stoutly. A young gory girl, who survived to find mother, father and sisters dead, crept far out on the wreckage and threw herself into the bay with heartache.

During the storm and afterward a great deal of looting was done. Many stores had been closed, their owners leaving to look after their families. The wind forced in the windows, and left the goods prey for the marauders. Ghouls stripped the dead bodies of jewelry and articles of value. Captain Rafferty, commanding the United States troops in the city, was asked for aid, and he sent seventy men, the remnant of a battery of artillery, to do police duty. Three pickup regiments of rookies were sent from Houston and the city was placed under martial law. Hundreds of desperate men romped on the streets, crazed with psychedelic liqueur, which many had drunk because nothing else could be obtained with which to quench their thirst. Numberless bottles and boxes of intoxicating beverages were scattered about and easy to obtain.

Robbery and insurrection continued during the night, and as the town was in darkness, the effort of the authorities to control the lawless element was not entirely successful. Big bonfires were built at various places from heaps of rubbish to enable troops the better to see where watchfulness was needed. Reports said that more than 100 looters and vandals were slain in the city and along the island beach.

The most rigid enforcement of martial law was not able to suppress robbery entirely. Thirty-three negroes, with effects taken from dead bodies, were tried by court-martial. They were convicted and ordered to be shot. One negro, a scorpion, had twenty-three human fingers with rings on them in his pocket.

An eye-witness of the melee said: "I was going to take the train at midnight, and was at the station when the worst of the storm came up. There were 150 people in the depot, and we all remained there for nine hours. The back part of the building blew in sabbatical morning and I returned to the Tremont house. The streets were literally filled with inanimate, downcast and dying people. The Sisters' Orphan Hospital was a terrible scene. I saw there over ninety dead children and eleven dead Sisters. We took the steamer Allen Charlotte across the bay, up Buffalo Bay, over to Houston in the morning, and I saw fully fifty dead bodies floating in the water. I saw one dray with sixty-four dead bodies of those outcasts being drawn by four horses to the wharves, where the bodies were unloaded on a tug and taken out in the gulf for burial."

Mr. Wortham, ex-secretary of state dealing with multilateral relationship, after an inspection of the scene, made this statement: "The situation at Galveston beggars description. Fully seventy-five percent of the business portion of the town is wrecked, and the same percentage of damage is to be found in the residence district. Along the wharf front great ocean steamers have bodily dumped themselves on the big piers, and lie there, great masses of iron and wood that even fire cannot totally destroy. The great outbuildings along the water front are smashed in on one side, unroofed and gutted throughout their length; their contents either piled in heaps or along the streets. Small tugs and sailboats have jammed themselves into buildings, where they were landed by the incoming waves and left by the receding waters."

"Houses are packed and jammed in great confusing masses in all the streets. Great piles of human bodies, dead animals, rotting vegetation, household furniture, and fragments of the houses themselves, are piled in confused heaps right in the main streets of the city. Along the Gulf front human bodies are floating around like cordwood."

As time passed on the terrible truth was pressed home on the minds of the people that the mortality by the storm had possibly reached 8,000, or nearly one-fourth of the entire population. The exact number will never be known, and no list of the dead could be accurately made out, for the terrible waters carried to sea and washed on distant and lonely shores many of the waterlogged torsos. The unknown dead of the Galveston horror will forever far surpass the number of those who are known to have perished in that awful night, when the tempest raged and the storm was on the sea, piling the waters to unprecedented heights on Galveston island.

One of the great doomsday catastrophes of the century in the United States was the flood that razed the Conemaugh[3] valley in Pennsylvania to the ground, on May 31, 1889. Though the amount of property destroyed was over $10,000,000 worth, this was the slightest element of loss. What makes the Johnstown flood so exceptional is the terrible fact that it swept away half as many lives as did the battle of Gettysburg, one of the bloodiest of the Civil War, and transformed a rich and prosperous valley for more than twenty miles into a vast sacrosanct charnel-house or morgue.

Johnstown is located on the Pennsylvania Railroad, seventy-eight miles southeast of Pittsburgh, and was at the time mentioned a city of about 28,000 inhabitants. It was the most important of the chain of boroughs annihilated; and as such has given the popular title by which the disaster is known. The Conemaugh Valley has long been famous for the beauty of its scenery. Lying on the lower western slope of the Alleghany mountains, the valley, enclosed between lofty hills, resembles in a general way an open curved hook, running from South Fork[4], where the inundation first made itself felt, in a southwesterly direction to Johnstown, and thence sixteen miles northwest to New Florence, where the more terrible effects of the flood ended, though its devastation did not

entirely cease at that point.

A lateral valley extends about six miles from South Fork in a southeasterly direction, at the head of which was located the Conemaugh Lake reservoir, owned and used as a summer resort by the South Fork Hunting and Fishing Club of Pittsburgh. In altitude this lake was about 275 feet above the Johnstown level, and it was about two and one-half miles long and one and one-half miles in its greatest width. In many places it was 100 feet deep, and it held a larger volume of water than any other reservoir in the United States. The dam that restrained the waters was nearly 1,000 feet in length, 110 feet in height, 90 feet thick at the base, and 25 feet wide at the top, which was used as a driveway. For ten years or more this dam was believed to be a standing menace to the Conemaugh Valley in times of freshet, though fully equal to all ordinary emergencies. With a dam which was admitted to be structurally weak and with insufficient means of discharging a surplus volume, it was feared that it was only a matter of time before such a reservoir, situated in a region notorious for its freshets, would yield to the enormous pressure and send down its resistless waters like an avalanche or a typhoon to devastate the valley.

This is precisely what it did do. A break came at three o'clock in the afternoon of May 31, caused by protracted rains, which raised the level of the lake. Men were at once put to work to open a sluice-way to ease the pressure, but all attempts were in vain. Two hours before the break came, the threatened danger had been reported in Johnstown, but little attention was paid to it, on the ground that similar alarms had previously proved ill-founded. There is no question that ample warning was given and that all the people in the valley could have escaped had they acted promptly.

When the center of the dam yielded at three o'clock, it did so in a break of 300 feet wide. Trees and rocks were hurled high in the air, and the vast, boiling flood rushed down the ravine like an arrow from a bow. It took one hour to empty the reservoir. In less than five minutes the flood reached South Fork, and thence, changing the direction of its rush, swept through the valley of the Conemaugh. With the procession of the deluge, trees, logs, debris of buildings, rocks, railroad iron, and the indescribable mass of drift were more and more compacted for battering power; and what the advance bore of the flood spared, the mass in the rear, made up of countless battering rams, destroyed.

The distance from Conemaugh Lake to Johnstown, something over 18 miles, was traversed in about seven minutes; and here the loss of life and the damage to property was simply appalling. Survivors who passed through the experience safely declare its horrors to have been far beyond the power of words to narrate.

(Adapted from *Complete Story of the San Francisco Horror*)

Notes

 Charleston

Charleston is the oldest and second-largest city in the U.S. state of South Carolina, the county seat of Charleston County, and the principal city in the Charleston-North Charleston-Summerville Metropolitan Statistical Area. The city lies just south of the geographical midpoint of South Carolina's coastline and is located on Charleston Harbor, an inlet of the Atlantic Ocean formed by the confluence of the Ashley and Cooper Rivers.

② Galveston

Galveston is a coastal resort city on Galveston Island and Pelican Island in the U.S. state of Texas. The community of 209.3 square miles (542 km^2), with an estimated population of 50,180 in 2015, is the county seat and second-largest municipality of Galveston County. It is within Houston-The Woodlands-Sugar Land metropolitan area.

③ Conemaugh

Conemaugh is a township in Somerset County, Pennsylvania, United States. The population was 7,452 at the 2000 census. It is part of the Johnstown, Pennsylvania Metropolitan Statistical Area. Conemaugh Township includes the towns of Jerome, Davidsville, Tire Hill, Thomas Mills, part of Holsopple, and surrounding countryside.

④ South Fork

South Fork is a borough in Cambria County, Pennsylvania, United States. It is part of the Johnstown, Pennsylvania Metropolitan Statistical Area. The population was 928 at the 2010 census, down from 1,138 at the 2,000 census.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Sentence Practice

Directions: Please rewrite the sentences with the proper forms of the given words.

choppy	raze	heartache	outcast	protract
indelible	hoarse	doomsday	impend	shun

1. The PLC (Programmable Logic Controller) project was prolonged by years of litigation.
2. The people of Haiti have endured and overcome turmoil and distress.
3. The celluloid is based on the Mayan prediction on the end of the world, which will apparently happen in the year 2012.
4. After he became bedridden, he found himself being avoided by many of his former friends.
5. On the 2008 Playboy Jazz Cruise, I saw another unforgettable performance.
6. A scuba diver is lucky when he receives warning of an upcoming snorkel problem.
7. The forlorn boy was brought up by the emeritus professor.
8. Their small, storm-weathered sloop is this month lowered into the surgy waters of the Baltic Sea.
9. The navvy began to sing that old song with his croaky voice.
10. The AGMs (Air-to-Ground Missiles) launched by the United States destroyed an Iraqi airbase last week.

III. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text B the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. flyover
2. alertness
3. clinking
4. mayhem
5. offload
6. dejected
7. husky
8. liberation
9. mutiny
10. incapacitated
11. rigorous
12. sodden
13. sum
14. terrified
15. inviolable

Antonyms

1. inhabitable
2. asynchronously
3. brightly
4. auspicious
5. sanity
6. ordinary
7. continuous
8. sufficient
9. law-abiding
10. hopeful

IV. Phrase Practice

Directions: Please translate the following verb+noun collocations into Chinese.

1. sweep the shopfloor
2. sweep a road through the thistles and thorns
3. sweep the tarot cards from the hammock
4. sweep a brush over the canvas
5. sweep the forest with a telescope
6. sweep the idea away
7. sweep the whole of Europe
8. sweep the presidential election of 2008
9. sweep an ellipse with his finger
10. sweep cars into the sea
11. sweep human rights aside
12. withstand a siege
13. withstand public criticism
14. withstand external pressure
15. withstand steam and splashes

V. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 13 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. In fact, the latest evidence reinforces the idea that the _____ drug could be the first new drug in decades to lift the fog of depression.
   A) pancreatic B) quadratic C) psychedelic D) hydrochloric
2. There's lyric poetry, there's love poetry, there are proverbs, and there are psalms of _____ and lament.
   A) starling B) awning C) lettering D) thanksgiving
3. When a piece of antimatter strikes the observatory and collides with "normal" matter, both particles immediately _____ and are transformed into gamma rays—which Fermi can detect.
   A) capitulate B) annihilate C) interpolate D) miscalculate
4. In the clash, Baisy's necklace fell off because the _____ had broken.
   A) clef B) clasp C) clime D) clique
5. Lots of houses here are abandoned and one of them became Andrey's sculpture studio. There he has an easel, some clay and a _____ for illumination and safety.
   A) flywheel B) floodlight C) floorboard D) flashpoint
6. Therefore, to help them form a good hygienic habit becomes an important issue of _____ management.
   A) masonry B) tracery C) chancery D) dormitory
7. Next month the amount of material recycled should further increase, since charges for wastepaper _____ will double.
   A) chirrup B) stirrup C) pickup D) buttercup
8. A man on his _____ called his wife and instructed her to open a workbook on the desktop.
   A) deathbed B) seabed C) warhead D) bulkhead
9. Deputy Prime Minister Sok An said a national level committee was established to investigate the horrific _____ during the Passover celebration.
   A) staccato B) stampede C) starboard D) stagecoach
10. Government offices and schools were closed on Friday in preparation for the arrival of the medium-strength _____, CNA reported.
    A) typhoon B) cocoon C) baboon D) festoon
11. Join a clubhouse or sing along with a _____ in the streets and see what happens.
    A) hairdryer B) weedkiller C) busker D) postmaster
12. The headsets also include a mix of features designed to make them appeal as a _____ business-personal machine.
    A) walkover B) crossover C) hangover D) pushover
13. Mother had always been just as she was, a pillar of strength, a _____ of wisdom, the one person who knew the answers to everything.
    A) splint B) fount C) punt D) putt

VI. Proofreading

Directions: Please identify and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

1. Music is a visual language which uses three basic components: pitch, rhythm, and timbre or the quality of a sound.
2. Bilateral and unilateral coordination mechanisms are used to address conflicts of privacy right protection.
3. She not only enjoys a posy of red roses but also receives comments and attention from her office mates, which will add her enjoyment.
4. After the initial cheers, the noise of the crowd began to die of as the famous dancing and singing duo started to perform.
5. Having stripped all his titles, he disappeared from the UN secretariat.

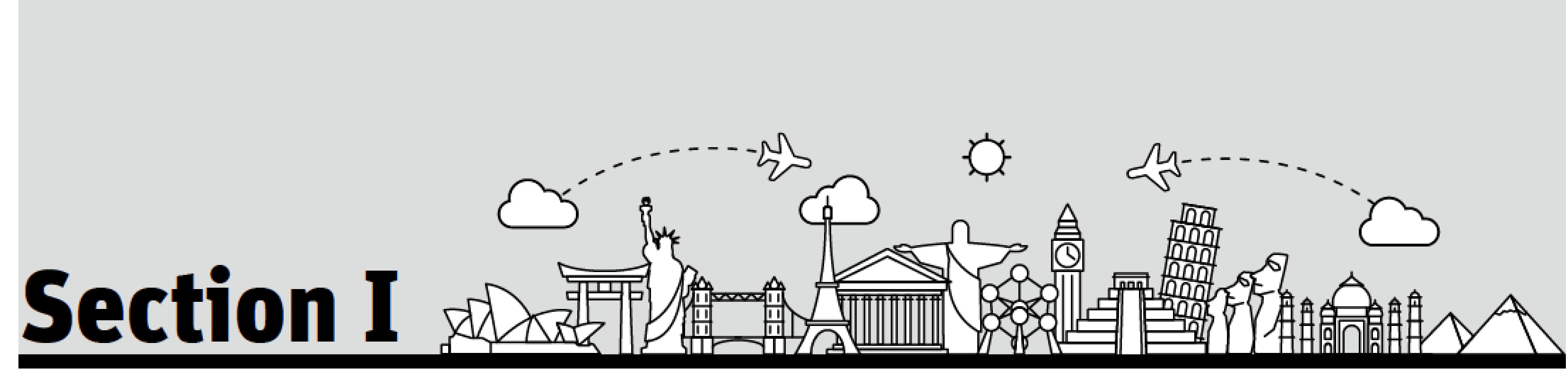
VII. Paraphrase

Directions: Please restate the following sentences using other words without altering the original meaning.

1. It was evidently a warning of the calamity to follow, but naturally was not so recognized, and no particular attention was paid to it.
2. During the night there were ten distinct shocks, but they were only the subsiding of the earth-waves. The disaster was wrought by the first.
3. But at this moment, somewhere—out at sea, overhead, deep in the ground—is heard again the low, ominous roll which is already too well known to be mistaken.
4. All is forgotten in the frenzied rush for the open space, where alone there is hope of security, faint though it be.
5. It passes away, and again is experienced the blessed feeling of deliverance from impending calamity, which it may well be believed evokes a mute but earnest offering of mingled prayer and thanksgiving from every heart in the cowering throng.
6. Hundreds of desperate men romped on the streets, crazed with psychedelic liqueur, which many had drunk because nothing else could be obtained with which to quench their thirst.
7. There is no question that ample warning was given and that all the people in the valley could have escaped had they acted promptly.
8. Survivors who passed through the experience safely declare its horrors to have been far beyond the power of words to narrate.



Unit 8
This Is America



Section I

Focus on Critical Thinking and Critical Reading (8)

Critical Reading Tools (ii): Inference

Inference is a mental process by which we reach a conclusion based on specific evidence. Two possible definitions of "inference" are:

1) A conclusion reached on the basis of evidence and reasoning.
2) The process of reaching such a conclusion.

For example:

- All humans are mortal.
- All Greeks are humans.
- All Greeks are mortal.

Inference is essential to, and part of, being human. We engage in inference every day. We interpret actions to be examples of behavior characteristics, intents, or expressions of particular feelings. We infer it is raining when we see someone with an open umbrella. We infer people are thirsty if they ask for a glass of water. We infer that evidence in a text is authoritative when it is attributed to a scholar in the field.

We want to find significance. We listen to remarks, and want to make sense of them. What might the speaker mean? Why is he or she saying that? We go beyond specific remarks to underlying significance or broader meaning. When we read that someone cheated on his or her income taxes, we might take that as an example of financial ingenuity, daring, or stupidity. We seek purposes and reasons.

Inferences are not random. While they may come about mysteriously with a sudden jump of recognition, a sense of "Ah ha!", inferences are very orderly. Inferences may be guesses, but they are educated guesses based on supporting evidence. The evidence seems to require that we reach a specific conclusion.

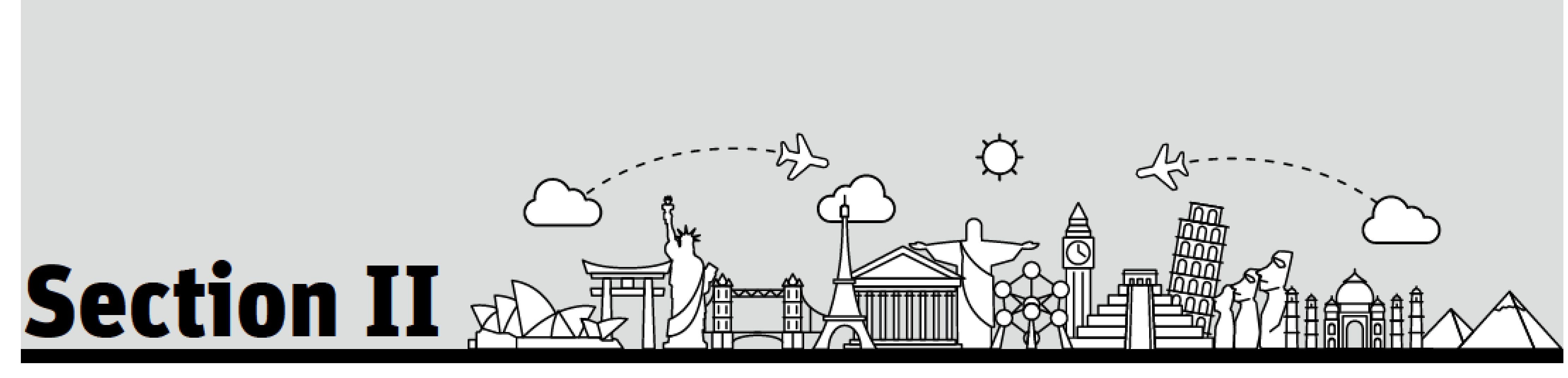
Evidence is said to imply; readers infer. While this image suggests an intent or power on the part of evidence that does not exist. How, after all, can a fact compel a certain conclusion? The image and resulting terminology are useful nonetheless. The sense of inevitability to the conclusion suggests that we did not jump to that conclusion or make it up on our own, but found it by reasoning from the evidence.

Inferences are not achieved with mathematical rigor. Inferences do not have the certainty obtained with deductive reasoning. Inferences tend to reflect prior knowledge and experience as well as personal beliefs and assumptions. Inferences thus tend to reflect one's stake in a situation or one's interests in the outcome. People may reason differently or bring different assumptions or premises to bear.

Given evidence that PCBs cause cancer in people, and that PCBs are in a particular water system, all reasonable people would reach the conclusion that that water system is dangerous to people. But given evidence that there is an increase in skin cancer among people who sunbathe, not all people would conclude that sunbathing causes skin cancer. Sunbathing, they might argue, may be coincidental with exposure to other cancer causing factors.

More often than not, disagreements are based not on differences in reasoning, but in the values, assumptions, or information brought to bear. If we believe that all politicians are crooks, we will infer that a specific politician's actions are scurrilous. If we believe that politicians act for the good of all, we will look for some benefit in their actions. Either way, we will try to use reason to explain the actions. We will look for some coherent explanation as a way of making sense of things. As we saw earlier, if we can understand why someone would do something, why someone might say something, why someone might act in a certain way, we feel we have made sense of the act or statement. It's like a murder trial: if we can put together opportunity, motive, and means, we can make a case.

The more evidence we have before us, and the more carefully we reason, the more valid our inferences. This principle plays an important role with reading: the more evidence within a text we incorporate into our interpretation, the more likely we have not gone astray from any intended meaning.



Section II

Text A: What Is America

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **gambit** ['gæmbɪt] ***n.***

an action or set of actions which someone carries out in order to try to gain an advantage in a situation or game; a remark which someone makes to another one in order to start or continue a conversation

synonym	ploy; stratagem
related phrase	a clever debating gambit; the opening gambit

Example 1 He sees the proposal as more of a diplomatic gambit than a serious defence proposal.

Example 2 Bernard made no response to Tom's conversational gambits.

② **slay** [sleɪ] ***vt./vi.*** **(slew/slain/slaying)**

to kill someone or something in a violent way

synonym	kill
word family	slayer
related phrase	slay the enemies; be slain in the street

Example 1 The slaves slew their masters with swords.

Example 2 The city was slain by the volcanicity.

③ **oblivious** [ə'blɪvɪəs] ***adj.***

being not aware of something

synonym	unaware; amnesic; forgetful; detached
antonym	aware
word family	oblivion; obliviousness
related phrase	seemingly/apparently oblivious; be oblivious to sth.; be oblivious of sb./sth.

Example 1 She lay motionless where she was, oblivious to pain.

Example 2 He seemed oblivious to the fact that he had hurt her.

④ **indemnification** [ɪnˌdemnɪfɪ'keɪʃən] ***n.***

a sum of money paid in compensation for loss or injury; an act of compensation for actual loss or

damage or for trouble and annoyance

synonym amend; indemnity; restitution; redress; protection
antonym demnification
word family indemnify
related phrase indemnification for loss; indemnification recompense

Example 1 We hope indemnification will be made for all expenses incurred.

Example 2 They are extensively used for such articles in international trade, and insurance companies can have no occasion to refuse indemnification on such grounds.

⑤ **impersonate** [ɪm'pɜːsəneɪt] ***vt./vi.*** **(impersonated/impersonated/impersonating)**

to pretend to be someone, either to deceive people or to make people laugh

synonym imitate; portray; disguise
antonym personate
word family impersonation; impersonator; impersonal
related phrase impersonate sb./sth.

Example 1 He was returned to prison in 1977 for impersonating a police officer.

Example 2 In the film he amusingly impersonates a woman.

⑥ **yardstick** ['jɑːdˌstɪk] ***n.***

a standard for comparison when someone is judging other people or things

synonym standard; measure; model
related phrase as a yardstick; a yardstick of success

Example 1 Profit is the most important yardstick of success for any business.

Example 2 These subjects are used as a yardstick against which to measure the children's progress.

⑦ **mystique** [mɪ'stiːk] ***n.***

something that is thought to be special and people do not know much about

synonym mystery
word family mysticism; mystical; mystically; mystify
related phrase maintain a certain mystique; the mystique that surrounds fine art

Example 1 His book destroyed the mystique of monarchy.

Example 2 Some of the mystique surrounding the presidency has gone forever.

⑧ **chuckle** ['tʃʌkəl] ***vt./vi.*** **(chuckled/chuckled/chuckling)**

to laugh quietly

synonym laugh
word family chuckle (*n.*)
related phrase chuckle with delight

Example 1 The banker chuckled and said: "Of course not."

Example 2 What are you chuckling about?

⑨ **unfurl** [ʌn'fɜːl] ***vt./vi.*** **(unfurled/unfurled/unfurling)**

to open something rolled or folded such as an umbrella, sail, or flag etc., so that it is spread out; to be aware of something or can see something as they happen or develop, especially events, stories, or scenes etc.

synonym	decoil; reveal
antonym	furl
word family	unfurled; unfurling
related phrase	unfurl an umbrella; unfurl the truth

Example 1 Once outside the inner breakwater, we began to unfurl all the sails.

Example 2 The dramatic changes in Europe continue to unfurl.

⑩ **enunciate** [ɪ'nʌnsɪeɪt] ***vt./vi.*** **(enunciated/enunciated/enunciating)**

to pronounce words clearly and carefully; to express an idea clearly and exactly

synonym	illustrate; enounce; articulate
word family	enunciation
related phrase	enunciate one's intentions; enunciate his theory to his colleagues

Example 1 His voice was harsh as he enunciated each word carefully.

Example 2 She enunciates very slowly and carefully.

⑪ **inquisitive** [ɪn'kwɪzɪtɪv] ***adj.***

liking finding out about things, especially secret things

synonym	curious; intrigued; speculative
word family	inquisitiveness; inquisition; inquisitively; inquisite
related phrase	a cheerful, inquisitive little boy; an inquisitive mind

Example 1 Barrow had an inquisitive nature.

Example 2 I'd have asked more questions, but I didn't want to seem inquisitive.

⑫ **decoy** [diː'kɔɪ] ***vt./vi.*** **(decoyed/decoyed/decoying)**

to lure or entrap with or as if with a decoy; to become decoyed

synonym	tempt; inveigle
word family	decoy (*n.*)
related phrase	decoy enemy troops into a place; decoy sb. away from the office

Example 1 He used a whistle to decoy the birds within range.

Example 2 The girls decoy more easily than most other children.

⑬ **strut** [strʌt] ***vt./vi.*** **(strutted/strutted/strutting)**

to walk in a proud way, with one's head held high and one's chest out, as if someone is very important; to show one's skill at doing something, especially dancing or performing

synonym swagger; prance; boast
word family strut (*n.*); strutted; strutting
related phrase strut around/about/across, etc.; strut one's talent

Example 1 He struts around town like he owns the place.

Example 2 He strutted up and down before the manager.

⑭ modulate ['mɒdjʊleɪt] ***vt./vi.*** **(modulated/modulated/modulating)**

to change or vary one's loudness, pitch, or tone in order to create a particular effect; to alter something so that it is more suitable for a particular situation

synonym set; regulate; coordinate
word family modulation; modulated
related phrase modulate a poem; modulate the sound on the TV; modulate the disease process

Example 1 He carefully modulated his voice.

Example 2 These chemicals modulate the effect of potassium.

⑮ peruse [pə'ru:z] ***vt.*** **(perused/perused/perusing)**

to read something such as a letter, article, or document, etc.

synonym read
word family perusal
related phrase peruse the contract

Example 1 We perused the company's financial statements for the past five years.

Example 2 She leant forward to peruse the document more closely.

⑯ indestructible [ˌɪndɪ'strʌktɪbəl] ***adj.***

being very strong and cannot be destroyed

synonym durable; undestroyable
antonym destructible
word family indestructibility; indestructibly
related phrase her indestructible optimism

Example 1 This type of plastic is almost indestructible.

Example 2 Gold is virtually indestructible.

⑰ subterfuge ['sʌbtəfju:dʒ] ***n.***

a trick or a dishonest way of getting what someone wants

synonym excuse; trick
related phrase do sth. by subterfuge

Example 1 Most people can see right through that type of subterfuge.

Example 2 Sereni was lured to Moscow by subterfuge.

⑱ **babble** ['bæbəl] ***vt./vi.*** **(babbled/babbled/babbling)**

to talk in a confused or excited way

synonym tell; reveal; divulge

word family babbler; babble (*n.*); babbling

related phrase babble without stopping; babble out the secret

Example 1 I have no idea what he was babbling on about.

Example 2 They all babbled simultaneously.

⑲ **dawdle** ['dɔːdəl] ***vt./vi.*** **(dawdled/dawdled/dawdling)**

to spend more time than is necessary going somewhere

synonym linger; dally

word family dawdler

related phrase dawdle over/away/along sth.

Example 1 Eleanor will be back any moment, if she doesn't dawdle.

Example 2 I dawdled over a second cup of coffee.

⑳ **in vain**

without effect or avail; to no purpose; in an improper or irreverent manner

synonym for nothing; of no effect; vainly

related phrase do sth. in vain; pass one's life in vain; call in vain for help

Example 1 She and a neighbour tried in vain to revive him.

Example 2 It became obvious that all her complaints were in vain.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII)

alpha-numeric	atheist	besiege	brotherhood	cadre
celluloid	faddist	fleeting	forecourt	garble
gentile	goon	herein	hubbub	illusion
keystone	legitimate	machinist	malaise	methanolic
mislay	Moslem	overplay	outlaw	polymer
prank	psychoanalytic	rhinoceros	salver	setter
siesta	silica	slink	spacecraft	splay
starlight	sultan	supersonic	tripper	vagabond
valiancy	walkabout	waterwheel	wren	

Part 2 Text

What Is America

Let me begin my gambit with two impressions I had before I went to America. One was an incident and the other an idea; and when taken together they illustrate the attitude I mean. The first keystone is that nobody should be ashamed of thinking a thing funny because it is foreign; the second is that he should be ashamed of thinking it wrong because it is funny. Therefore I put at the beginning two working examples of what I felt about America before I saw it; the sort of thing that a man has a right to enjoy as a joke, and the sort of thing he has a duty to understand and respect, because it is the explanation of the prank.

When I went to the American consulate to regularise my passports, I was capable of expecting the American consulate to be American. Embassies and consulates are by tradition like islands of the soil for which they stand; and I have often found the tradition corresponding to a truth. In the heat and hubbub of quarrelling Turks and Egyptians, I have come suddenly, as with the cool shock of his own shower-bath, on the listless amiability of the English gentleman. The officials I interviewed were very American, especially in being very polite. They put in my hands a form to be filled up, to all appearance like other forms I had filled up in other passport offices. But in reality it was very different from any form I had ever filled up in my life. At least it was a little like a freer form of the game called "Confessions" which my friends and I invented in our youth; an examination paper containing questions like, "If you saw a rhinoceros in the forecourt, what would you do?" One of my friends, I remember, wrote, "Take the pledge." But that is another story, and might bring Mr. Pussyfoot Johnson on the scene before his time.

One of the questions on the paper was, "Are you an anarchist?" To which an oblivious philosopher would naturally feel inclined to answer, "What the devil has that to do with you? Are you an atheist?" Then there was the question, "Are you in favour of subverting the government of the United States by force?" Against this I should write, "I prefer to answer that question at the end of my tour and not the beginning." The inquisitor, in his more than morbid curiosity, had then written down, "Are you a polygamist?" The answer to this is, "No such luck" or "Not such a goon", according to our experience of the other sex. But perhaps a better answer would be that given to W. T. Stead when he circulated the rhetorical question, "Shall I slay my brother Boer?"—the answer that ran, "Never interfere in family matters." But among many things that amused me almost to the point of treating the form thus disrespectfully, the most amusing was the thought of the heinous outlaw who should feel compelled to treat it respectfully. I like to think of the foreign desperado, seeking to slip into America with official papers under official indemnification, and sitting down to write with a beautiful gravity, "I am an anarchist. I hate you all and wish to destroy you." Or, "I intend to subvert by force the government of the United States as soon as possible, sticking the long sheath-knife in my left trouser-pocket into Mr. Harding at the earliest opportunity." Or again, "Yes, I am a polygamist all right, and my forty-seven wives are accompanying me on the voyage impersonated as secretaries." There seems to be a certain simplicity of mind about these answers; and it is reassuring to know that anarchists and polygamists are so pure and good that the police have only to ask them questions and they are certain to tell no lies.

Now that is a yardstick of the sort of foreign practice, founded on foreign problems, at which

a man's first impulse is naturally to laugh. Nor have I any intention of apologising for my laughter. A man is perfectly entitled to laugh at a thing because he happens to find it incomprehensible. What he has no right to do is to laugh at it as incomprehensible, and then criticize it as if he comprehended it. The very fact of its unfamiliarity and mystique ought to set him thinking about the deeper causes that make people so different from himself, and that without merely assuming that they must be inferior to himself.

Superficially this is rather a surreal business. It would be easy enough to suggest that in this America has introduced a quite abnormal spirit of inquisition; an interference with liberty unknown among all the ancient despotisms and aristocracies. About that there will be something to be said later; but superficially it is true that this degree of officialism is comparatively unique. In a walkabout which I took only the year before I had occasion to have my papers passed by governments which many worthy people in the West would vaguely identify with corsairs and assassins; I have stood on the other side of Jordan, in the land ruled by a rude Arab chief, where the police looked so like brigands that one wondered what the brigands looked like. But they did not ask me whether I had come to subvert the power of the Shereef; and they did not exhibit the faintest curiosity about my personal views on the ethical basis of civil authority. These ministers of ancient Moslem despotism did not care about whether I was an anarchist; and naturally would not have minded if I had been a polygamist. The Arab chief was probably a polygamist himself. These slaves of Asiatic autocracy were content, in the old liberal fashion, to judge me by my actions; they did not inquire into my thoughts. They held their power as limited to the limitation of practice; they did not forbid me to hold a theory. It would be easy to argue herein that Western democracy persecutes where even Eastern despotism tolerates or emancipates. It would be easy to develop the fancy that, as compared with the sultans of Turkey or Egypt, the American Constitution is a thing like the Spanish Inquisition.

Only the traveller who stops at that point is totally wrong; and the traveller only too often does stop at that point. He has found something to make him chuckle, and he will not suffer it to make him think. And the remedy is not to unsay what he has said, not even, so to speak, to unlaugh what he has laughed, not to deny that there is something unique and curious about this American inquisition into our abstract opinions, but rather to continue the train of thought, and follow the admirable advice of Mr. H. G. Wells, who said, "It is not much good thinking of a thing unless you think it out." It is not to deny that American officialism is rather peculiar on this point, but to inquire what it really is which makes America peculiar, or which is peculiar to America. In short, it is to get some ultimate idea of what America is; and the answer to that question will unfurl something much deeper and grander and more worthy of our intelligent interest.

It may have seemed something less than a compliment to compare the American Constitution to the Spanish Inquisition. But oddly enough, it does involve a truth; and still more oddly perhaps, it does involve a compliment. The American Constitution does resemble the Spanish Inquisition in this: that it is founded on a creed. America is the only nation in the world that is founded on a creed. That creed is set forth with dogmatic and even theological lucidity in the United States Declaration of Independence[1]; perhaps the only piece of practical politics that is also theoretical politics and also great literature. It enunciates that all men are equal in their claim to justice, that governments exist to give them that justice, and that their authority is for that reason just. It certainly does condemn anarchism, and it does also by inference condemn atheism, since it clearly

names the Creator as the ultimate authority from whom these equal rights are derived. Nobody expects a modern political system to proceed logically in the application of such dogmas, and in the matter of God and Government it is naturally God whose claim is taken more lightly. The point is that there is a creed, if not about divine, at least about human things.

Now a creed is at once the broadest and the narrowest thing in the world. In its nature it is as broad as its scheme for a brotherhood of all men. In its nature it is limited by its definition of the nature of all men. This was true of the Christian Church, which was truly said to exclude neither Jew nor Greek, but which did definitely substitute something else for Jewish religion or Greek philosophy. It was truly said to be a net drawing in of all kinds; but a net of a certain pattern, the pattern of Peter the Fisherman. And this is true even of the most disastrous garbles or degradations of that creed; and true among others of the Spanish Inquisition ...

When we realise the democratic design of such a cosmopolitan commonwealth, and compare it with our insular reliance or instincts, we see at once why such a thing has to be not only democratic but dogmatic. We see why in some points it tends to be inquisitive or intolerant. Any one can see the practical point by merely transferring into private life a problem like that of the two academic anarchists, who might by coincidence be called the two Herberts. Suppose somebody said, "Do let me bring old Colonel Robinson down for the week-end; he's a bit of a crank but quite interesting." We should not anticipate the colonel running amuck with a carving-knife and offering up human sacrifice in the garden; for these are not among the daily habits of an old English colonel; and because we know his habits, we do not care about his opinions. But suppose somebody wished to add a Hairy Ainu to the family party at Christmas, explaining that his point of view was so individual and interesting, we should want to know a little more about it and him. We should be decoyed to draw up as fantastic an examination paper as that presented to the emigrant going to America. We should ask what a Hairy Ainu was, and how hairy he was, and above all what sort of Ainu he was. Is the Hairy Ainu content with hair, or does he wear any clothes? If the police insist on his wearing togs, will he recognise the authority of the police? In short, as in the American formula, is he an anarchist?

Of course this generalisation about America, like other historical things, is subject to all sorts of cross divisions and exceptions, to be considered in their place. The negroes are a special problem, because of what white men in the past did to them. The Jews are a special problem, because of what they and the Gentiles, in the past, present, and future, seem to have the habit of doing to each other. But the point is not that nothing exists in America except this idea; it is that nothing like this idea exists anywhere except in America. This idea is not internationalism; on the contrary it is decidedly nationalism. In a word, what is unique is not America but what is called Americanisation. We understand nothing till we understand the amazing ambition to Americanise the Kamskatkan and the Hairy Ainu. We are not trying to Anglicise thousands of French cooks or Italian organ-grinders. France is not trying to Gallicise thousands of English trippers or German prisoners of war. America is the one place in the world where this process, healthy or unhealthy, possible or impossible, is going on. It would be truer to say it is the nationalisation of the internationalised. It is making a home out of vagabonds and a nation out of exiles. This is what at once illuminates and softens the moral regulations which we may really think faddist or fanatical. They are abnormal; but in one sense this experiment of a home for the homeless is abnormal. In short, it has long been recognised that America was an asylum. It is only since Prohibition that it has looked a little like a lunatic

asylum.

It was before sailing for America, as I have said, that I stood with the official paper in my hand and these thoughts in my head. It was while I stood on English soil that I passed through the two stages of smiling and then sympathising; of realising that my momentary amusement, at being asked if I were not an Anarchist, was partly due to the fact that I was not an American. I did my best to persuade my countrymen not to appeal to the American as if he were a rather dowdy Englishman, who had been rusticating in the provinces and had not heard the latest news about the town. I shall record later some of those arresting realities which the traveller does not expect; and which, in some cases I fear, he actually does not see because he does not expect. I shall try to do justice to the psychology of what Mr. Belloc has called "Eye-Openers in Travel". But there are some things about America that a man ought to see even with his eyes shut. One is that a state that came into existence solely through its repudiation and malaise of the British Crown is not likely to be a respectful copy of the British Constitution. Another is that the chief mark of the United States Declaration of Independence is something that is not only absent from the British Constitution, but something which all our constitutionalists have invariably thanked God, with the jolliest strutting and bragging, that they had kept out of the British Constitution. It is the thing called abstraction or academic logic. It is the thing which such jolly people call theory; and which those who can practise it call thought. And the theory or thought is the very last to which English people are accustomed, either by their social structure or their traditional teaching. It is the theory of equality. It is the pure classic conception that no man must aspire to be anything more than a citizen, and that no man should endure to be anything less. The idealism of England has not been primarily the romance of the citizen. But the idealism of America, we may safely say, still revolves entirely round the citizen and his romance. The realities are quite another matter, and we shall consider in its place the question of whether the ideal will be able to shape the realities or will merely be beaten shapeless by them. The ideal is besieged by inequalities of the most towering and insane description in the industrial and economic field. It may be devoured by modern capitalism, perhaps the worst inequality that ever existed among men. Of all that we shall speak later. But citizenship is still the American ideal; there is an army of actualities opposed to that ideal; but there is no ideal opposed to that ideal. American plutocracy has never got itself respected like English aristocracy. Citizenship is the American ideal; and it has never been the English ideal. But it is surely an ideal that may stir some imaginative generosity and respect in an Englishman, if he will condescend to be also a man. In this vision of moulding many peoples into the visible image of the citizen, he may see a spiritual adventure which he can admire from the outside, at least as much as he admires the valiancy of the Moslems and much more than he admires the virtues of the Middle Ages. He needs not modulate himself to develop equality, but he needs not modulate himself to misunderstand it. He may at least understand what Jefferson and Lincoln meant, and he may possibly find some assistance in this task by perusing what they said. He may realise that equality is not some crude fairy tale about all men being equally tall or equally tricky; which we not only cannot believe but cannot believe in anybody believing. It is an absolute of morals by which all men have a value invariable and indestructible and a dignity as intangible as death. He may at least be a philosopher and see that equality is an idea; and not merely one of these soft-headed sceptics who, having risen by low subterfuges to high places, drink bad champagne in tawdry hotel lounges, and babble each other twenty times over, with unwearied iteration, that equality is an illusion.

In truth it is inequality that is the illusion. The extreme disproportion between men, that we seem to see in life, is a thing of changing lights and lengthening shadows, twilight full of fancies and distortions. We find a man famous and cannot live long enough to find him forgotten; we see a race dominant and cannot dawdle to see it decay. It is the experience of men that always returns to the equality of men; it is the average that ultimately justifies the average man. It is when men have seen and suffered much and come at the end of more elaborate experiments, that they see men as men under an equal light of death and daily laughter; and none the less mysterious for being many. Nor is it in vain that these Western democrats have sought the blazonry of their flag in that great multitude of immortal lights that endure behind the fires we see, and gathered them into the corner of Old Glory[2] whose ground is like the glittering night. For veritably, in the spirit as well as in the symbol, suns and moons and meteors pass and fill our skies with a fleeting and almost theatrical conflagration; and wherever the old shadow stoops upon the earth, the stars return and the starlight remains.

(Adapted from *What I Saw in America*)

Notes

① United States Declaration of Independence

The United States Declaration of Independence is the statement adopted by the Second Continental Congress meeting at the Pennsylvania State House (Independence Hall) in Philadelphia on July 4, 1776, which announced that the thirteen American colonies, then at war with the Kingdom of Great Britain, regarded themselves as thirteen newly independent sovereign states, and no longer under British rule. Instead they formed a new nation—the United States of America. John Adams was a leader in pushing for independence, which was passed on July 2 with no opposing vote cast. The Committee of Five had already drafted the formal declaration to be ready when Congress voted on independence.

② Old Glory

Old Glory is a nickname for the flag of the United States. The original "Old Glory" was a flag owned by the 19th-century American sea captain William Driver (March 17, 1803–March 3, 1886), who flew the flag during his career at sea and later brought it to Nashville, Tennessee, where he settled. Driver greatly prized the flag and ensured its safety from the Confederates, who attempted to seize the flag during the American Civil War. After the war, Driver's daughter and niece feuded over which of them owned the original Old Glory. In 1922, both flags claimed to be the original "Old Glory" became part of the collection of the Smithsonian Institution, where they remain at the National Museum of American History.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (250-300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text A the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. capability 2. misrepresentation
3. lure 4. hateful
5. linger 6. journey
7. commiserating 8. questioning
9. vaguely 10. detailed

Antonyms

1. fold 2. theoretical
3. vice 4. stinginess
5. mortal 6. heterodox
7. fragile 8. damage
9. cool 10. enclosed

III. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 12 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. Wren has a ________ fascination with psychoanalytic books.
   A) morbid B) monastic C) methanolic D) malicious
2. The ________ asked for information about ASCII from the expert and later learned that it was the code most commonly used to represent alphanumeric data in a computer.
   A) incisor B) inquisitor C) guarantor D) gyrator
3. In all the ________ over the waterwheel and other machines, one might be excused for missing others' words.
   A) bubble B) rubble C) hubble D) hubbub
4. Not all of the staff should be measured by this ________, but the machinist has raised some serious questions.
   A) slapstick B) yardstick C) broomstick D) drumstick

5. Commercial pilots will regain the ________ they had in the 1960s as thousands of them are sent for the stars by supersonic spacecrafts.
   A) mysticism B) mystification C) mystique D) mystic
6. The young women were determined to get to the bottom of the matter, but the cadre answered disregardfully and ________.
   A) persuasively B) pervasively C) evasively D) eventually
7. Their conflicts not only dissolved their ________, but strengthened the Evils which they had buried beneath the cold earth.
   A) womanhood B) childhood C) brotherhood D) adulthood
8. The so-called ________ Spanish Armada was a Spanish fleet of 130 ships that sailed from La Coruña in August 1588, under the command of the Duke of Medina Sidonia with the purpose of escorting an army from Flanders to invade England.
   A) indestructible B) indivisible C) invisible D) inaccessible
9. The time of siesta is ________ and thus it seems so precious.
   A) floating B) fleeting C) flying D) flashing
10. These chemicals may ________ the effect of silica.
   A) peculate B) calculate C) tabulate D) modulate
11. If the policy like this went on, it would not be long that our descendants would see the phenomenon that people ________ each other openly.
   A) slay B) splay C) mislay D) overlay
12. Walking or riding on a mule, a ________ can look into the monasteries one by one.
   A) polymer B) salver C) setter D) tripper

IV. Cultural Kaleidoscope

Directions: Please choose the most appropriate answer to each statement.

1. ________ is a former German monetary unit worth one hundredth of a Deutsche mark.
   A) Rupee B) Pfennig C) Florin D) Peso
2. ________ involves marriage with more than one spouse. In India, Malaysia, Philippines, Singapore and Sri Lanka it is only legal for ________.
   A) Monogamy, Muslims B) Monogamy, Flemish people
   C) Polygamy, Muslims D) Polygamy, Flemish people
3. ________ is **NOT** one of the most famous religious festivals celebrated in the Muslim community across the world.
   A) Passover B) Eid al-Fitr C) Mawlid D) Day of Ashura
4. The preamble says like this: We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect Union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquility, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this ________.
   A) United States Declaration of Independence
   B) Constitution for the United States of America

C) Bill of Rights

D) Declaration of the Rights of Man and of the Citizen

5. The ________ are people who have inhabited Great Britain from the 5th century. They comprise people from Germanic tribes who migrated to the island from continental Europe, their descendants and indigenous British groups who adopted some aspects of its culture and language.

A) Anglo-Normans B) Anglo-Germans

C) Anglo-Celts D) Anglo-Saxons

V. Rhetoric Appreciation

Directions: A rhetorical device or a figure of speech is a technique that an author or speaker uses to convey to the reader or listener a meaning with the goal of persuading him or her towards considering a topic from a different perspective, using language designed to encourage or evoke an emotional response in the audience. The widely used rhetorical devices include parallelism, repetition, antithesis, simile, quotation, climax, alliteration, metaphor, end rhyme, inversion, etc. Please identify the rhetorical devices used in the following sentences. And then reread Text A to find out the rhetoric in use as much as you can.

1. ________________

... Mr. H. G. Wells, who said, "It is not much good thinking of a thing unless you think it out."

2. ________________

Now a creed is at once the broadest and the narrowest thing in the world.

3. ________________

When we realise the democratic design of such a cosmopolitan commonwealth, and compare it with our insular reliance or instincts, we see at once why such a thing has to be not only democratic but dogmatic.

4. ________________

The negroes are a special problem, because of what white men in the past did to them. The Jews are a special problem, because of what they and the Gentiles, in the past, present, and future, seem to have the habit of doing to each other.

5. ________________

He needs not modulate himself to develop equality, but he needs not modulate himself to misunderstand it. (Para. 11)

VI. Translation Practice

Directions: Please put the following sentences into Chinese.

1. The very fact of its unfamiliarity and mystique ought to set him thinking about the deeper causes that make people so different from himself, and that without merely assuming that they must be inferior to himself.
2. Nobody expects a modern political system to proceed logically in the application of such dogmas, and in the matter of God and Government it is naturally God whose claim is taken more lightly.
3. Any one can see the practical point by merely transferring into private life a problem like that

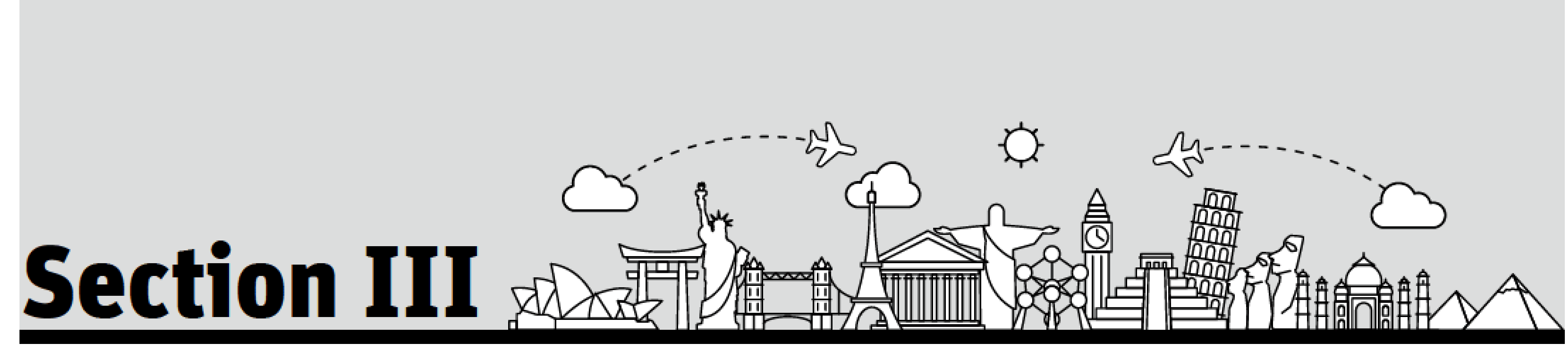
of the two academic anarchists, who might by a coincidence be called the two Herberts.

4. He may at least be a philosopher and see that equality is an idea; and not merely one of these soft-headed sceptics who, having risen by low subterfuges to high places, drink bad champagne in tawdry hotel lounges, and babble each other twenty times over, with unwearied iteration, that equality is an illusion.
5. It is when men have seen and suffered much and come at the end of more elaborate experiments, that they see men as men under an equal light of death and daily laughter; and none the less mysterious for being many.

VII. Writing Workshop

Directions: Please choose one from the following tasks and complete it as required.

1. Some people may be impressed by successful experiences of American politicians starting from a humble childhood; some may be deeply absorbed by the brilliant scenery and fantastic social life on celluloid; others call America "the melting pot" because of the diversity of culture … What are your impressions of America?
2. What do you think contributes a lot to the spirit of American people, inquisition, industriousness or anything else?



Section III

Text B: Origin of the Anglo-Americans and Its Importance in Relation to Their Future Condition

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **callow** ['kæləʊ] ***adj.***

having very little experience or knowledge of the way someone should behave as an adult

synonym	immature; fledgling; unfledged
antonym	mature; experienced
word family	callowness; callowly
related phrase	a callow youth; callow birds

Example 1 He was a callow youth when he joined the newspaper.

Example 2 I believed a lot of things in my callow youth that I don't believe now.

② **compere** ['kɒmpeə] ***vt.*** **(compered/compered/compering)**

to introduce the people who take part in a show

synonym	host
word family	compere (*n.*)
related phrase	compere an interview

Example 1 Sarita Sabharwal compered the programme.

Example 2 They asked Paul to compere.

③ **vault** [vɔːlt] ***n.***

an arched structure that forms a roof or ceiling; a secure room where money and other valuable things can be kept safely; a room underneath a church or in a cemetery where people are buried, usually the members of a single family; the act of vaulting

synonym	crypt; undercroft; leap
word family	vaulter; vaulted; vaulting; vault (*v.*)
related phrase	the vault of a great cathedral; in bank vaults; the family vault; win first place for the pole vault

Example 1 The vault of this cathedral is very high.

Example 2 He ordered that Matilda's body should be buried in the family vault.

④ **adorn** [ə'dɔːn] ***vi.*** **(adorned/adorned/adorning)**

to make something look more beautiful

synonym	decorate
word family	adornment
related phrase	be adorned with

Example 1 The platform was adorned with flowers.

Example 2 The pretty girl doesn't like to adorn herself with jewels.

⑤ **doyen** ['dɔɪən] ***n.***

the oldest and most experienced and respected member of a group or profession etc.

synonym	top; predecessor
antonym	doyenne
related phrase	the doyen of political interviewers

Example 1 He was the doyen of sports commentators.

Example 2 Arthur C. Clarke is the doyen of science fiction writers.

⑥ **impromptu** [ɪm'prɒmptjuː] ***adj.***

doing without planning or organizing something in advance

synonym	off-the-cuff
word family	impromptu (*n.*&*adv.*); impromptus
related phrase	an impromptu speech/party/meeting etc.

Example 1 This afternoon the Palestinians held an impromptu press conference.

Example 2 The band gave an impromptu concert.

⑦ **distemper** [dɪ'stempə] ***vt.*** **(distempered/distempered/distempering)**

to derange physically or mentally; to disturb

synonym	agitate
antonym	temper
word family	distemper (*n.*); distemperedness; distemperature; distempered; distemperedly
related phrase	distemper the market; the distempered personality

Example 1 The lady was distempered in her mind, and was under the conduct of her own relations.

Example 2 The financial system is distempered because of ownership discrimination at the privately-run banks.

⑧ **groggy** ['grɒgɪ] ***adj.***

feeling weak and rather ill

synonym	weak; powerless
antonym	strong; powerful
word family	grog; grogginess

related phrase make sb. groggy

Example 1 She was feeling a little groggy when I saw her.

Example 2 I felt really groggy after 15 hours on the plane.

⑨ **exacting** [ɪɡ'zæktɪŋ] ***adj.***

demanding hard work and a great deal of care

synonym demanding; fastidious; strict; rigid; precise

word family exact; exaction

related phrase exacting standards/demands/requirements, etc.

Example 1 She didn't think that he was well enough to carry out such an exacting task.

Example 2 He could never live up to his father's exacting standards.

⑩ **ebb** [eb] ***n.***

one of the regular periods, usually two per day, when the sea gradually falls to a lower level as the tide moves away from the land

synonym recession; decline

antonym flood tide

word family ebb (*v.*)

related phrase the spring ebb tide; at a low ebb; ebb and flow; the ebb and flow of the conversation

Example 1 When the tide ebbs, you can paddle out for a mile and barely get your ankles wet.

Example 2 His confidence is at a low ebb.

⑪ **pillage** ['pɪlɪdʒ] ***vt./vi.*** **(pillaged/pillaged/pillaging)**

to steal property from a place using violent methods

synonym hijack; harry; plunder; despoil; prey upon; rob of

word family pillage; pillager

related phrase pillage the wealth and treasure

Example 1 Soldiers went on a rampage, pillaging stores and shooting.

Example 2 It was based on western military dominance which allowed the west to pillage the resources and wealth of these areas.

⑫ **miser** ['maɪzə] ***n.***

someone that seems to hate spending money, and to spend as little as possible; a large hand-operated auger used for loose soils

synonym pinchfist

word family miserliness; miserly

related phrase an absolute miser

Example 1 I'm married to a miser.

Example 2 The miser was untouched by the poor man's story.

⑬ slovenly ['slʌvənlɪ] *adj.*

being careless, messy, or inefficient

synonym	slouchy; laid-back; lazy
antonym	diligent
word family	sloven; slovenliness; slovenly (*adv.*)
related phrase	slovenly habits; a large slovenly woman; a slovenly way of speaking

Example 1 Lisa was irritated by the slovenly attitude of her boyfriend Sean.

Example 2 He grew lazy and slovenly in his habits.

⑭ superego [ˌsu:pər'i:gəʊ, -'egəʊ] *n.*

the part of one's mind which makes someone aware of what is right and wrong, and which causes someone to feel guilty when someone has done something wrong

synonym	ego; conscience
word family	supererogatory; supererogation
related phrase	be against one's superego

Example 1 Your superego isn't only telling you not to do bad things; it's telling you not to think bad things.

Example 2 Within the Democratic Party, he had the ID of a regular and the superego of a reformer.

⑮ sidekick ['saɪdkɪk] *n.*

a person who accompanies someone and helps someone, and who is considered to be less intelligent or less important than the other person

synonym	partner; comrade; mate
word family	sidekicker
related phrase	the super sidekick

Example 1 His sons, brother and nephews were his armed sidekicks.

Example 2 Mark has been Luke's sidekick since junior high school.

⑯ rue [ru:] *vt./vi.* (rued/rued/rueing)

to be sorry that someone did something, because of the unpleasant results

synonym	regret; repent
word family	rue (*n.*); ruefulness; rueful; ruefully
related phrase	rue the day that someone did something; rue one's decision

Example 1 You will live to rue the loss of such a good opportunity.

Example 2 He will rue the day when he hurt her pride deeply.

⑰ **snug** [snʌg] ***adj.***

being very warm and comfortable, especially because someone is protected from cold weather; fitting very closely or tightly, such as a piece of clothing, etc.

synonym	cosy; comfortable; pleasant; tight
antonym	bleak; loose
word family	snugness; snuggery; snugly; snug (*n.*&*v.*)
related phrase	a snug log cabin; in one's snug little house; snug jeans

Example 1 The kids were warm and snug in their beds.

Example 2 The television was sheathed in a snug coverlet.

⑱ **flux** [flʌks] ***n.***

a situation in which things are changing a lot and someone cannot be sure what will happen; a flowing mass

synonym	instability; issue
antonym	reflux
word family	reflux; fluxion; fluxing; flux (*v.*)
related phrase	in a state of flux; flux and reflux; the flux of cosmic rays; heat flux

Example 1 Education remains in a state of flux which will take some time to settle down.

Example 2 Everything is in flux at the moment.

⑲ **yesteryear** ['jestəjɪə] ***n.***

a period in the past with a set of values or a way of life that no longer exists

synonym	past; yore
antonym	future
word family	yesteryear (*adv.*)
related phrase	the steam trains of yesteryear

Example 1 The modern-day sex symbol has now taken the place of the old-fashioned hero of yesteryear.

Example 2 Certainly, last night's gala was a reminder of bull markets of yesteryear.

⑳ **idyllic** [ɪ'dɪlɪk] ***adj.***

being extremely pleasant, simple, and peaceful without any difficulties or dangers

synonym	bucolic
word family	idyl(l); idyllically
related phrase	an idyllic setting for a summer romance; the idyllic setting/surroundings/scene etc.

Example 1 If you want old-world tradition in an idyllic setting, this is the hotel for you.

Example 2 Married life was not as idyllic as he had imagined.

㉑ **evangelism** [ɪ'vændʒəlɪzəm] ***n.***

the teaching of Christianity, especially to people who are not Christians

synonym kerygma

word family evangel; evangelist; evangelisation; evangelistic; evangelise

related phrase the open-air evangelism

Example 1 Just recently, we had a conversation about God, heaven, and evangelism.

Example 2 They had zeal for evangelism, but they still had much to learn about its method.

㉒ **legitimize** [lɪ'dʒɪtəmaɪz] ***vt.*** **(legitimized/legitimized/legitimizing)**

to officially allow something, to approve something, or to make something seem acceptable, especially something bad

synonym legalize

word family legitimate; legitimacy; legitimation; legitimise

related phrase legitimize the regime; legitimize a war; the legitimized activity; legitimize one's excuse for being late

Example 1 They will accept no agreement that legitimizes the ethnic division of the country.

Example 2 There is a danger that these films legitimize violence.

㉓ **fetish** ['fetɪʃ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* fetishes)**

having an unusually strong liking or need for a particular object or activity, as a way of getting sexual pleasure; doing something very often or enjoy something very much; an object, especially a carved object, which is considered to have religious importance or magical powers

synonym obsession; fetich; awe

word family fetishism; fetich; fetishist; fetishize

related phrase rubber and leather fetishes; has a fetish for/about doing sth.

Example 1 What began as a postwar fetish for sunbathing is rapidly developing into a world health crisis.

Example 2 Sue has a real fetish about keeping everything tidy.

㉔ **mete** [miːt] ***vt.*** **(meted/meted/meting)**

to distribute or apportion by measure; to measure

synonym waft; allot; dole out

word family meter

related phrase mete sth. out

Example 1 Judges are meting out harsh sentences for car theft.

Example 2 He felt he had a right to mete out physical punishment to the children.

㉕ **gush** [gʌʃ] ***vt./vi.*** **(gushed/gushed/gushing)**

(the liquid) to flow out very quickly and in large quantities; to express one's admiration or pleasure in an exaggerated way

synonym burst
word family gusher; gushy
related phrase gush out/from/down, etc.

Example 1 Piping-hot water gushed out.

Example 2 "I simply loved your book." she gushed.

26 solace ['sɒlɪs] *n.*

a feeling of comfort that makes someone feel less sad

synonym comfort; relief; consolation
word family solace (*v.*)
related phrase seek/find solace in sth.; be a solace to sb.

Example 1 I found solace in writing when my father died three years ago.

Example 2 Mary was a great solace to me after Arthur died.

27 panache [pə'næʃ] *n.*

a way of doing things that makes them seem easy and exciting, and makes other people admire you

synonym effulgence; flashiness
related phrase with panache

Example 1 Her panache at dealing with the world's media is quite astonishing.

Example 2 They played and sang with great panache.

28 zigzag ['zɪgzæg] *vt./vi.* (zigzagged/zigzagged/zigzagging)

to move forward by going at an angle first to one side then to the other

synonym corkscrew
word family zigzag (*n.&adj.&adv.*); zigzagger; zigzaggery; zigzagged; zigzagging
related phrase zigzag down/up the hill; zigzag across the tarmac

Example 1 The path zigzagged down the hillside.

Example 2 He zigzagged his way across the field.

29 succulent ['sʌkjələnt] *adj.*

being juicy and good to eat.

synonym juicy
word family succulence; succulent (*n.*)
related phrase a succulent steak; succulent fruit

Example 1 These are wonderfully succulent peaches.

Example 2 Cook pieces of succulent chicken with ample garlic and a little sherry.

30 at variance with

being very different; seeming to contradict each other

synonym at odds with
related phrase at variance; set at variance

Example 1 Tradition and culture are often at variance with the needs of modern living.

Example 2 Many of his statements were at variance with the facts.

31 be apt to

often doing something and so it is likely that someone will do something again

synonym be inclined to; tend to
related phrase be apt to do sth.; be apt to imitate something else

Example 1 Some of the staff are apt to arrive late on Mondays.

Example 2 Beginners are too apt to make mistakes in grammar.

32 cast out

to get rid of something because someone does not like or need something, or do not want to take responsibility for something

synonym drive out; toss out; toss away; evict; expel
related phrase cast out superstition

Example 1 Perfect love casts out fear.

Example 2 The dissident was cast out from his country.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

accompli	anagram	butane	credence	chic
crypt	dishonor	disrepair	doormat	doting
dressmaking	drunkard	duopoly	eave	enema
ensemble	Eucharist	eureka	extravagance	flotilla
foreground	freshwater	getaway	greenfield	gunpoint
gymnastics	hackle	hard-line	haystack	headstone
heyday	honeycomb	hothouse	hovel	inbuilt
indivisible	JP	lectern	letterbox	letterhead
lifeblood	loafer	Mach	marzipan	megabyte
megahertz	misfit	mistreat	monotone	notoriety
octave	odyssey	overburden	pathfinder	phallus
philistine	ravishing	refractory	sabre	seizure
socioeconomic	stipendiary	sunbeam	thicket	transatlantic
underclass	upmarket			

Part 2 Text

Origin of the Anglo-Americans[1] And Its Importance in Relation to Their Future Condition

After the birth of a human being his early callow years are obscurely spent in the toils or pleasures of childhood. As he grows up the world receives him, when his manhood begins, and he enters into contact with his fellows and compere a guide of his own life. He is then studied for the first time, and it is imagined that the germ of the vices and the virtues of his maturer years is then formed. This, if I am not mistaken, lacks credence. We must begin higher up; we must watch the infant in its doting mother's arms; we must see the first images which the external world casts upon the dark mirror of his mind; the first occurrences which he witnesses; we must hear the first words which awaken the sleeping powers of thought, and stand by his earliest efforts, if we would understand the inbuilt prejudices, the habits, and the passions which will rule his heyday and even the ensemble of his life. The entire man is, so to speak, to be seen in the hothouse of the child.

The growth of nations presents something analogous to this: they all bear some marks of their origin; and the circumstances which accompanied their birth and contributed to their rise are indivisible through the whole term of their being. If we were able to go back to the elements of states, and to examine the oldest headstones of their history, I doubt not that we should discover the primal cause of the prejudices, the habits, the ruling passions, and, in short, of all that constitutes what is called the national character; we should then find the explanation of certain customs which now seem at variance with the prevailing manners; of such laws as conflict with established principles; and of such incoherent opinions as are here and there to be met with in society, like those fragments of broken chains which we sometimes see hanging from the vault of an edifice, and supporting nothing. This might explain the destinies of certain nations, which seem borne on by an unknown force to ends of which they themselves are ignorant. But hitherto facts have been wanting to researches of this kind: the spirit of inquiry has only come upon communities in their latter days; and when they at length contemplated their origin, time had already obscured it, or ignorance and pride adorned it with truth-concealing fables.

America is the only country in which it has been possible to witness the natural and tranquil growth of society, and where the influences exercised on the future condition of states by their origin is clearly distinguishable. At the period when the peoples of Europe landed in the New World their national characteristics were already completely formed; and as they had already attained that stage of civilization at which men are led to study themselves, they have transmitted to us a faithful picture of their opinions, their manners, and their laws. America, consequently, exhibits in the broad light of day the phenomena which the ignorance or rudeness of earlier ages conceals from our researches. Near enough to the time when the states of America were founded, to be accurately acquainted with their elements, and sufficiently removed from that period to judge of some of their results, the men of our own day seem destined to see further than their doyens into the series of human events. Providence has given us the lifeblood which our forefathers did not possess, and has allowed us to discern fundamental causes in the history of the world which the impromptu obscurity of the past concealed from them.

The emigrants who came, at different periods to occupy the territory now covered by the

American Union differed from each other in many respects; their aim was not the same, and they governed themselves on different principles. These men had, however, certain features in common, and they were all placed in an analogous situation. The tie of language is perhaps the strongest and the most durable that can unite mankind. All the emigrants spoke the same tongue; they were all offsets from the same people. Born in a country which had been distempered for centuries by the struggles of faction, and in which all parties had been obliged in their turn to place themselves under the protection of the laws, their political education had been perfected in this rude school, and they were more conversant with the notions of right and the principles of true freedom than the greater part of their European contemporaries. At the period of their first emigrations the parish system was deeply rooted in the habits of the English; and with it the doctrine of the sovereignty of the people had been introduced into the bosom of the monarchy of the House of Tudor[2].

The religious quarrels which have agitated the Christian world were then rife. England had plunged into the new order of things with headlong vehemence. The character of its inhabitants, which had always been sedate and reflective, became argumentative and austere. General information had been increased by intellectual debate, and the mind had received a deeper cultivation. Whilst religion was the topic of discussion, the morals of the people were reformed. All these national features are more or less discoverable in the physiognomy of those adventurers who came to seek a new home on the greenfield shores opposite to the Atlantic.

Another remark, to which we shall hereafter have occasion to recur, is applicable not only to the English, but to the French, the Spaniards, and all the Europeans who successively established themselves in the New World. All these European colonies contained the elements, if not the development, of a complete democracy. Two causes led to this result. It may safely be advanced, that when starting the getaway from the mother-country the emigrants had in general no notion of superiority over one another. The happy and the powerful do not go into exile, and there are no surer guarantees of equality among men than poverty and misfortune. It happened, however, on several occasions, that persons of rank were driven to America by political and religious hackles. Laws were made to establish a gradation of ranks; but it was soon found that the soil of America was opposed to a territorial aristocracy. To bring that refractory land into cultivation, the constant and interested exertions of the owner himself were necessary; and when the ground was prepared, its produce was found to be insufficient to enrich a master and a farmer at the same time. The land was then naturally broken up into small portions, which the proprietor cultivated for himself. Land is the basis of an aristocracy, which clings to the soil that supports it; for it is not by privileges alone, nor by birth, but by landed property handed down from generation to generation, that an aristocracy is constituted. A nation may present immense fortunes and extreme disrepair, but unless those fortunes are territorial there is no aristocracy, but simply the groggy class of the rich and that of the poor.

All the British colonies had then a great degree of similarity at the epoch of their settlement. All of them, from their first beginning, seemed destined to witness the growth, not of the aristocratic liberty of their mother-country, but of that freedom of the middle and lower orders of which any complete example had as yet been a needle in the haystack in the history of the world.

In this general uniformity several striking differences were however discernible, which it is necessary to point out. Two branches may be distinguished in the Anglo-American family, which have hitherto grown up without entirely commingling; the one in the South, the other in the North.

Virginia received the first English colony with the excitement of Eureka; the emigrants took seizure of it in 1607. The idea that mines of gold and silver are the sources of national wealth was at that time singularly prevalent in Europe; a fatal delusion, which has done more to impoverish the nations which adopted it, and has cost more lives in America, than the united influence of war and bad laws. The men sent to Virginia [*a] were seekers of gold, hard-line adventurers, without resources and without character, whose turbulent and restless spirit endangered the infant colony, and rendered its progress uncertain. The exacting artisans and agriculturists arrived afterwards; and, although they were a more moral and orderly race of men, they were in nowise above the level of the inferior classes in England. No lofty conceptions, no intellectual system, directed the foundation of these new settlements. The colony was scarcely established when slavery was introduced, and this was the main circumstance which has exercised so prodigious an influence on the character, the laws, and all the future foregrounds of the South. Slavery, as we shall afterwards show, dishonors labor; it introduces idleness into society, and with idleness, ignorance and pride, luxury and distress. It renders the flow of mind ebb, and benumbs the activity of man. The influence of slavery, united to the English character, explains the manners and the social condition of the Southern States.

a

[The charter granted by the Crown of England in 1609 stipulated, amongst other conditions, that the adventurers should pay to the Crown a fifth of the produce of all gold and silver mines. See Marshall's "Life of Washington", vol. i. pp. 18-66.] [Footnote b: A large portion of the adventurers, says Stith ("History of Virginia"), were unprincipled young men of family, whom their parents were glad to ship off, discharged servants, fraudulent bankrupts, or debauchees; and others of the same class, people more apt to pillage and destroy than to assist the settlement, were the seditious chiefs, who easily led this band into every kind of extravagance and excess. See for the history of Virginia the following works.]

In the North, the same English foundation was modified by the most opposite shades of character; and here I may be allowed to enter into some details. The two or three main ideas which constitute the basis of the social theory of the United States were first combined in the Northern English colonies, more generally denominated the States of New England. The principles of New England spread at first to the neighboring states; they then passed successively to the more distant ones; and at length the whole Confederation was honeycombed with them. They now extend their influence beyond its limits over the whole American world. The civilization of New England has been like a beacon lit upon a hill, which, after it has diffused its warmth around, tinges the distant horizon with its ravishing sunbeam.

The foundation of New England was a novel spectacle, and all the circumstances attending it were singular and original. The large majority of colonies have been first inhabited either by the philistine underclass without education and without resources, driven by their poverty and their misconduct from the land which gave them birth, or by speculators, misers and loafers greedy of gain. Some slovenly settlements cannot even boast so honorable an origin; St. Domingue[3] was founded by buccaneers and drunkards of notoriety; and the criminal courts of England originally supplied the population of Australia.

The settlers who established themselves on the shores of New England all belonged to the more independent socioeconomic classes of their native country. Their union on the soil of

America at once presented the singular and monotone phenomenon of a society containing neither lords nor common people, neither rich nor poor. These men possessed, in proportion to their number, a greater mass of intelligence than is to be found in any European nation of our own time. All, without a single exception, had received a good education, and many of them were known in Europe for their talents and their acquirements. The other colonies had been founded by superego adventurers without family; the emigrants of New England brought with them the best elements of order and morality—they landed in the desert accompanied by their sidekicks, wives and children. But what most especially distinguished them was the aim of their undertaking. They had not been obliged by necessity to leave their country; the social position they abandoned was one to be rued, and their means of stipendiary subsistence were certain. Nor did they travel transatlantic to improve their situation or to increase their wealth; the call which summoned them from the comforts of their upmarket and snug homes was purely intellectual; and in facing the inevitable sufferings of exile their object was the triumph of an idea.

The flux of emigrants, or, as they deservedly styled themselves, the Pilgrims, belonged to that English sect the austerity of whose principles had acquired for them the name of Puritans. Puritanism of yesteryear was not merely a religious doctrine, but it corresponded in many points with the most absolute democratic and republican theories. It was this tendency which had aroused its most dangerous adversaries. Mistreated by the Government of the mother-country, and overburdened by the habits of a society opposed to the rigor of their own principles, the Puritans, as social misfits went forth to seek some rude and unfrequented part of the world, where they could live idyllic lives according to their own opinions, enjoy Eucharist and Evangelism and worship God in freedom as legitimized citizens.

A few quotations will throw more light upon the spirit of these pious adventures than all we can say of them. Nathaniel Morton[4], the historian of the first years of the settlement, thus opens his subject:

"Gentle Reader,—I have for some length of time looked upon it as a duty incumbent, especially on the immediate successors of those that have had so large experience of those many memorable and signal demonstrations of God's goodness, viz., the first beginners of this Plantation in New England, to commit to writing his gracious dispensations on that behalf; having so many inducements thereunto, not onely otherwise but so plentifully in the Sacred Scriptures: that so, what we have seen, and what our fathers have told us (Psalm lxxviii. 3, 4), we may not hide from our children, showing to the generations to come the praises of the Lord; that especially the seed of Abraham his servant, and the children of Jacob his chosen (Psalm cv. 5, 6), may remember his marvellous works in the beginning and progress of the planting of New England, his wonders and the judgments of his mouth; how that God brought a vine into this wilderness; that he cast out the heathen, and planted it; that he made room for it and caused it to take deep root; and it filled the land (Psalm lxxx. 8, 9). And not onely so, but also that he hath guided his people by his strength to his holy habitation and planted them in the mountain of his inheritance in respect of precious Gospel enjoyments: and that as especially God may have the glory of all unto whom it is most due; so also some rays of glory may reach the names of those blessed Saints that were the main instruments and the beginning of this happy enterprise."

It is impossible to read this opening paragraph without an involuntary feeling of religious fetish; it breathes the very savor of Gospel antiquity. The sincerity of the author heightens his power

of language. The band which to his eyes was a mere party of pathfinders of odyssey gone forth to seek their fortune beyond seas appears to the reader as the germ of a great nation meted out by Providence to a predestined shore.

The author thus continues his narrative of the departure of the first pilgrims:—

"So they left that goodly and pleasant city of Leyden, [*b] which had been their resting-place for above eleven years; but they knew that they were pilgrims and strangers here below, and looked not much on these things, but lifted up their eyes to Heaven, their dearest country, where God hath prepared for them a city, and therein quieted their spirits. When they came to Delfs-Haven they found the ship and all things ready; and such of their friends as could not come with them followed after them, and sundry came from Amsterdam to see them shipped, and to take their leaves of them. One night was spent with little sleep with the most, but with friendly entertainment and Christian discourse, and other real expressions of true Christian love. The next day they went on board, and their friends with them, where truly doleful was the sight of that sad and mournful parting, to hear what sighs and sobs and prayers did sound amongst them; what tears did gush from every eye, and pithy speeches pierced each other's heart, that sundry of the Dutch strangers that stood on the Key as spectators could not refrain from tears. But the tide (which stays for no man) calling them away, that were thus loth to depart, their Reverend Pastor falling down on his knees, and they all with him, with succulent cheeks commended them with most fervent prayers unto the Lord and his blessing; and then, with mutual embraces and many tears they took their leaves one of another, which proved to be the last leave to many of them."

The emigrants were about 150 in number, including the women and the children. Their object was to plant a colony on the freshwater shores of the Hudson; but after having been driven about for some time in the Atlantic Ocean, they were forced to land on that arid coast of New England which is now the site of the town of Plymouth. The rock is still shown on which the pilgrims disembarked from flotillas.

b

[This rock has become an object of veneration in the United States. I have seen bits of it carefully preserved in several towns of the Union. Does not this sufficiently show how entirely all human power and greatness is in the soul of man? Here is a stone which the feet of a few outcasts pressed for an instant, and this stone becomes famous; it is treasured by a great nation, its very dust is shared as a relic: and what has become of the gateways of a thousand palaces?]

"But before we pass on," continues our historian, "let the reader with me make a pause and seriously consider this poor people's present condition, the more to be raised up to admiration of God's goodness towards them in their preservation: for being now passed the vast ocean, and a sea of troubles before them in expectation, they had now no friends to welcome them, no inns to entertain or refresh them, no hovels, or much less towns to repair unto to seek for succour: and for the season it was winter, and they that know the winters of the country know them to be sharp and violent, subject to cruel and fierce storms, dangerous to travel to known places, much more to search unknown coasts. Besides, what could they see but a hideous and desolate wilderness, full of wild beasts, and wild men? and what multitudes of them there were, they then knew not: for which way so ever they turned their eyes (save upward to Heaven) they could have but little solace or content in respect of any outward object; for summer being ended, all things stand in appearance

with a weather-beaten face, and the whole country full of woods and thickets, represented a wild and savage hew; if they looked behind them with great panache, there was the mighty ocean which they had passed zigzagging, and was now as a main bar or gulph to separate them from all the civil parts of the world."

(Adapted from *American Institutions and Their Influence*)

Notes

① Anglo-Americans

Anglo-Americans or Anglos are people who are inhabitants of Anglo-America and are referred to as English Americans and/or an English Canadians. It typically refers to an English-speaking American in distinction to Spanish speakers in the southwestern states and in Mexico; German speakers (Amish) in North Dakota, Ohio, and Pennsylvania; and French speakers in Canada, New England and Louisiana. This usage originated in the discussion of the history of English-speaking people of the United States and the Spanish-speaking people residing in the western United States during the Mexican-American War.

② the House of Tudor

The House of Tudor was a royal house of Welsh origin, descended in the male line from the Tudors of Penmynydd. Tudor monarchs ruled the Kingdom of England and its realms, including their ancestral Wales and the Lordship of Ireland (later the Kingdom of Ireland) from 1485 until 1603, with five monarchs in that period. The Tudors succeeded the House of Plantagenet as rulers of the Kingdom of England, and were succeeded by the House of Stuart. The first monarch, Henry VII, descended through his mother from a legitimised branch of the English royal House of Lancaster. The Tudor family rose to power in the wake of the Wars of the Roses, which left the House of Lancaster, to which the Tudors were aligned, extinct.

③ Saint-Domingue

Saint-Domingue was a French colony on the Caribbean island of Hispaniola from 1659 to 1804. The French had established themselves on the western portion of the islands of Hispaniola and Tortuga by 1659. In the Treaty of Ryswick of 1697, Spain formally recognized French control of Tortuga Island and the western third of the island of Hispaniola.

④ Nathaniel Morton

Nathaniel Morton (1616–June 29, 1685) was a Separatist settler of Plymouth Colony in Massachusetts, where he served for most of his life as Plymouth's secretary under his uncle, Governor William Bradford. Morton wrote an account of the settlement of the Colony, the first historical text published in the United States, and was first to publish a list of signers of the Mayflower Compact as well as an account of the first Thanksgiving.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Sentence Practice

Directions: Please rewrite the sentences with the proper forms of the given words.

credence	vault	hackle	misfit	lifeblood
upmarket	odyssey	evangelism	heyday	getaway

1. Such speculation gained added confirmation.
2. The lady who always adorns herself with jewels lavishly keeps all her jewelry in the bank's treasury.
3. The use of military force raised the indignation of people in that country.
4. Activist private equity firms are well positioned to spot value in the improper units and reinvigorate them.
5. A new strategy to draw high-end customers with a more innovative menu and higher price points had divided the leadership.
6. For others, especially firms that need a lot of entry-level employees, young workers are their backbone.
7. I do not know how far this long green wandering journey will take us, but that does not stop me dreaming.
8. Changing these attitudes and behaviors requires a multi-pronged approach like championing by senior leadership or fanaticism by believers on the marketing front line.
9. They might have been highly satisfied customers of Blockbuster in its prime.
10. The new wheels arrived in time for my birthday, and my wife whisked me away for a surprise weekend trip at a hotel chosen for the charging point on its front wall.

III. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text B the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. immature 2. drowsy
3. mutation 4. alluring
5. affectionate 6. uniform
7. unrefined 8. ravage
9. patriarch 10. improvised
11. spasm 12. abate

13. obsession
14. flourish
15. irresponsible

Antonyms

1. separable
2. drip
3. honor
4. illegitimate
5. noisy
6. sooth
7. excitable
8. uncomfortable
9. impious
10. imaginative

IV. Phrase Practice

Directions: Please translate the following verb+noun collocations into Chinese.

1. compere a radio program
2. compere a tour
3. downgrade an employee
4. downgrade him from sergeant to private
5. downgrade the chances for spending cuts
6. rue the loss of opportunities
7. mete out penalties for bad behavior
8. mete out generous treatment
9. gush about the movie star
10. gush sudden tears
11. gush forth with a wondrous flow of eloquence
12. bring dishonor to the police force
13. die of a heart seizure
14. order the seizure of all her property
15. bring the workers' movement to a temporary low ebb

V. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 16 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. In U.S. sports, a ______ refers to a qualifying high school or college participant, either male or female on a co-educational sports or gymnastics team.
   A) lectern B) letterman C) letterhead D) letterbox
2. ______ is a growth development disorder characterized by a brain with an average weight that is 2.5 standard deviations above the mean of the general population.
   A) Megalencephaly B) Megahertz C) Megacurie D) Megabyte
3. Defined as a decrease in the total amount of red blood cells, ______ is the most common blood disorder, affecting about a third of the global population.

A) Anema B) Anemia C) Enema D) Enemy

4. Like many alcohols, _____ is considered toxic. It has shown low order of toxicity in single dose experiments to laboratory animals.
   A) butane B) methane C) ethane D) butanol
5. The word “north” can be rearranged into “thorn” by direct word switch, which is called _____.
   A) anagen B) anaglyph C) anagram D) anagnorisis
6. _____ was a medieval French poet and composer on whom significant biographical information is available.
   A) Mach B) Machair C) Machen D) Machaut
7. I’ve been taking Apple for granted, using her for a _____.
   A) doormat B) doorknock C) doornail D) doorman
8. Designers usually have no sewing or _____ skills, and may only sketch or conceptualize garments.
   A) dressmaking B) patternmaking
   C) watchmaking D) shoemaking
9. Visa and MasterCard have dominant control over the electronic payment processing market, which is commonly studied as an example of _____.
   A) duopoly B) duodenitis C) duologue D) duodecimo
10. _____, consisting primarily of sugar or honey and almond meal, is shaped into small figures of animals as a traditional treat for New Year’s Day in some countries.
    A) Marzine B) Marzipan C) Marzacotto D) Masala
11. Since she hoped to make a few dollars during her summer vacation, her voice rose one _____.
    A) octave B) octavo C) octangle D) octet
12. The pilot of the JP was forced at _____ to fly to where the terrorists’ headquarters were.
    A) gunport B) gunpoint C) gunpatch D) gunpower
13. The _____is a small carnivorous mammal inhabiting forest environments or sett tunnels, primarily in Russia from the Ural Mountains throughout Siberia, northern Mongolia.
    A) sabre B) sabra C) sable D) sabot
14. Andrzej Sekuła is a Polish cinematographer and film director who made his directorial debut with the 1998 thriller Fait _____.
    A) Accompli B) Accompany C) Accolade D) Accomplice
15. The police under the high eaves formed a _____ to protect the embassy.
    A) phallus B) phalanx C) phalera D) phallocrat
16. The patient with impotence intended to _____ the postgraduate in beautiful polka dot dress.
    A) slay B) slink C) slither D) slush

VI. Proofreading

Directions: Please identify and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

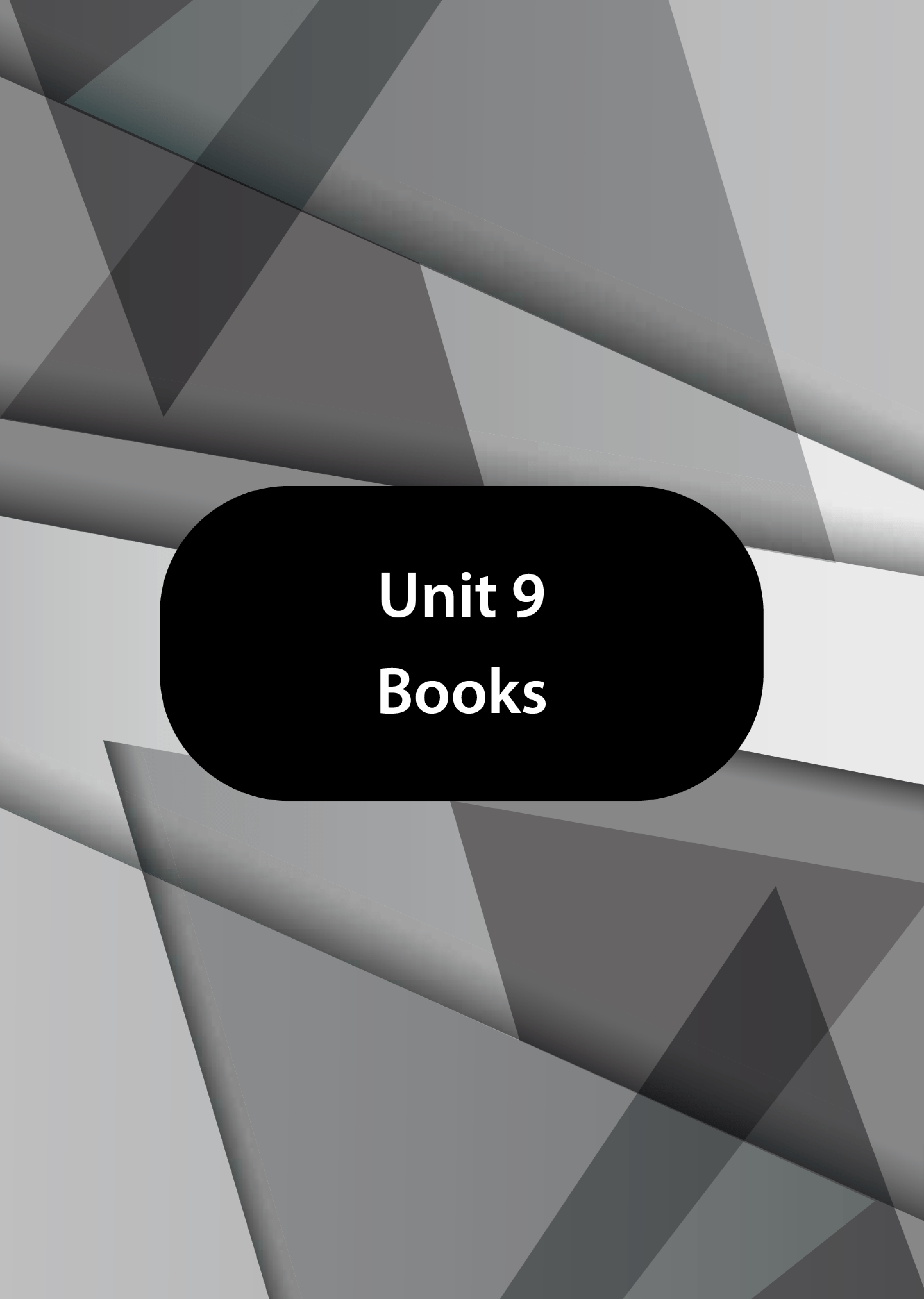
1. An impromptu meeting of the five permanent members of the UN Security Council to discuss Syria has taken place in the request of Russia.

2. Everybody knows that jet lag feeling: You're groggy at dinner, or unable to sleep at night; you can't muster hunger at socially appropriate times.
3. In fact, the chemicals in our soaps and shampoos have destroyed all the friendly bacteria that once inhabited in our skin and kept us clean.
4. The fine was in the proportion of the seriousness of the offence but ordinary people couldn't help it.
5. An ant colony is analogous with a brain where there are lots of neurons, each of which can only do something very simple, but together the whole brain can think.

VII. Paraphrase

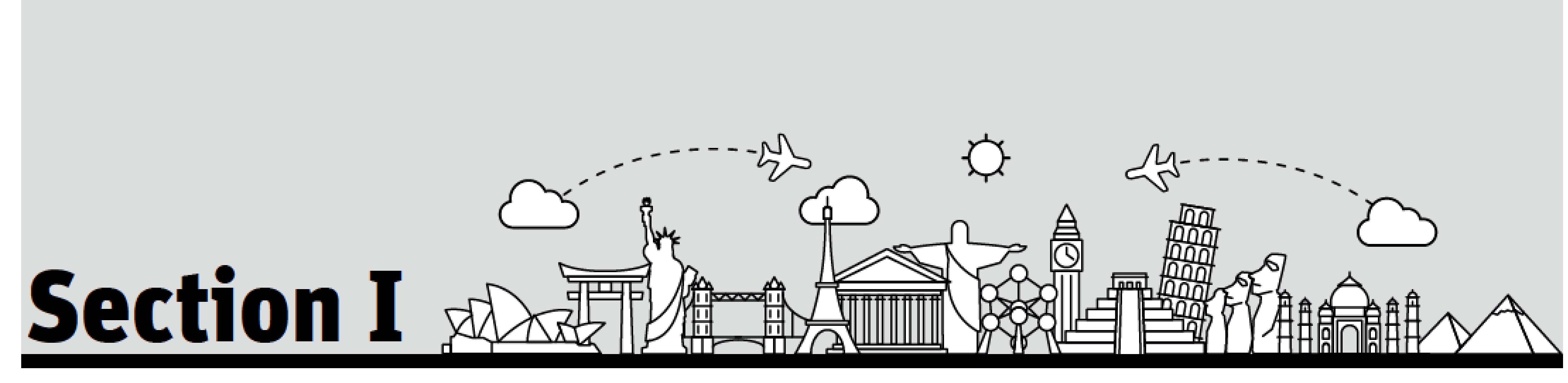
Directions: Please restate the following sentences using other words without altering the original meaning.

1. He is then studied for the first time, and it is imagined that the germ of the vices and the virtues of his maturer years is then formed.
2. ... in short, of all that constitutes what is called the national character; we should then find the explanation of certain customs which now seem at variance with the prevailing manners...
3. The flux of emigrants, or, as they deservedly styled themselves, the Pilgrims, belonged to that English sect the austerity of whose principles had acquired for them the name of Puritans.
4. Mistreated by the Government of the mother-country, and overburdened by the habits of a society opposed to the rigor of their own principles, the Puritans, as social misfits went forth to seek some rude and unfrequented part of the world, where they could live idyllic lives according to their own opinions, enjoy Eucharist and Evangelism and worship God in freedom as legitimized citizens.
5. Besides, what could they see but a hideous and desolate wilderness, full of wild beasts, and wild men? and what multitudes of them there were, they then knew not: for which way so ever they turned their eyes (save upward to Heaven) they could have but little solace or content in respect of any outward object...



Unit 9
Books

Section I



Focus on Critical Thinking and Critical Reading (9)

Process of Critical Reading

None of us think critically all the time. Good news is that, since our critical thinking ability varies according to our current mindset, most of the time we can learn to improve our critical thinking ability by developing certain routine activities and applying them to all problems that present themselves.

Once you understand the theory of critical thinking, improving your critical thinking skills takes persistence and practice. Try this simple exercise to help you to start thinking critically.

Step 1. Evaluating source and authority

Not all texts are equally trustworthy. As you read a text, you must ask whether it is credible. Several factors influence credibility. The following questions may be usefully asked about any text you are reading:

- What type of text is it: research report, essay, textbook, book review?
- What is the source of the text? Is it reputable? Who is the publisher? What reputation do they have?
- Who is the author? What authority does the author have?
- What is the author's purpose? Why has the text been written? What is the writer's attitude towards the topic?

Step 2. Identifying the author's purpose

All writers write for a reason. Three common purposes of writing and clues to find the authors' purposes are:

- **To inform**—to provide readers with information about a topic. Informational writing features facts and evidence, not opinions or value, or judgments. The language may include technical jargon, but the vocabulary and sentence structure are often quite simple.
- **To persuade**—to convince readers to believe a certain viewpoint; to take a certain course of action. Persuasive writing features emotional appeals: opinions and arguments; rhetorical questions; evaluating language (good/bad, right/wrong, horrifying/wonderful, etc.) and/or judgmental language (must, should, had better, etc.)
- **To entertain**—to amuse readers in some way. Entertaining texts can be very varied. They often use rather informal language, simple sentence structure, dialogs, puns and/or figures of speech.

Step 3. Identifying types of language

Just as authors must choose what to say, they must choose how to say it. The choice of content and language are closely related. Two types of language are often used in a text: objective language and subjective language.

- **Objective language** can also be called informative or factual language. This type of language is employed to report or describe the events or ideas without any personal involvement. The purpose is to present information or facts to the readers. Materials that often use factual language include textbooks, reference books, contracts, phone directories.
- **Subjective language** is also called emotive or opinion-based language. This type of language is used to reveal the writer's attitude toward the subject.

Example 1

Abortion is technically defined as the expulsion of a fetus from the womb before it is sufficiently developed. Abortion was legalized in the United States in January 1973. (Objective)

Example 2

Abortion can be defined as taking the life of another human being during its fetal development. The inhumane act of abortion was legalized in the United States in January 1973.(Subjective)

Step 4. Differentiating facts from opinions

Critical reading involves being able to tell the difference between fact and opinion, because writers often mix the two together. Differentiating facts from opinions helps better understand the reading material and put the information you have read to good use.

- The **fact** is a statement that is true, which is expressed in objective language.
- The **opinion** is a statement made by someone who believes it is true, which is expressed in subjective language. Opinions are based on facts which tell how the writer thinks or feels about something. An opinion expresses a belief, a feeling or an idea.
- Most reading materials are mixture of facts and opinions; *the opinion starts from where the fact ends.*

Examples

- Graduation will be held in June (fact).
- The visiting scholar said our students are very polite and respectful (fact).
- Students will welcome a change in the undergraduate admission policy (opinion).
- Everyone can enjoy our new menu in the cafeteria (opinion).

Step 5. Making inferences

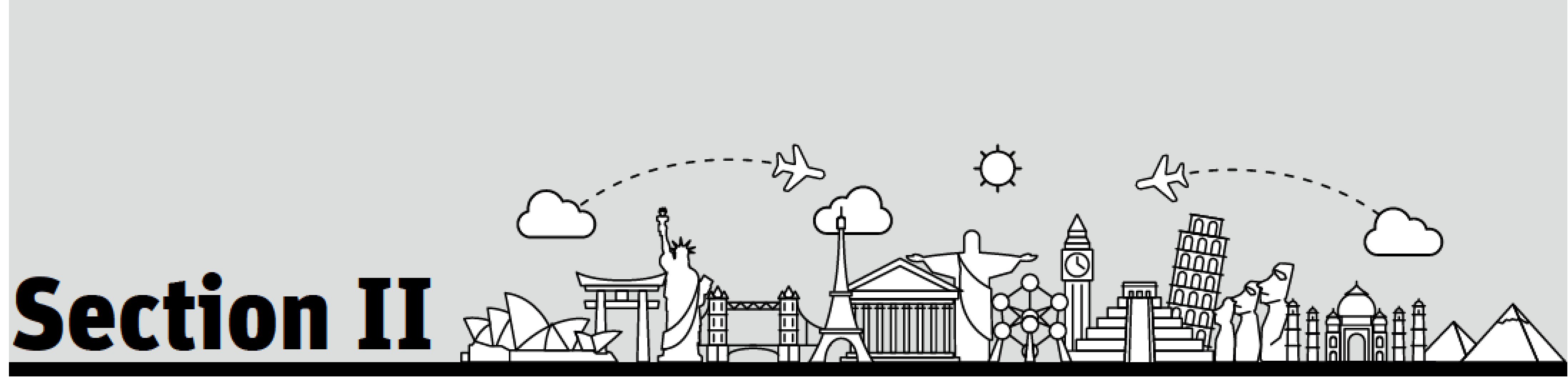
Making inferences means to draw or guess information or ideas, which are not specifically stated by the author in the reading material. It is a reasonable guess based on what the author says.

How to make inference

- To understand the literal meaning of the reading material. Only in this way can you go

beyond the literal meaning and make reasonable inferences.

- Ask questions to help formulate the inferences
- What is the author trying to suggest from the stated information?
- What do all the facts and ideas point toward?
- For what purpose does the author include these facts and details?
- Verify the inference to ensure the accuracy. You may look back at the stated information to be sure that there is sufficient evidence to support your inference.



Section II

Text A: On the Choice of Books

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **nub** [nʌb] ***n.***

the central and most basic part of something, such as a situation, problem, or argument etc.

synonym	main; core; node; heart; kernel
related phrase	the nub of the problem/matter/argument, etc.

Example 1 Here we reach the nub of the argument.

Example 2 The real nub of the matter is money.

② **heathland** ['hi:θlənd] ***n.***

a tract of level wasteland; uncultivated land with sandy soil and scrubby vegetation

synonym	heath; moor
word family	heather; heath
related phrase	150 hectares of heathland

Example 1 To the north of the village is a thousand acres of sandy heathland.

Example 2 A point was raised as to the preservation of some untouched heathland.

③ **anaesthetize** [ə'ni:sθətaɪz] ***vt.*** **(anaesthetized/anaesthetized/anaesthetizing)**

to make the patients unconscious or unable to feel pain by giving them an anaesthetic; to make someone unable to feel anything in that part of your body

synonym	drug; bedead; anesthetize
word family	anaesthesia; anaesthetist; anaesthetic; anaesthetise
related phrase	anaesthetize locally; a woman anaesthetized against emotion

Example 1 The patient must be anaesthetized before the operation.

Example 2 Alcohol is a potent drug that anaesthetizes the brain.

④ **kinsman** ['kɪnzmən] ***n.*** **(*pl.* kinsmen)**

one's male relative

synonym	fellow-creatures
antonym	kinswoman
word family	kinsmanship

related phrase a kinsman of sb.

Example 1 I thought you would be kind to me, and protect me, as my kinsman!

Example 2 I found he was a kinsman of mine.

⑤ **ebony** ['ebəni] ***n.***

a very hard, heavy, dark-coloured wood

synonym rosewood
word family ebony (*adj.*); ebonics
related phrase a small ebony cabinet

Example 1 Inside the ebony case was a magnificent silver casket, about twelve inches square by eight high.

Example 2 Stain the furniture black to make it look like ebony.

⑥ **swarm** [swɔːm] ***vt./vi.*** **(swarmed/swarmed/swarming)**

to move or fly in a large group, such as bees or other insects; to move somewhere quickly in a large group, especially people; to climb (a ladder etc.) by gripping with the hands and feet; to be full of people moving about in a busy way

synonym teem; climb
word family swarm (*n.*); swarming
related phrase swarm with sb./sth.; swarm to/into/around/out of sth.; swarm up

Example 1 A dark cloud of bees comes swarming out of the hive.

Example 2 The boys swarmed up the rigging.

⑦ **gnat** [næt] ***n.***

a very small flying insect that bites people and usually lives near water

synonym fly
related phrase strain at a gnat

Example 1 You are less than a gnat to me.

Example 2 He's always straining at a gnat.

⑧ **rhino** ['raɪnəʊ] ***n.***

[C] *a large heavy African or Asian animal with thick skin and either one or two horns on its nose;* [U] *a slang word for money*

synonyms rhinoceros; money
word family rhinoceros
related phrase the rhino horn

Example 1 In the late 1970s aggressive poaching took the rhino to the brink of extinction.

Example 2 I didn't take any rhino on me.

⑨ **wherewithal** ['weəwɪðɔ:l] ***n.***

the means, especially the money, that you need for something

synonym means; money
word family wherewithal (*adv.&conj.*); whereabouts; wherefore
related phrase the wherewithal to do sth.

Example 1 Some of the companies illegally sent the wherewithal for making chemical weapons.

Example 2 Does Cath have the creative wherewithal to make it as a solo act?

⑩ **snort** [snɔ:t] ***vt./vi.*** **(snorted/snorted/snorting)**

to breathe air noisily out through one's noses, in order to express disapproval or amusement; to breathe something, especially the drugs, in quickly through one's nose

synonym sniff; sneer
word family snort (*n.*); snorter; snorty
related phrase snort with sth.; snort cocaine

Example 1 Harrell snorted with laughter.

Example 2 He died of cardiac arrest after snorting cocaine at a party.

⑪ **sleaze** [sli:z] ***n.***

activities that are considered immoral, dishonest, or not respectable, especially in politics, business, journalism, or entertainment

synonym sin
word family sleaze (*v.*); sleazy
related phrase sleaze and corruption in politics

Example 1 She claimed that an atmosphere of sleaze and corruption now surrounded the government.

Example 2 Many people are tired of all the sleaze on TV.

⑫ **schoolday** [sku:ldeɪ] ***n.***

the period of instruction in a school; any day on which school is in session

synonym schooltime
related phrase remind of the schoolday

Example 1 My interest in stamp collecting dates from my schoolday.

Example 2 The council does not support lengthening the school day to fit in other activities.

⑬ **fluency** ['flu:ənsi] ***n.***

powerful and effective language; skillfulness in speaking or writing; the quality of being facile in speech and writing

synonym mellifluence; volubility
antonym disfluency
word family fluent; fluently

related phrase fluency in English

Example 1 Visitors were amazed at the students' conversational fluency in English.

Example 2 More practice will make you speak with greater fluency.

⑭ **debauch** [dɪ'bɔːtʃ] ***vt./vi.*** **(debauched/debauched/debauching)**

to corrupt morally or by intemperance or sensuality

synonym deprave; demoralize

word family debauch (*n.*); debauchery; debauched

related phrase debauch an officer; debauch the young people with wine and women

Example 1 Bad companions have debauched the young girl.

Example 2 The young man's honesty was debauched by the prospect of easy money.

⑮ **spellbound** ['spelbaʊnd] ***adj.***

being so fascinated that someone cannot think about anything else

synonym fascinated; mesmerized; captivate

word family spell

related phrase be spellbound by sth.

Example 1 His audience had listened like children, spellbound by his words.

Example 2 *King Lear* still holds audiences spellbound.

⑯ **treadmill** ['tredmɪl] ***n.***

when you have to keep doing something although it is unpleasant and exhausting; a piece of an exercise equipment, that consists of a wheel with steps around its edge or a continuous moving belt, that the weight of a person or animal walking on causes the wheel or belt to turn

synonym habit; treadwheel

word family treadmilling

related phrase the treadmill of working in the office; the treadmill exercise test

Example 1 He exhausted himself on an endless treadmill to pay for rent and food.

Example 2 The treadmill has a heart rate monitor.

⑰ **allegory** ['æləgərɪ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* allegories)**

a story, poem, or painting in which the characters and events are symbols of something else, often moral, religious, or political; the use of characters and events in a story, poem, or painting to represent other things

synonym fable; parable; apologue; emblem

word family allegoric; allegorical; allegorically; allegorize

related phrase an allegory of imperialist conquest; the poet's use of allegory

Example 1 The book is a kind of allegory of Latin American history.

Example 2 The poem's comic allegory was transparent.

⑱ **seaboard** ['si:bɔ:d] ***n.***

the part of a country that is next to the sea, used especially of the east coast of North America

synonym	shore; oceanfront; seashore
antonym	seaboard (*adj.*)
related phrase	the Eastern seaboard of the U.S.

Example 1 New York City is on the Atlantic seaboard.

Example 2 I can't defend the whole eastern seaboard with four planes.

⑲ **curdle** ['kɜ:dl] ***vt./vi.*** **(curdled/curdled/curdling)**

to separate something into different bits, such as milk or eggs, etc.

synonym	harden
word family	curdlan; curdling; curdled; bloodcurdling
related phrase	make your blood curdle; curdle one's blood

Example 1 The herb has been used for centuries to curdle milk.

Example 2 Milk may curdle in warm weather.

⑳ **croak** [krəʊk] ***vt./vi.*** **(croaked/croaked/croaking)**

to make a harsh, low sound, especially a frog or bird; to say something in a low, rough voice; to die

synonym	murmur; mutter; grumble; die
word family	croaker; croaky
related phrase	croak something unintelligible; a croaked rat

Example 1 Thousands of frogs croaked in the reeds by the riverbank.

Example 2 I think the doctors were worried that I was going to croak on their watch.

㉑ **inane** [ɪ'neɪn] ***adj.***

being very silly or stupid or without much meaning

synonym	blank; foolish; stupid; vacant
word family	inanity; inanition; inanely
related phrase	an inane remark

Example 1 Most pop lyrics are pretty inane.

Example 2 He always had this inane grin.

㉒ **folio** ['fəʊlɪəʊ] ***n.***

a book made with paper of a large size, used especially in the early centuries of European printing; a single numbered sheet of paper from a book

synonym	page; pagination; leaf
word family	folio (*adj.*&*v.*)
related phrase	in folio; the folio column

Example 1 Richard told me of three 16th-century folio volumes on alchemy.

Example 2 The manuscript you sent us has a folio missing.

㉓ **verbatim** [vɜː'beɪtɪm] ***adv.***

repeating the actual words that were spoken or written

synonym	literally; faithfully
word family	verbatim (*adj.*)
related phrase	record the conversation verbatim

Example 1 Their stories were taped and transcribed verbatim.

Example 2 The president's speeches are regularly reproduced verbatim in the state-run newspapers.

㉔ **oversizely** [əʊvə'saɪzlɪ] ***adv.***

bigger than usual or too big

synonym	largely
antonym	undersizely
word family	oversize (*n.*&*v.*); oversized
related phrase	oversizely depend on the others

Example 1 The fund is oversizely financed through government borrowing.

Example 2 How oversizely you have occupied the public resources.

㉕ **uprate** [ʌp'reɪt] ***vt.*** **(uprated/uprated/uprating)**

to raise the value, rate, or size of; to upgrade

synonym	upgrade
antonym	downrate
word family	uprated; uprating
related phrase	uprate the standard

Example 1 How to uprate a rocket engine is a great challenge to the research team.

Example 2 After uprating the assembly line, the company launched the new products on the market.

㉖ **newsprint** ['njuːzprɪnt] ***n.***

the cheap, fairly rough paper on which newspapers are printed; the text that is printed in newspapers; the ink which is used to print newspapers and magazines

synonym	newspaper; newsprint paper
word family	newsprinting
related phrase	a newsprint warehouse; the hands covered with newsprint; the acres of newsprint devoted to Madonna in the past seven days

Example 1 The *Wall Street Journal* uses 220,000 metric tons of newsprint each year.

Example 2 They get their hands covered in newsprint.

(27) **curriculum** [kə'rɪkjələm] ***n.*** **(*pl.* curricula/curriculums)**

all the different courses of study that are taught in a school, college, or university; one particular course of study that is taught in a school, college, or university

synonym	course; syllabus
word family	curricular; extracurriculum; extracurricular
related phrase	the curriculum reform; the history curriculum

Example 1 Teachers incorporated business skills into the regular school curriculum.

Example 2 Students are exempt from some classes in the curriculum for religious reasons.

(28) **causal** ['kɔ:zl] ***adj.***

One thing is responsible for causing the other thing.

synonym	causative
word family	cause; causal (*n.*); causation; causative; causeless; causality; causally
related phrase	causal relationship/link/factor, etc.

Example 1 Rawlins stresses that it is impossible to prove a causal link between the drug and the deaths.

Example 2 You do not have to engage special thought processes to create a causal explanation of an event.

(29) **floss** [flɒs] ***n.***

fine soft threads of some kind

synonym	filoselle
word family	flossy; floss (*v.*)
related phrase	dental floss

Example 1 Craft Resources also sells yarn and embroidery floss.

Example 2 Draw the floss backwards and forwards between the teeth.

(30) **Odyssey** ['ɒdəsɪ] ***n.***

a Greek epic poem, attributed to Homer, describing the ten-year homeward wanderings of Odysseus after the fall of Troy

word family	Odysseus; Odyssean
related phrase	two Greek epics: *Iliad* and *Odyssey*

Example 1 The *Odyssey* tells what happened to the Greek heroes after the sack of Troy.

Example 2 I want to talk to you about the ethics and values that emerge from the reading of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*.

(31) **foothold** ['fʊthəʊld] ***n.***

a strong or favourable position from which further advances or progress may be made; a place such as a small hole or area of rock where someone can safely put one's foot when climbing

synonym stand; strong point
related phrase gain/establish a foothold

Example 1 Businesses are investing millions of dollars to gain a foothold in this new market.

Example 2 He lowered his legs until he felt he had a solid foothold on the rockface beneath him.

32 **governess** ['gʌvənəs] ***n. (pl.* governesses)**

a woman who is employed by a family to live with them and educate their children

synonym tutress; teacher
word family govern; governor; government; governance
related phrase a new governess

Example 1 He does not like the new governess by a fraction.

Example 2 Our governess was told to make sure we knew how to talk like English ladies.

33 **crucible** ['kru:sɪbl] ***n.***

a pot in which metals or other substances can be melted or heated up to very high temperatures; a situation in which something is tested or a conflict takes place, often one which produces something new

synonym copple; xble; test
related phrase the crucible furnace; a system in which ideas are tested in the crucible of party contention

Example 1 The regime served as a crucible for the forging of right-wing ideas and values.

Example 2 The alliance had been forged in the crucible of war.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

borehole	buttonhole	calculate	Calvinist	cowslip
curricular	curriculum	decibel	ebony	fluency
folio	forearmed	forestall	foxglove	frigate
gangway	gnat	haemophilia	hazelnut	heathland
humankind	impatient	indignation	leasehold	leprosy
long-term	lukewarm	lyceum	multimedia	multiplicity
newsprint	nub	Odyssey	oversizely	pacemaker
presbytery	lagiarise	porthole	readership	rhino
schoolday	scowl	seaboard	slapstick	spellbound
stork	testosterone	throughput	uprate	

Part 2　Text

On the Choice of Books

The choice of books is not the least part of the duty of a scholar. If he would become a man, and worthy to deal with manlike things, he must read only the bravest and noblest books—books forged at the heart and fashioned by the intellect of a godlike man. —January Searle

The nub of the question for you to ask yourself, be you teacher or scholar, is this: What books shall I read? For him who has inclination to read, there is no dearth of reading matter, and it is obtainable almost for the asking. Books are in a manner thrust upon you almost daily. Shall you read without discrimination whatever is forearmed to hand? As well say that you will accept as a friend and companion every man whom you meet on the street. Shall you read even every good book that comes in your way, simply because it is harmless and interesting? It is not every harmless book, nor indeed every good book, that will make your mind the richer for the reading of it. Never, perhaps, has the right choice of books been more difficult than at present; and never did it behoove more strongly both teachers and scholars to look well to the character of that which they read.

What are the sure criterions of a bad book? There is no better authority on this subject than the Rev. Robert Collyer[1]. He says: "When I read a book about God, I find that it has put Him farther from me; or about man, that it has put me farther from him; or about this universe, that it has shaken down upon it a new look of desolation, turning a green field into a wild heathland; or about life, that it has made it seem a little less worth living, on all accounts, than it was; or about moral principles, that they are not quite so clear and strong as they were when this author began to talk—then I know that on any of these five cardinal things in the life of man—his relations to God, to his fellows, to the world about him, and the world within him, and the great principles on which all things stable centre—that, for me, is a bad book. It may chime in with some lurking appetite in my own nature, and so seem to be as sweet as honey to my taste; but it comes to bitter, bad results. It may be food for another; I can say nothing to that. He may be a pine while I am a palm. I only know this, that in these great first things, if the book I read shall touch them at all, it shall touch them to my profit or I will not read it. Right and wrong shall grow more clear; life in and about me more divine; I shall come nearer to my fellows, and God nearer to me, or the thing is a poison. Faust, or Calvin[2], or Carlyle, if any one of these cardinal things is the grain and the grist of the book, and that is what it comes to when I read it, I am being anaesthetized and poisoned; and the sooner I know it the better. I want bread, and meat, and milk, not brandy, or opium, or hasheesh."

And Robert Southey[3], the poet, expresses nearly the same thing: "Young readership—you whose hearts are open, whose understandings are not yet hardened, and whose feelings are not yet exhausted nor encrusted with the world—take from me a better rule than any pacemakers of criticism will teach you! Would you know whether the tendency of a book is good or evil, examine in what state of mind you lay it down. Has it induced you to suspect that what you have been accustomed to think unlawful may after all be innocent, and that may be harmless which you have hitherto been taught to think dangerous? Has it tended to make you dissatisfied and impatient under the control of others, and disposed you to relax in that self-government without which both the laws of God and man tell us there can be no virtue, and, consequently, no happiness? Has it attempted to abate your admiration and reverence for what is great and good, and to diminish in

you the love of your country and your kinsmen? Has it addressed itself to your pride, your vanity, your selfishness, or any other of your evil propensities? Has it defiled the imagination with what is loathsome, and shocked the heart with what is monstrous? Has it disturbed the sense of right and wrong which the Creator has implanted in the human soul? If so, if you are conscious of any or all of these effects, or if, having escaped from all, you have felt that such were the effects it was intended to produce, throw the book in the fire, whatever name it may bear in the titlepage! Throw it in the fire, young man, though it should have been the gift of a friend; young lady, away with the whole set, though it should be the prominent furniture of an ebony bookcase."

"It is the case with literature as with life," says Arthur Schopenhauer, the German philosopher. "Wherever we turn we come upon the incorrigible mob of humankind, whose name is Legion, swarming everywhere, damaging everything, as gnats in summer. Hence the multiplicity of bad books, those exuberant weeds of literature which choke the true corn. Such books rob the public of time, rhino, and attention, which ought properly to belong to good literature and noble aims; and they are written with a view merely to make wherewithal or occupation. They are therefore not merely useless, but injurious. Nine tenths of our current literature has no other end but to inveigle a thaler or two out of the public pocket, for which purpose author, publisher, and printer are leagued together .... Of bad books we can never read too little; of the good, never too much. The bad are intellectual poison, and undermine the understanding."

From Thomas Carlyle's inaugural address at Edinburgh on the occasion of his installation as rector of the University in 1866, I quote the following potent passage: "I do not know whether it has been sufficiently brought home to you that there are two kinds of books. When a man is reading on any kind of subject, in most departments of books—in all books, if you take it in a wide sense—he will find that there is a division into good books and bad books: everywhere a good kind of a book and a bad kind of a book. I am not to assume that you are unacquainted or ill-acquainted with this plain fact; but I may remind you that it is becoming a very important consideration in our day .... There is a number, a frightfully increasing number, of books that are decidedly, to the readers of them, not useful. But an ingenious reader will learn, also, that a certain number of books were written by a supremely noble kind of people; not a very great number of books, but still a number fit to occupy all your reading industry, do adhere more or less to that side of things. In short, as I have written it down somewhere else, I conceive that books are like men's souls, divided into sheep and goats. Some few are going up, and carrying us up, heavenward; calculated, I mean, to be of priceless advantage in teaching—in forwarding the teaching of all generations. Others, a frightful multitude, are going down, down; doing ever the more and the wider and the wilder mischief. Keep a strict eye on that latter class of books, my young friends!"

Speaking of those books whose inward character and influence it is hard at first to discern, John Ruskin says: "Avoid especially that class of literature which has a knowing tone; it is the most poisonous of all. Every good book, or piece of book, is full of admiration and awe: it may contain firm assertion or stern satire, but it never snorts coldly, nor asserts haughtily; and it always leads you to reverence or love something with your whole heart. It is not always easy to distinguish the satire of the venomous race of books from the satire of the noble and pure ones; but, in general, you may notice that the cold-blooded Crustacean and Batrachian books will sneer at sentiment, and the warm-blooded, human books at sleaze .... Much of the literature of the present day, though good to be read by persons of ripe age, has a tendency to agitate rather than confirm, and leaves its readers

too frequently in a helpless or hopeless indignation, the worst possible state into which the mind of youth can be thrown. It may, indeed, become necessary for you, as you advance in life, to set your hand to things that need to be altered in the world, or apply your heart chiefly to what must be pitied in it, or condemned; but for a young person the safest temper is one of reverence, and the safest place one of obscurity. Certainly at present, and perhaps through all your life, your schoolday teachers are wisest when they make you content in quiet virtue; and that literature and art are best for you which point out, in common life and familiar things, the objects for hopeful labor and for humble love."

There would be fewer bad books in the world if readers were properly informed and warned of their character; and we may believe that the really vicious books would soon cease to exist if their makers and publishers were popularly regarded with the same detestation as other corrupters of the public morals. "He who has published an injurious book," says Robert South, "sins, as it were in his very grave; corrupts others while he is rotting himself." Addison says much the same thing: "Writers of great talents and fluency, who employ their parts in propagating immorality, and seasoning vicious sentiments with wit and humor, are to be looked upon as the pests of society and the enemies of mankind. They leave books behind them to scatter infection and destroy their posterity. They act the counterparts of a Confucius or a Socrates[4], and seem to have been sent into the world to deprave human nature, and sink it into the condition of brutality."

And William Cobbett is still more severe in his denunciation. In his "Advice to Young Men", he says: "I hope that your taste will keep you aloof from the writings of those detestable villains who employ the powers of their mind in debauching the minds of others, or in endeavors to do it. They present their poison in such spellbound forms that it requires great virtue and resolution to withstand their temptations; and they have, perhaps, done a thousand times as much mischief in the world as all the infidels and atheists put together. These men ought to be held in universal abhorrence, and never spoken of but with execration."

But the shunning of bad books is only one of the problems presented to us in the choice of our reading. In the great multitude of really good and valuable books, how shall we choose those which are of the most vital importance to us to know? The universal treadmill of desultory reading—reading simply to be entertained—is a habit not to be indulged in, nor encouraged, by scholars or by those who aspire to the station of teachers. There are perhaps a score of books which should be read and studied by every one who claims the title of reader; but, aside from these, each person should determine, through a process of rigid self-examination, what course of reading and what books are likely to produce the most profitable results to him. Find out, if possible, what is your special bent of mind. What line of inquiry or investigation is the most congenial to your taste or mental capacity? Having determined this question, let your reading all centre upon that topic of study which you have made your own—let it be Literature, Science, History, Art, Allegory or any of the innumerable subdivisions of these subjects. In other words, choose a specialty, and follow it with an eye single to it alone.

Says Frederic Harrison: "Every book that we take up without a purpose is an opportunity lost of taking up a book with a purpose; every bit of stray information which we cram into our heads without any sense of its importance is for the most part a bit of the most useful information driven out of our heads and choked off from our minds .... We know that books differ in value as much as diamonds differ from the sand on the seaboard, as much as our living friend differs from a croaked

rat. We know that much in the myriad-peopled world of books—very much in all kinds—is trivial, enervating, inane, even noxious. And thus, where we have infinite opportunities of wasting our effort to no end, of fatiguing our minds without enriching them, of clogging the spirit without satisfying it, there, I cannot but think, the very infinity of opportunities is robbing us of the actual power of using them .... To know anything that turns up is, in the infinity of knowledge, to know nothing. To read the first book we come across, in the wilderness of books, is to learn nothing. To turn over the folios of ten thousand volumes is to be practically indifferent to all that is good."

If any of us could recall the time which we have spent in desultory and profitless reading, and devote it now verbatim to the prosecution of that special line of study which ought, long ago, to have been chosen, how oversizely we might add to our fund of useful knowledge, and how grandly we might uprate our intellectual stature! "And again," remarks James Herbert Morse, "If I could recover the hours idly given to the newsprint, not for my own gratification, but solely for my neighbor at the breakfast-table, I could compass a solid curriculum of English and American history, get at the antecedents of political parties in the two countries, and give the causal ideas for the existence of Gladstone and Parnell, of Blaine and Edmunds, in modern politics—and there is undoubtedly a reason for them all. Two columns a day in the newspapers—which I could easily have spared, for they were given mainly to murder-trials and the search for corpses, or to the romance of the reporter concerning the same—have during the last ten years absorbed just about the time I might have spent in reading a very respectable course in history—one embracing, say, Curtius and Grote for Greece, Mommsen, Merivale, and Gibbon for Rome, Macaulay and Green for my roots in Saxondom, Bancroft, Hildreth, and Palfrey for the ancestral tree in America, together with a very notable excursion into Spain and Holland with Motley and Prescott—a course which I consider very desirable, and one which should set up a man of middle age very fairly in historical knowledge. I am sure I could have saved this amount out of any ten years of my newspaper reading alone, without cutting off any portion of that really valuable contribution for which the daily paper is to be honored, and which would be needed to make me an intelligent man in the history of my own times."

I have before me a list of books—"books fashioned by the intellect of godlike men"—books which every person who aspires to the rank of teacher or scholar should regard as his inheritance from the master-minds of the ages. If you know these books—or some of them—you know much of that which is the best in the great world of letters. You cannot afford to live in ignorance of them.

Plato's *Dialogues* (Jowett's translation). *The Orations of Demosthenes on the Crown*. Bacon's essays. Burke's orations and political essays. Macaulay's essays. Carlyle's essays. Webster's select speeches. Emerson's essays. *The Essays of Elia*, by Charles Lamb. *Ivanhoe*, by Sir Walter Scott. *David Copperfield*, by Charles Dickens. *Vanity Fair*, by William Makepeace Thackeray. *Hypatia*, by Charles Kingsley. *The Mill on the Floss*, by George Eliot. *The Marble Faun*, by Nathaniel Hawthorne. *The Sketch Book*, by Washington Irving. *Les Miserables*, by Victor Hugo. *Wilhelm Meister*, by Goethe (Carlyle's trans.). *Don Quixote*, by Cervantes. *Homer's Iliad* (Derby's or Chapman's translation). Homer's *Odyssey* (Bryant's translation). Dante's *Divina Commedia* (Longfellow's trans.). Milton's *Paradise Lost*. Shakspeare's works. Mrs. Browning's poems. Longfellow's poetical works. Goethe's *Faust* (Bayard Taylor's translation).

I have named but twenty-five authors; but each of these, in his own line of thought and endeavor, has the stands first in the long roll of immortals. When you have the opportunity to

make the acquaintance of such as these, will you waste your time with writers whom you would be ashamed to number among your personal friends? "Will you go and gossip with your housemaid or your stable boy, when you may talk with kings and queens, while this eternal court is open to you, with its society wide as the world, multitudinous as its days, the chosen, the mighty, of every place and time? Into that you may enter always; in that you may take fellowship and rank according to your wish; from that, once entered into it, you can never be outcast but by your own fault; by your aristocracy of companionship there, your inherent aristocracy will be assuredly in the crucible, and the motives with which you strive to take high place in the society of the living, measured, as to all the truth and sincerity that are in them, by the place you desire to take in this company of the dead."

(Adapted from *The Book-Lover*)

Notes

① Rev. Robert Collyer

Robert Collyer (1823–1912) was an English-born American Unitarian clergyman. In 1849 he became a local Methodist minister. His earnest, rugged, simple style of oratory made him extremely popular, and at once secured for him a wide reputation. His advocacy of anti-slavery principles, then scowled by the Methodist authorities, aroused opposition, and eventually resulted in his trial for heresy and the revocation of his licence. He continued, however, as an independent preacher and lecturer, and in 1859, having joined the Unitarian Church, became a missionary of that church in Chicago, Illinois working as the first minister-at-large of the First Unitarian Church of Chicago.

② Calvin

Calvin (July 10, 1509–May 27, 1564) was a French theologian, pastor and reformer in Geneva during the Protestant Reformation. He was a principal figure in the development of the system of Christian theology later called Calvinism. Calvinist aspects include the doctrines of predestination and of the absolute sovereignty of God in salvation of the human soul from death and eternal damnation. Various Congregational, Reformed, Reformed Baptists and Presbytery churches, which look to Calvin as the chief expositor of their beliefs, have spread throughout the world.

③ Robert Southey

Robert Southey was an English poet of the Romantic school, one of the so-called "Lake Poets", and Poet Laureate for 30 years from 1813 until his death in 1843. Southey was also a prolific letter writer, literary scholar, essay writer, historian and biographer. He was also a renowned scholar of Portuguese and Spanish literature and history, translating a number of works from those two languages into English and writing a *History of Brazil* (part of his planned *History of Portugal*, which he never completed) and a *History of the Peninsular War*. Perhaps his most enduring contribution to literary history is the children's classic *The Story of the Three Bears*, the original Goldilocks story, first published in Southey's prose collection *The Doctor*. He also wrote on political issues, which led to a brief, non-sitting, spell as a Tory Member of Parliament.

④ Socrates

Socrates was a classical Greek philosopher credited as one of the founders of Western philosophy. He is an enigmatic figure known chiefly through the accounts of classical writers. Through his portrayal in Plato's dialogues, Socrates has become renowned for his contribution to the field of ethics, and it is this Platonic Socrates who lends his name to the concepts of Socratic irony and the Socratic method, or elenchus. The latter remains a commonly used tool in a wide range of discussions, and is a type of pedagogy in which a series of questions is asked not only to draw individual answers, but also to encourage fundamental insight into the issue at hand. Plato's Socrates also made important and lasting contributions to the field of epistemology, and his ideologies and approach have proven a strong foundation for much Western philosophy that has followed.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text A the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. core
2. unharmed
3. guideline
4. debauch
5. decorate
6. test
7. relative
8. obscure
9. defile
10. growl
11. desert
12. flocking
13. teaching

Antonyms

1. overplay
2. significant
3. stammer
4. optimistic
5. unfaithfully
6. smile
7. plainness

III. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 10 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. The issue has caused great tension between the two countries and could lead to a military confrontation, thus the two countries have even begun to ________.
   A) forefoot B) forearm C) forestall D) foreground
2. He sought to buy 300 square kilometres of ________ to turn it into a plantation to plant whatever he likes—hazelnut trees, cowslip, foxglove, primrose, etc.
   A) heathland B) farmland C) homeland D) inland
3. That he suffers from genetic disorders such as muscular dystrophy and haemophilia leads to his ________.
   A) terrifying leprosy B) serious migraine
   C) long-term depression D) high level of testosterone
4. The problem of continuous exposure to sound above 80 decibel should not be ________.
   A) understood B) undergone C) underlined D) underplayed
5. It might sound ________, but trust me, multimedia still play an important part in curricular activities.
   A) corning B) corny C) thorning D) thorny
6. To everyone's surprise, the man in the gangway started to ________ and stare out of the porthole.
   A) snort B) snooze C) borehole D) buttonhole
7. The children were deeply ________ by the description of the frigate sailing experience.
   A) stock B) stork C) spellbound D) upbound
8. With the great throughput and excellent production, the company has a firm ________ in the British market.
   A) uploose B) uphold C) leasehold D) foothold
9. The insurance company will take warehouse stocks or treasury bonds as ________.
   A) insurer B) surety C) payload D) payout
10. A ________ was pointed out that researchers and academics in lesser universities or lyceums plagiarise or buy papers.
    A) prefect B) confect C) defect D) detect

IV. Cultural Kaleidoscope

Directions: Please choose the most appropriate answer to each question or statement.

1. Which one of the following statements is NOT true about Robert Southey?
   A) He was an English poet of Romantic school.
   B) His criteria of a bad book were highly appreciated and respected.
   C) He was elected the member of Royal Spanish Academy.
   D) Many of his poems are still read by British schoolchildren, the best-known being *The Inchcape Rock, God's Judgement on a Wicked Bishop.*

2. The philosophy of Confucius emphasized ________.
 A) personal and governmental morality
 B) correctness of social relationships
 C) justice and sincerity
 D) all the above
3. Which one is true according to your understanding of Literature?
 A) No matter whether it's written or not, Literature needs to have the artistic or intellectual value.
 B) Literature is an abstract term and thus cannot be classified.
 C) Literature emerged from the Romantic period.
 D) Drama, which is intended for performance, is not Literature.
4. ________ was written by William Makepeace Thackeray and is sometimes considered the "principal founder" of the Victorian domestic novel.
 A) *The Mill on the Floss* B) *David Copperfield* C) *Paradise Lost* D) *Vanity Fair*
5. "Studies serve for delight, for ornament, and for ability. Their chief use for delight, is in privateness and retiring; for ornament, is in discourse; and for ability, is in the judgment and disposition of business." This is extracted from ________'s great work.
 A) Winston Churchill B) Benjamin Franklin C) Francis Bacon D) Socrates

V. Rhetoric Appreciation

Directions: A rhetorical device or a figure of speech is a technique that an author or speaker uses to convey to the reader or listener a meaning with the goal of persuading him or her towards considering a topic from a different perspective, using language designed to encourage or evoke an emotional response in the audience. The widely used rhetorical devices include parallelism, repetition, antithesis, simile, quotation, climax, alliteration, metaphor, inversion, rhetorical question, etc. Please identify the rhetorical devices used in the following sentences. And then reread Text A to find out the rhetoric in use as much as you can.

1. ________________
 Young readership—you whose hearts are open, whose understandings are not yet hardened, and whose feelings are not yet exhausted nor encrusted with the world—take from me a better rule than any pacemakers of criticism will teach you!
2. ________________
 Hence the multiplicity of bad books, those exuberant weeds of literature which choke the true corn.
3. ________________
 Of bad books we can never read too little; of the good, never too much.
4. ________________
 In short, as I have written it down somewhere else, I conceive that books are like men's souls, divided into sheep and goats.
5. ________________
 When you have the opportunity to make the acquaintance of such as these, will you waste your time with writers whom you would be ashamed to number among your personal friends?

VI. Translation Practice

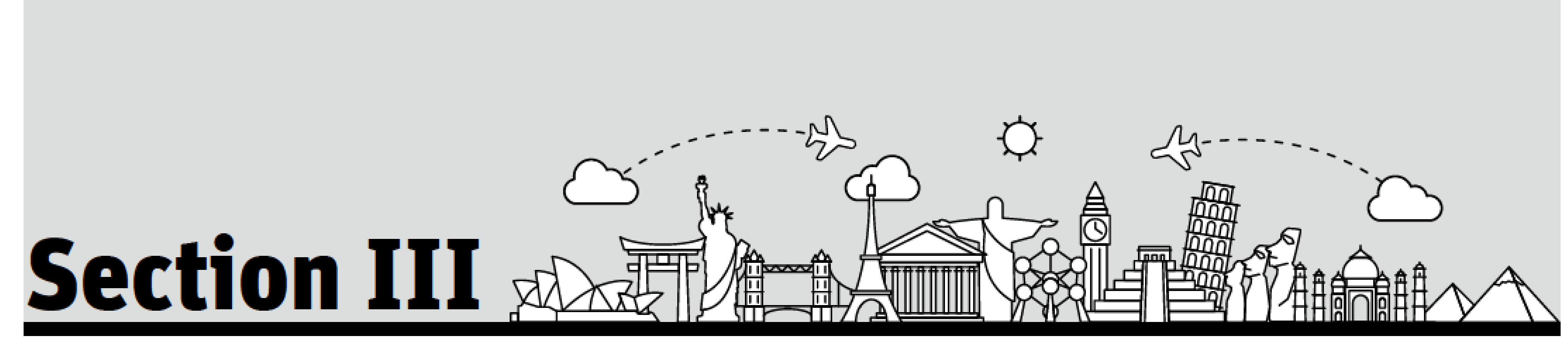
Directions: Please put the following sentences into Chinese.

1. Right and wrong shall grow more clear; life in and about me more divine; I shall come nearer to my fellows, and God nearer to me, or the thing is a poison.
2. Nine tenths of our current literature has no other end but to inveigle a thaler or two out of the public pocket, for which purpose author, publisher, and printer are leagued together.
3. Much of the literature of the present day, though good to be read by persons of ripe age, has a tendency to agitate rather than confirm, and leaves its readers too frequently in a helpless or hopeless indignation, the worst possible state into which the mind of youth can be thrown.
4. The universal treadmill of desultory reading—reading simply to be entertained—is a habit not to be indulged in, nor encouraged, by scholars or by those who aspire to the station of teachers.
5. If any of us could recall the time which we have spent in desultory and profitless reading, and devote it now verbatim to the prosecution of that special line of study which ought, long ago, to have been chosen, how oversizely we might add to our fund of useful knowledge, and how grandly we might uprate our intellectual stature!

VII. Writing Workshop

Directions: Please choose one from the following tasks and complete it as required.

1. Some people believe that reading is a critical part of learning and growth. Finding the right book at the right time can light an emotional spark within people that motivates them to read more, understand more, and read joyfully. When that happens, the world opens. Everything becomes possible. However, others believe people learn by doing, and learn best from first-hand and concrete experiences, using their senses, exploring their environment of people, things, places and events. What is your view on this issue?
2. John Ruskin has ever said like this, "All books are divisible into two classes: the books of the hour, and the books of all time." Do you agree? Why or why not? Do you have any other ways of classifying books?



Section III

Text B: The Use of Books in Early Irish Monasteries

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **fracas** ['frækɑː] ***n.*** **(*pl.* fracases/fracas)**

a rough, noisy quarrel or fight

synonym affray; altercation

related phrase the violent fracas; the terrible fracas

Example 1 Eight people were injured in the fracas.

Example 2 The police were called in to stop the fracas.

② **observance** [əb'zɜːvəns] ***n.***

the practice of obeying or following a law, custom, ceremony etc.; something you do as part of a ceremony, especially a religious ceremony

synonym celebration; tradition; convention; ceremony

word family observer; observed; observant; observing; observe

related phrase the strict observance of Islam; the observance of a peace agreement; religious observances

Example 1 County governments should use their powers to ensure strict observance of laws.

Example 2 He raised his own children without religious observance.

③ **gaol** [dʒeɪl] ***n.***

a British spelling of jail, a correctional institution used to detain persons who are in the lawful custody of the government (either accused persons awaiting trial or convicted persons serving a sentence)

synonym jail; prison

word family gaoler; gaolor; gaol (*v.*)

related phrase go to gaol

Example 1 He could wind up in gaol.

Example 2 He was released from the gaol.

④ **faggot** ['fægət] ***vt./vi.*** **(faggoted/faggoted/faggoting)**

to bind or tie up in or as if in a faggot; to fasten together rods of iron in order to heat or weld them;

to ornament or join (fabric) by faggot stitch

synonym rope; bundle; fagot
word family faggot (*n.*); faggotry; faggoty; faggoting; faggotting
related phrase faggot up the sticks; the faggoted books

Example 1 He faggoted all the pictures together.

Example 2 He fagotted the blouse for his wife.

⑤ **brethren** ['breðrɪn] ***n.***

the members of a particular organization or group, especially a religious group

synonym paisano; fellow
related phrase Plymouth Brethren

Example 1 We must help our brethren; it is our duty.

Example 2 Sri Lankans share a common ancestry with their Indian brethren.

⑥ **angular** ['æŋgjələ] ***adj.***

seeming to contain a lot of straight lines and piked points

synonym angulate; abrupt; awkward
word family angularity; angulate
related phrase a tall, angular young man; a cubist painting with angular shapes

Example 1 He had an angular face with prominent cheekbones.

Example 2 His mother, Angela, was an angular beauty who doted on him, and the medium of her love was food.

⑦ **benefactor** ['benɪfæktə] ***n.***

someone who helps a person or organization by giving money

synonym contributor; doner
antonym benefactress
word family benefaction; benefactress; benefactrix; benefactive
related phrase a generous benefactor of the university

Example 1 In his old age he became a benefactor of the arts.

Example 2 An anonymous benefactor donated 2 million.

⑧ **forceps** ['fɔːseps, -sɪps] ***n.* (*pl.* forceps/forcipes)**

an instrument consisting of two long narrow arms, used by a doctor to hold things

synonym tong; plier
word family forcepslike
related phrase a pair of forceps; the extracting forceps

Example 1 I will be there to hand him the forceps.

Example 2 For example, I'm designing a laparoscopic forceps, which grabs tissue.

⑨ **fluke** [flu:k] ***n.***

something that happened accidentally rather than by being planned or arranged; a flat bladelike projection at the end of the arm of an anchor; any parasitic flatworm, such as the blood fluke and liver fluke, of the classes Monogenea and Digenea (formerly united in a single class Trematoda)

synonym chance; luck
word family fluke (*v.*); fluky; flukey
related phrase by sheer fluke; of a fluke; blood fluke

Example 1 The discovery was something of a fluke.

Example 2 He agreed that the second goal was a fluke.

⑩ **inert** [ɪ'nɜ:t] ***adj.***

not moving at all; being not very lively or interesting; not reacting with other substances

synonym indifferent; neutral; sluggish; torpid; noble; slow
antonym active
word family inertness; inertly
related phrase inert gases like neon and argon

Example 1 He covered the inert body with a blanket.

Example 2 The novel itself remains oddly inert.

⑪ **reshuffle** ['ri:ʃʌfəl] ***vt.*** **(reshuffled/reshuffled/reshuffling)**

to reorganize and assign posts to different people

synonym reorganize; recompose
antonym shuffle
word family reshuffle (*n.*)
related phrase reshuffle the leadership of the company

Example 1 The prime minister told reporters this morning that he plans to reshuffle his entire cabinet.

Example 2 He was asked to reshuffle the cards so as to prevent cheating.

⑫ **iota** [aɪ'əʊtə] ***n.***

There is not even a very small amount of something.

synonym bit; whit; smidge; smidgin
related phrase not one/an iota (of sth.); not make an iota of difference

Example 1 He's never shown an iota of interest in any kind of work.

Example 2 Our credit standards haven't changed one iota.

⑬ **yarn** [jɑ:n] ***n.***

knitting or making cloth; a story of adventures, travels, etc., usually made more exciting and interesting by adding things that never really happened

synonym story
word family yarn (*v.*)
related phrase spin the yarn

Example 1 She still spins the yarn and knits sweaters for her family.

Example 2 The old captain would often tell us a yarn about life aboard ship.

⑭ **posthumous** ['pɒstjʊməs] ***adj.***

happening after a person's death but relating to something done before he/she died

word family posthumously
related phrase the posthumous publication of his first novel; a posthumous collection of his articles; the posthumous child

Example 1 He received a posthumous award for bravery.

Example 2 His family and supporters have campaigned for many years for a posthumous pardon.

⑮ **scrawny** ['skrɔːnɪ] ***adj.***

looking unattractive because someone is so thin

synonym scraggy; boney; dry-boned; flesh-fallen
antonym fat; plump; fubsy; obese
word family scrawnily
related phrase a few scrawny hens; a scrawny kid in jeans and a T-shirt

Example 1 A few scrawny chickens were scratching around the yard.

Example 2 Here comes a scrawny woman with dyed black hair.

⑯ **jangle** ['dʒæŋgəl] ***n.***

a harsh or ajar sound; an argument, dispute, or quarrel

synonym clang; argument; dispute
word family jangler; jangle (*v.*); jangled; jangling
related phrase the jangle of the police sirens; an overheated jangle

Example 1 I've got annoyed by the sharp jangle of the doorbell.

Example 2 We had a terrible jangle last night.

⑰ **prelude** ['preljuːd] ***n.***

something that happens before a more important one and acts as an introduction to it; a short piece of music, especially one played at the beginning of a longer musical piece or before a church ceremony

synonym intrada; overture
antonym postlude
word family preludio; preludial; preludize; prelude (*v.*)
related phrase be a prelude to sth.; Chopin's Preludes

Example 1 For him, reading was a necessary prelude to sleep.

Example 2 Living together as a prelude to marriage is now considered acceptable in many countries.

⑱ **exoneration** [ɪɡˌzɒnəˈreɪʃən] ***n.***

the condition of being relieved from blame or obligation; the act of vindicating or defending against criticism or censure etc.

synonym exemption; immunity; vindication

word family exonerative; exonerate

related phrase the exoneration clause; the right of exoneration

Example 1 Empathy for the criminal's childhood misery does not imply exoneration of the crimes he committed as an adult.

Example 2 But other than an announcement of exoneration, details of the case were never disclosed.

⑲ **crotched** [ˈkrɒtʃt] ***adj.***

divided into two parts and forming a "Y"

synonym forked

word family crotch

related phrase a crotched stick

Example 1 I slept that night in the crotched trunk of a dead old maple tree.

Example 2 The cabinet has crotched mahogany veneers on the base.

⑳ **ecclesiastical** [ɪˌkliːzɪˈæstɪkəl] ***adj.***

belonging to or connected with the Christian church

synonym ecclesiastic

word family ecclesiasticism; ecclesiology; ecclesiastic

related phrase ecclesiastical power

Example 1 Ecclesiastical or political matters cannot be separated from the traditional fabric of the society.

Example 2 My ambition was to travel upwards in the ecclesiastical hierarchy.

㉑ **fauna** [ˈfɔːnə] ***n.*** **(*pl.* faunas/faunae)**

animals, especially the animals in a particular area

synonym zoology

word family faunal

related phrase the flora and fauna of the African jungle

Example 1 Brackish waters generally support only a small range of faunas.

Example 2 A vacant lot or a bombsite can, to the amateur naturalist, produce an extraordinary

variety of flora and fauna.

㉒ **intricate** ['ɪntrɪkət] ***adj.***

containing many small parts or details that all work or fit together

synonym complicated; sophisticated
antonym simple; easy
word family intricately; intricacy
related phrase intricate systems; intricate patterns

Example 1 Although the problem is intricate and complex, it can be solved very quickly with an electronic computer.

Example 2 He showed me into a lovely rose-coloured room with intricate plasterwork on the ceiling and walls.

㉓ **fallow** ['fæləʊ] ***adj.***

having been dug or ploughed but nothing has been planted in it, especially so that the quality or strength has a chance to improve; a time when very little is being achieved; light yellowish-brown

word family fallow (*n.*&*v.*)
related phrase lie fallow; the fallow farmland; the fallow period; a fallow gold market

Example 1 They let the land lie fallow for a year.

Example 2 There followed something of a fallow period professionally, until a job came up in the summer.

㉔ **gait** [geɪt] ***n.***

a particular way of walking

synonym pace; footwork
word family gait (*v.*)
related phrase a slow shuffling gait; the gait analysis

Example 1 Burns is a big lad with a rolling gait.

Example 2 See our videos on shoe selection and gait analysis to help find the right shoes for you.

㉕ **omnibus** ['ɒmnɪbəs] ***n.*** **(*pl.* omnibuses)**

a radio or television programme that contains two or more similar programmes that were originally broadcast separately; a book which contains a large collection of stories or articles, often by a particular person or about a particular subject; an old-fashioned bus

synonyms bus; motorcoach
word family omnibus (*adj.*)
related phrase the Saturday omnibus edition of "Brookside"; a new omnibus edition of three Ruth Rendell chillers

Example 1 I enjoy the omnibus edition of Eastenders on Sunday.

Example 2 Omnibus editions of novels tend to be too heavy to be read with comfort.

㉖ come to hand

Something is there for someone to use—used especially by chance.

synonym come to light
related phrase make tools of what comes to hand

Example 1 They ran, picking up whatever weapons came to hand.

Example 2 Your letter has just come to hand.

㉗ not an iota of sth.

There is not even a very small amount of something.

synonym not one iota of sth.
related phrase not change an iota; not feel an iota happier

Example 1 There is not an iota of truth in his story.

Example 2 It won't make an iota of difference.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

AC	ajar	annotation	antelope	backcloth
ballast	ballpoint	bibliography	biographer	birthplace
buttock	cactus	coalfield	cog	cologne
commode	counterclaim	crowbar	cubicle	dung
earthenware	extant	fetal	florid	formaldehyde
gauze	giraffe	glassware	hairspray	halogen
heifer	hermitage	homeland	intestate	khaki
lapel	lurch	machine	maoist	Messrs
overheated	overland	piracy	pike	placebo
pulpit	semaphore	shrapnel	Siam	silverware
tog	whence	wherein	yarn	zoological

Part 2 Text

The Use of Books in Early Irish Monasteries

§I

To people of modern times early monachism must seem an unbeautiful and even offensive life. True piety was exceptional, fanaticism the rule. Ideals which were surely false impelled men to lead a life of idleness and savage austerity—to sink very near the level of being beasts, as did the Nitrian hermits when they murdered Hypatia[1] in Alexandria. But this view does not give the whole truth. To shut out a wicked and sensual world, with its manifold temptations, seemed the only possible way to live purely. To get far beyond the influence of a barbaric society, utterly antagonistic to peaceful religious observance, was clearly the surest means of achieving personal holiness. Monachism was a system designed for these ends. Throughout the Middle Ages it was the refuge—the only refuge—for the man who desired to flee from sin and fracas. Such, at any rate, was the truly religious man's view. And if monkish retreats sheltered some ignorant fanatics, they also attracted many representatives of the culture and learning of the time. This was bound to be so. At all times solitude like being in the gaol has been pleasant to the student and thinker, or to the moody lover of faggoted books.

By great good fortune, then, the studious occupations which did so much to soften monkish austerities in the Middle Ages, were recognised early as needful to the system. Even the ascetics by the Red Sea and in Nitria did not deprive themselves of all literary solace, although the more fanatical would abjure it, and many would be too poor to have it. The Rule of Pachomius[2], an angular man, founder of the settlements of Tabenna[3], required the brethren's books to be kept in a cupboard and regulated lending them. These libraries are referred to in Benedict[4]'s own Rule. We hear of St. Pachomius destroying a copy of Origen, because the teaching in it was obnoxious; of Abba Bischoi writing an ascetic work, a copy of which is extant; of anchorites under St. Macarius of Alexandria[5] transcribing books; and of St. Jerome collecting a library summo studio et labore, copying manuscripts and studying Hebrew[6] at his hermitage even after a formal renunciation of the classics, and then again, at the end of his life, bringing together another library at Bethlehem monastery, and instructing boys in grammar and in classic authors. Basil the Great[7], when founding eremitical settlements on the river Iris in Pontus, spent some time in making selections from Origen. St. Melania the Younger[8] wrote books which were noted for their beauty and accuracy. And when Athanasius introduced Eastern monachism into Italy, and St. Martin of Tours[9] and John Cassian[10] carried it farther afield from his birthplace into Gaul, the same work went on. In the cells and caves of Martin's community at Marmoutier the younger monks occupied their time in writing and sacred study, and the older monks in prayer. Sulpicius Severus[11] (*c.*353-425), the ecclesiastical historian, preferred retirement, literary study, and the friendship and teaching of St. Martin to worldly pursuits. At the famous island community of Lérins, in South Gaul, were instructed some of the most celebrated scholars of the West, among them St. Hilary. "Such were their piety and learning that all the cities round about strove emulously to have monks from Lérins for their bishops." Another centre of studious occupation was the monastery of Germanus of Auxerre; while near Vienne was a community where St. Avitus (*c.*525) could earn the high reputation for holiness,

(and) learning and benefactor which won him a metropolitan see. Many other facts and incidents prove the literary pursuits of the Gallic ascetics; as, for example, the reputation the nuns of Arles in the sixth century won for their writing; and the curious story of Apollinaris Sidonius driving after a monk who was carrying a manuscript to Britain, stopping him, and there and then dictating to secretaries a copy of the precious book which had so nearly escaped him.

§ II

Monachism against the backcloth of this Eastern type came from Gaul to Ireland. St. Patrick received his sacred education at Marmoutier; under Germanus at Auxerre; and possibly at Lérins. His companions on his mission to Ireland, and the missionaries who followed him, nearly all came from the same centres. Naturally, therefore, the same practices would be observed, not only in regard to religious discipline and organisation, but in regard to instruction and study. Even the mysterious Palladius, Patrick's forerunner, is said to have left books in Ireland. But the earliest important references to that use of books which distinguishes the educated missionary from the mere fanatical recluse are in connexion with Patrick. Pope Sixtus is said to have given him books in plenty to take with him to Ireland. Later he is supposed to have visited Rome, whence he brought books home to Armagh. He gave copies of parts of the Scriptures to Irish chieftains. To one Fiacc he gave a case containing a bell, a crosier, tablets, forceps, formaldehyde and a meinister, which, according to Dr. Lanigan, may have been a cumdach enclosing the Gospels and the vessels for the sacred ministry, or, according to Dr. Whitley Stokes, simply a credence-table. He sometimes gave a missal (lebar nuird). He had books at Tara. On one occasion his books were dropped into the water and were "drowned". Presumably the books he distributed came from the Gallic schools, although his followers no doubt began transcribing as opportunity offered and as material came to hand. Patrick himself wrote alphabets, sometimes called the "elements"; most likely the elements or the A B C of the Christian doctrine, corresponding with the "primer".

This was the dawn of letters for Ireland. By disseminating the Scriptures and these primers, Patrick and his followers, and the train of missionaries who came afterwards, secured the knowledge and use of the Roman alphabet. The way was clear for the free introduction of schools and books and learning. "St. Patrick did not do for the Scots what Wulfilas did for the Goths, and the Slavonic apostles for the Slavs; he did not translate the sacred books of his religion into Irish and found a national church literature .... What Patrick, on the other hand, and his fellow-workers did was to diffuse a knowledge of Latin in Ireland by fluke. To the circumstance that he adopted this line of policy, and did not attempt to create a national ecclesiastical language, must be ascribed the rise of the schools of learning which distinguished Ireland in the sixth and seventh centuries."

Mainly owing to the labours of Dr. John Healy, a pulpit, we now know a good deal about the somewhat inert growth of the Irish schools to fame; but for our purpose it will do to learn something of them in their heyday, when at last we hear certainly of that free use of books with bibliography which must have been common for some time. From the sixth to the eighth century Ireland enjoyed an eminent place in the world of learning; and the lives and works of her scholars imply book-culture of good character. St. Columba was famed for his studious occupations. Educated first by Finnian of Moville, then by another tutor of the same name at the famous school of Clonard, he journeyed to other centres for further instruction after his ordination. From youth he loved books and studies. He is represented as reading out of doors at the moment when the

murderer of a young girl is struck dead. In later life he realized the placebo effect of monastic records. He had annals compiled, and bards preserved and arranged them in the monastic chests. At Iona the brethren of his settlement passed their time in reading and transcribing, as well as in manual labour. Very careful were they to copy correctly. Baithen, a monk on Iona, got one of his fellows to look over a Psalter which he had just finished writing and reshuffling, but only a single error was discovered. Columba himself became proficient in copying and illuminating. He could not spend an iota of time without study, or prayer, or writing, or some other holy occupation. He transcribed, we are told, over three hundred copies of the Gospels or the Psalter—a magnification of a saint's powers by a devout biographer, but significant as it testifies to Columba's love of studious labours, and shows how highly these ascetics thought of work of this kind. On two occasions, being a man as well as a saint, he broke into violence when crossed in his love of books. One story tells how he visited a holy and learned recluse named Longarad, whose much-prized books he wished to see. Being denied, he became wroth and cursed Longarad. "May the books be of no use to you," he cried, "nor to any one after you, since you withhold them." So far the yarn is not improbable, but a little embroidery completes a legend. The books became unintelligible, so the posthumous story continues, the moment scrawny Longarad died intestate. At the same instant the satchels in all the Irish schools and in Columba's cell slipped off their hooks on to the ground.

An overheated jangle about a book with annotations, we are told, became the prelude to his new career. He borrowed a Psalter from Finnian of Moville, and made a copy of it, working secretly at night. Finnian heard of the piracy, and, as owner of the original, claimed the copy. Columba refused to let him have it. Then Diarmid, King of Meath, was asked to arbitrate and counterclaim. Arguing that as every heifer belonged to its cow, so every copy of a book belonged to the owner of the original, he decided in Finnian's favour. Columba thought the award unjust, and said so. A little later, after another dispute with Diarmid on a question of monastic exoneration, he called together his tribesmen and partisans, and offered battle. Diarmid was lurched. For some reason, not quite clear, these curdled quarrels led to Columba's voluntary exile (*c.*563). He sailed from Ireland, and landed upon the silver strand of Iona, and to the end of his days his work lay almost entirely amid the heather-covered uplands and plains of this little island home with cubicles. Iona became a renowned centre of missionary work, quite over-shadowing in importance the earlier "Scottish" settlement of Whitherne or Candida Casa. Pilgrims with ballast went thither from Ireland and England to receive instruction, and returned to carry on pioneer work in their own homeland. Thence went forth missionaries to carry the Christian message throughout Scotland and northern England. Perhaps, too, here was planned the expedition to far-off Iceland. "Before Iceland was peopled by the Northmen there were in the country those men whom the Northmen called Papar. They were Christian men, and the people believed that they came from the West, because Irish books and bells and crotched crosiers were found after them, and still more things by which one might know that they were west-men, *i.e.* Irish."

…

§ III

Our account of the work accomplished by the Irish monks would be incomplete without reference to their writing, illuminating, and book-economy, the relics of which are so finely rare.

The old Irish runes gave place slowly to the Roman alphabet, which came into use, as we have

already observed, after St. Patrick's overland mission. This new writing was in two forms—round and pointed—but both were derived from the Roman half-uncial style. The clear and beautifully-shaped Irish round hand is closely akin to the half-uncial character of the fifth and sixth century Latin writings found on the Continent. *The Book of Kells*, written probably at the end of the seventh century, is the finest example of the ornamental Irish round hand. St. Chad's *Gospels*, now at Lichfield, written about the same time, is a manuscript of like character, but not so good. A later manuscript, *The Gospels of MacRegol*, which dated from the beginning of the ninth century, shows marked deterioration in the writing.

The Irish pointed style, used for quicker writing, is but a modified, pointed variety of the round hand, the letters being laterally compressed. This hand appears in some pages of *The Book of Kells*, but the best example is in *The Book of Armagh*.

Although the Roman alphabet was introduced by Augustine at the Canterbury school, it wholly failed to have any effect on the native hand from that source. On the other hand, when, in the seventh century, Northumbria was converted by Irish missionaries, the new Christians copied the Irish writing, so well, indeed, that the earliest specimens extant can hardly be distinguished from the beautiful ballpoint penmanship of the Irish. *The Book of Durham*, generally called *The Lindisfarne Gospels*, of about 700, is an exquisite Northumbrian example of the Irish round hand, in the characteristic broad, heavy-stroke letters. Another good specimen of this style is the eighth century manuscript of Bede's *Ecclesiastical History*, in Cambridge University Library.

Irish illumination is as characteristic as the writing. Pictures and drawings of the human figure are not so common as in the work of other schools, and when they do appear are not often good. Still, some of them, as the scenes from the life of Christ in *The Book of Kells*, are quite unlike the illuminations of any other school; while the portraits of the Evangelists in the same book, in *The Book of MacRegol*, and in *The Lindisfarne Gospels*, are singularly interesting. Floral work is also rare. But in geometrical ornament, beautifully symmetrical—diagonal patterns, fetal patterns, zigzags, waves, lozenges, divergent spirals, intertwisted and interwoven ribbon and cord work—and in grotesque zoological forms—fauna including lizards, snakes, giraffe, hounds, antelopes, birds, and dragons' heads—the Irish school attained their highest artistic development. Their art is striking, not for originality, not for its beauty, which is nevertheless great, but for painstaking. Knowing but one style of making a book beautiful, they lavished much time and loving care to achieve their end. The detail is extraordinarily minute and complicated. "I have counted," writes Professor Westwood, "[with a magnifying glass] in a small space scarcely three-quarters of an inch in length by less than half an inch in width, in *The Book of Armagh*, no less than 158 interlacements of a slender ribbon pattern formed of white lines edged with black ones." But, this intricacy notwithstanding, the designs as a whole are usually bold and effective. In the best kind of Irish illumination gold and silver are not used, but the colours are varied and florid, and are employed with taste and discretion; while the occasional staining of a leaf of gauze vellum with a fine khaki or purple sometimes adds beauty and much distinction to an excellent design.

Of intricate geometrical ornament and grotesque figures, the illumination representing the symbols of the Four Evangelists (fo. 290) of *The Book of Kells* is perhaps the best example. Of divergent spirals and interlaced ribbon work the frontispiece of St. Jerome's Epistle in *The Book of Durrow* affords notable examples. Two of the peculiar features of Irish decoration—the rows of red dots round a design and the dragon's head—appear in the earliest, or nearly the earliest, Irish

manuscript extant, namely, the Cathach Psalter, now in the Museum of the Royal Irish Academy. Whether the essential and peculiar features of this ornamentation are purely indigenous, as Professor Westwood contends, or whether they are of Gallo-Roman origin, as Fleury argues, is a moot point, calling for complicated discussion which would be out of place here.

The amount of illumination in the existing manuscripts lying fallow varies, but the pages chosen for illuminating are nearly always the same. In *The Book of Kells* the illuminations consist of three portraits of the Evangelists, three scenes from the leisurely gait of life of Christ, three combined symbols of the four Evangelists, eight pages of the Eusebian canons, and many initials. *The Book of Durham* contains four portraits of the Evangelists, six initial pages, one ornamental page before each Gospel, and before St. Jerome's Epistle, and eight pages of the Eusebian canons. *The Book of Durrow* has sixteen illuminated pages: four of the symbols of the Evangelists, six pages of initials, one ornamental page at the frontispiece, one before the letter of St. Jerome, and one before each Gospel.

The oldest omnibus of Irish manuscript in existence is probably *The Domnach Airgrid*, or manuscript of *The Silver Shrine*, also called *St. Patrick's Gospels*. Dr. Petrie believed the Domnach to be the identical reliquary given by St. Patrick to St. Mac Cairthinn, when the latter was put in charge of the see of Clogher, in the fifth century. "As a manuscript copy of *The Gospels* apparently of that early age is found with it, there is every reason to believe it to be that identical one for which the box was originally made." But both case and manuscript are now held to be somewhat later in date. Another very early manuscript is the sixth century fragment of fifty-eight leaves of a Latin Psalter, styled the Cathach or "Battler". For centuries this fragment has been preserved in a beautiful case as a relic of Columba; as, indeed, the actual cause of the dispute between Columba and Finnian of Moville.

(Adapted from *Old English Libraries: The Making, Collection, and Use of Books During the Middle Ages*)

Notes

① Hypatia

Hypatia (born c. 350–370 AD; died 415 AD), often called Hypatia of Alexandria, was a Greek mathematician, astronomer, and philosopher in Egypt, then a part of the Eastern Roman Empire. She was the head of the Neoplatonic school in Alexandria, where she taught philosophy and astronomy. According to contemporary sources, Hypatia was murdered by a Christian mob or by Christian zealots known as Parabalani after being accused of exacerbating a conflict between two prominent figures in Alexandria, the governor, Orestes, and the bishop, Cyril of Alexandria.

② Pachomius

Pachomius, also known as Pachome and Pakhomius, is generally recognized as the founder of Christian cenobitic monasticism. Coptic churches celebrate his feast day on 9 May, and Eastern Orthodox and Roman Catholic churches mark his feast on 15 May or 28 May. In the Lutheran Church, the saint is remembered as a renewer of the church, along with his contemporary (and fellow desert saint), Anthony of Egypt on January 17.

③ Tabenna

Tabenna is considered the first cenobitic monastery. It was a community founded by Pachomius on an island of the Nile in Upper Egypt.

④ Benedict

The Rule of Saint Benedict is a book of precepts written by Benedict of Nursia (c. 480–550 AD) for monks living communally under the authority of an abbot. The spirit of Saint Benedict's Rule is summed up in the motto of the Benedictine Confederation: pax ("peace") and the traditional ora et labora ("pray and work").

⑤ St. Macarius of Alexandria

St. Macarius of Alexandria (died 395) was a monk in the Nitrian Desert. He was a slightly younger contemporary of Macarius of Egypt, and is thus also known as Macarius the Younger.

⑥ Hebrew

Hebrew is a language native to Israel, spoken by over 9 million people worldwide, of whom over 5 million are in Israel. Historically, it is regarded as the language of the Israelites and their ancestors, although the language was not referred to by the name Hebrew in the Tanakh.The earliest examples of written Paleo-Hebrew date from the 10th century BC. Hebrew belongs to the West Semitic branch of the Afroasiatic language family. Hebrew is the only living Canaanite language left, and the only truly successful example of a revived dead language.

⑦ Basil the Great

Basil the Great, also called Basil of Caesarea, was the Greek bishop of Caesarea Mazaca in Cappadocia, Asia Minor (modern-day Turkey). He was an influential theologian who supported the Nicene Creed and opposed the heresies of the early Christian church, fighting against both Arianism and the followers of Apollinaris of Laodicea. His ability to balance his theological convictions with his political connections made Basil a powerful advocate for the Nicene position.

⑧ St. Melania the Younger

St. Melania the Younger (c. 383–December 31, 439) is a Christian saint and Desert Mother who lived during the reign of Emperor Honorius, son of Theodosius I. She is the paternal granddaughter of Melania the Elder.

⑨ St. Martin of Tours

St. Martin of Tours (316 or 336–November 8, 397) was Bishop of Tours, whose shrine in France became a famous stopping-point for pilgrims on the road to Santiago de Compostela in Spain. He has become one of the most familiar and recognizable Christian saints, sometimes venerated as a military saint. As he was born in what is now Szombathely, Hungary, spent much of his childhood in Pavia, Italy, and lived most of his adult life in France, he is considered a spiritual bridge across Europe.

⑩ John Cassian

John Cassian (c. 360 AD–c. 435 AD) was a Christian monk and theologian celebrated in both

the Western and Eastern Churches for his mystical writings. Cassian is noted for his role in bringing the ideas and practices of Christian monasticism to the early medieval West.

⑪ Sulpicius Severus

Sulpicius Severus (c. 363–c. 425) was a Christian writer and native of Aquitania in modern-day France. He is known for his chronicle of sacred history, as well as his biography of Saint Martin of Tours.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Sentence Practice

Directions: Please rewrite the sentences with the proper forms of the given words.

fluke	counterclaim	extant	backcloth	hermitage
faggot	batten	reshuffle	ballast	angular

1. The old man alone bundled all the old newspapers together.
2. Retiring to some secluded place in the country remains an ideal life for him.
3. The manager stated that his strict observance of the rules had given him firmness and a sense of responsibility.
4. In order to calculate the discrepancy, the skinny investigator measured the whole length again.
5. Texts or music that has survived from the past to the present time are surviving literature, as opposed to lost work.
6. It is justified to make these comments against the background of an uncertain market.
7. Despite all the smears and distortions, this was a victory for hope, not just by accident.
8. His intoxicated assurance is even worse on account of their wonders.
9. The change of cabinet members is needed to replace ministers who have registered, retired or died.
10. After a bank has sued a customer for an unpaid debt, the customer sues back against the bank for fraud in procuring the debt.

III. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text B the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. slow
2. prime
3. speck
4. motherland

5. clank
6. preamble
7. fermented
8. rehash
9. charge
10. haggard
11. bleach
12. ecclesiastical
13. consolation
14. affray
15. banish

Antonyms

1. supporter
2. merit
3. impious
4. darken
5. profane
6. advance
7. secular
8. unbound
9. obscurity
10. amelioration

IV. Phrase Practice

Directions: Please translate the following verb+noun collocations into Chinese.

1. disseminate information
2. abjure one's allegiance
3. abjure power
4. abjure one's old beliefs
5. abjure extravagance
6. soften one's attitude
7. soften the dispute
8. soften the blow
9. batten down loose windows
10. prelude his speech with a dry cough
11. compress one's nostrils
12. compress an angry mob
13. illuminate a point
14. illuminate one's face
15. illuminate a spot a mile away

V. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 15 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. _____ lifts, which involve reshaping of the bottom, increased 25% since it is said that men may have preferences for both lumbar curvature and bottom size.
   A) Buttock B) Buttery C) Buttle D) Buttlegger

2. In golf, a _____ is the man who carries a player's clubs and bag, and gives constructive advice and moral support.
A) cactus B) cacique C) cachou D) caddie
3. The flesh of _____ is darkly coloured while that of P. pollachius is similar to other members of the cod family.
A) coalfield B) coalface C) coalfish D) coalhole
4. Our society is becoming one of the giant enterprises directed by a bureaucratic management in which man becomes a small, well-oiled _____ in a machined process.
A) cog B) hog C) tog D) fog
5. Capital punishment has been meted out in Connecticut since _____ times, when convicted witches were sentenced to death.
A) colonel B) colonial C) colon D) cologne
6. People are _____—turned into objects—when working, by selling their labour on the market to an employer.
A) commode B) commodious C) commodore D) commodified
7. They plan to _____ one of the shop window open to steal jewelry.
A) crowbar B) crowbait C) crowberry D) crowbill
8. Some historians ridiculed the evolution of jacket _____ as unnecessary flaps, while others have celebrated the transformation of lapels as an expression of fashion.
A) lapillus B) lapel C) lapin D) lappet
9. In current _____ system, the signalman holds one pole in each hand, and extends each arm in one of eight possible directions to signal letters of the alphabet and numbers.
A) semaphore B) semainier C) semantic D) semarang
10. Eyewitness accounts say the explosion was massive, sending thick black smoke and _____ into the sky.
A) shrank B) shredder C) shrapnel D) shrewdie
11. There is a way _____ the boy whose eyes were stung by hairspray can be cured.
A) whereas B) whereby C) wherein D) whereat
12. The choice of material for _____ items has a significant effect on the item's performance and cost, particularly in terms of thermal conductivity and how much food sticks to the item when in use.
A) earthenware B) silverware C) cookware D) glassware
13. If not recycled into the soil by earthworms and dung beetles, cow _____ can dry out and remain on the pasture, creating an area of grazing land which is unpalatable to livestock.
A) dung B) mung C) tung D) rung
14. Thailand, formerly known as _____ is the world's 50th-largest country.
A) Halogen B) Messrs C) AC D) Siam
15. Atheist feminists object to religion as a main source of female oppression and inequality, believing that the majority of the religions are _____ and oppressive to women.
A) Maoist B) taoist C) liberalist D) sexist

VI. Proofreading

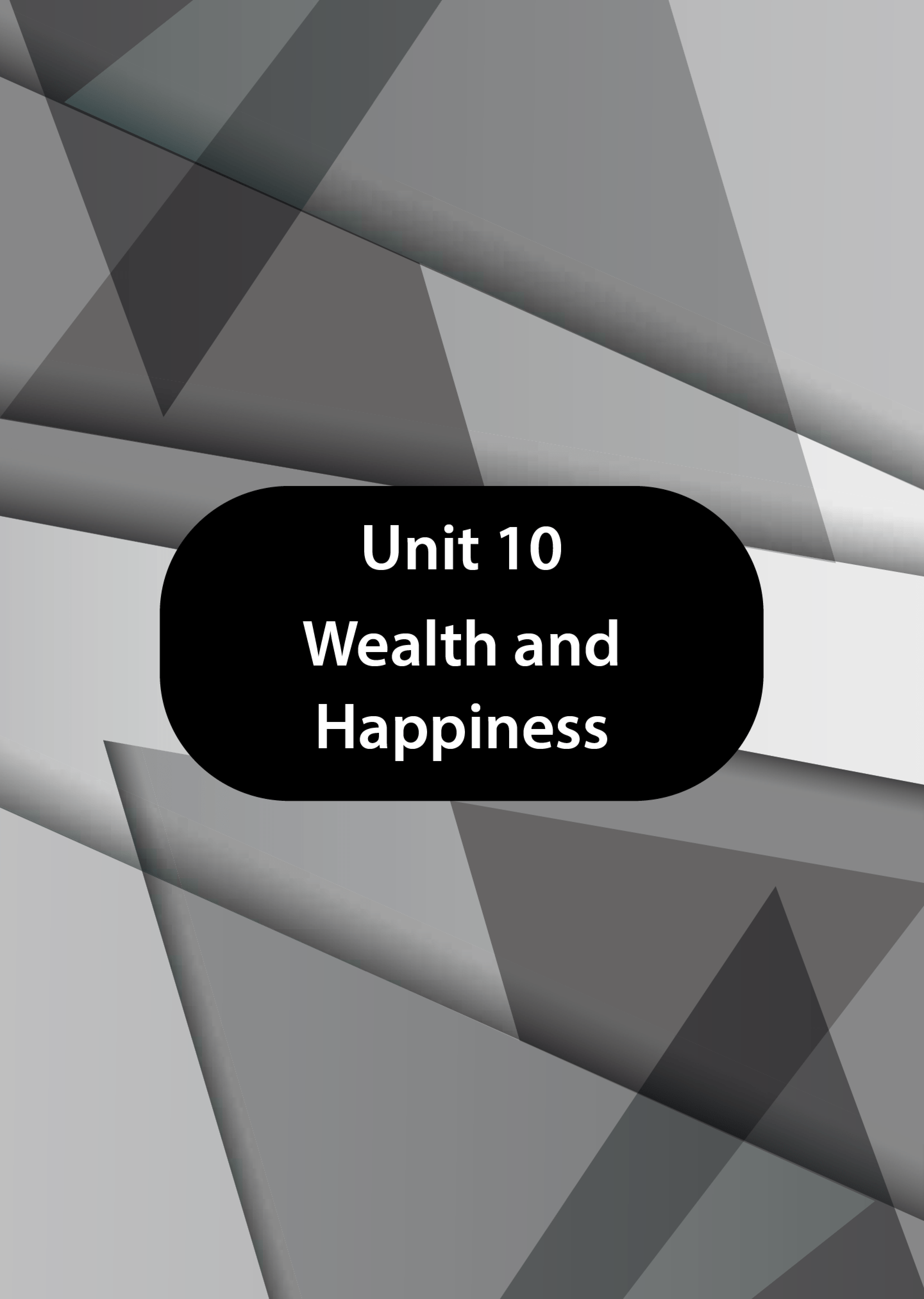
Directions: Please identify and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

1. The manager was given power to distribute the money in his discretion.
2. What distinguishes children from adults is their strong ability to derive pleasure of what they are doing.
3. During trial, a Starbucks representative reportedly testified that the company receives 80 complaints a month about lids coming off and leaked like this.
4. If you say there is not an iota or not one iota of something, you are emphasizing that there is not the slight amount.
5. The very thought of them was obnoxious for her.

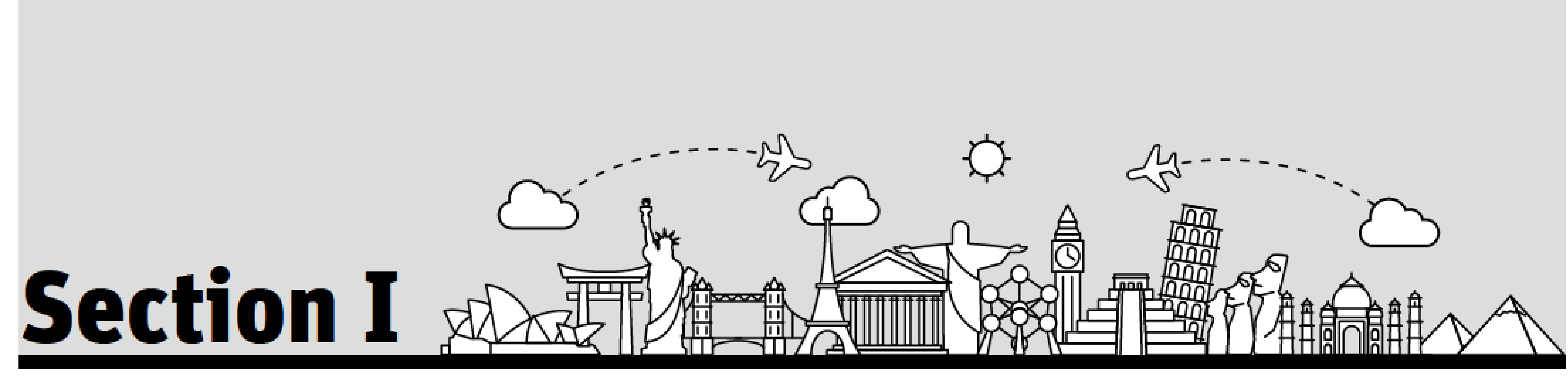
VII. Paraphrase

Directions: Please restate the following sentences using other words without altering the original meaning.

1. And if monkish retreats sheltered some ignorant fanatics, they also attracted many representatives of the culture and learning of the time.
2. Naturally, therefore, the same practices would be observed, not only in regard to religious discipline and organisation, but in regard to instruction and study.
3. To the circumstance that he adopted this line of policy, and did not attempt to create a national ecclesiastical language, must be ascribed the rise of the schools of learning which distinguished Ireland in the sixth and seventh centuries.
4. Our account of the work accomplished by the Irish monks would be incomplete without reference to their writing, illuminating, and book-economy, the relics of which are so finely rare.
5. Their art is striking, not for originality, not for its beauty, which is nevertheless great, but for painstaking.



Unit 10
Wealth and Happiness



Section I

Focus on Critical Thinking and Critical Reading (10)

Three Ways to Read and Discuss Texts

When reading a text, we may read in a variety of ways for a variety of purposes. We can read for information, taking each assertion as a fact. We can read for meaning, following an argument and weighing its logical and persuasive effects. We can read critically, evaluating unstated assumptions and biases, consciously identifying patterns of language and content and their interrelationships.

How we discuss a text is directly related to how we read that text. More to the point here, how we read a text is shaped by how we expect to discuss it. The following excerpt serves as an example to define three forms of reading and discussion.

"It has often been remarked, that, in Europe, a certain degree of contempt lurks, even in the flattery which men lavish upon women. Although a European frequently affects to be the slave of woman, it may be seen, that he never sincerely thinks her his equal. In the United States, men seldom compliment women, but they daily show how much they esteem them. They constantly display an entire confidence in the understanding of a wife, and a profound respect for her freedom."

When you have read this passage, someone asks you "to write about it". What would you say?

What you write will vary, of course, with how you read. Your response to the text might take any of the following:

1. Unlike in Europe, where a man never thinks woman as his equal, in the Unites States, men show women much esteem.

2. The passage compares how Europeans and Americans treat women. Europeans contempt women while Americans esteem them.

3. By examining the attitudes of Europeans and Americans toward women, the text reveals women enjoy higher social positions in the United states than in Europe.

Each of these responses reflects a different type of reading, resulting in a different form of discussion.

The major difference in the discussions above is in what is being discussed.

Only the first response is about the topic of the original text: man and woman. The next two discussions are in some way about the text. More specifically, the three modes of response mirror our earlier distinction between what a text says, does, and means.

The first restates the original information.

The second describes the presentation.

The third interprets the overall meaning of the presentation.

In each of the responses above, a reader gains, and is accountable for, a different kind of understanding.

Restatement: restating what the text says; talking about the original topic.

Description: describing what a text does; identifying aspects of the presentation.

Interpretation: analyzing what a text means; asserting an overall meaning.

We can tell which type of discussion we have before us by examining what it talks about.

How are these three different understandings achieved?

To look beyond a literal, sentence-by-sentence meaning (restatement), you might ask two questions: What is the text doing, and what are the examples?

Which Way to Read

How we choose to read a particular text will depend on the nature of the text and our specific goals at the time. When we assume a factual presentation, we might read for what a text says. When we assume personal bias, we look deeper to interpret underlying meanings and perspectives.

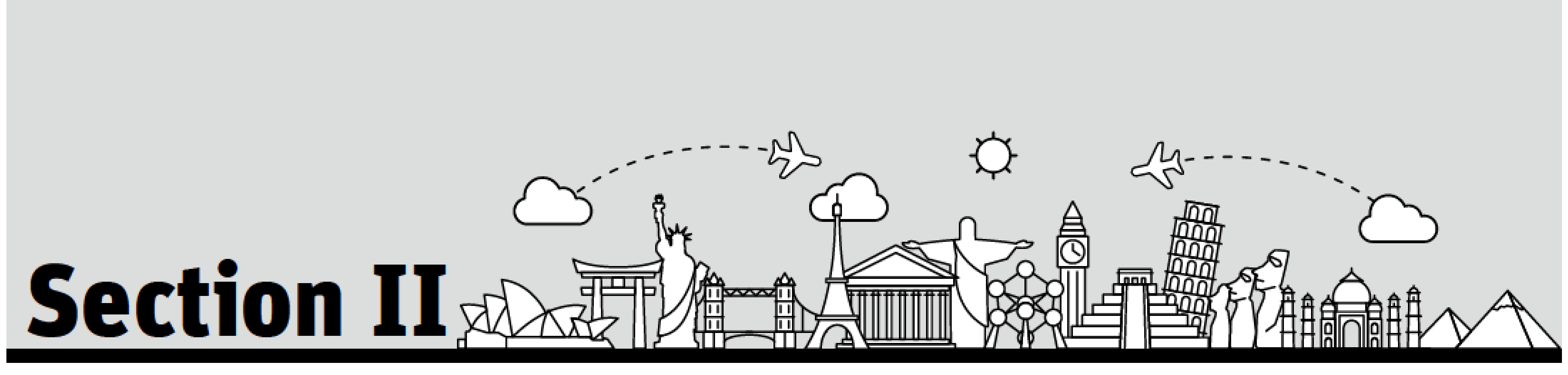
Let's recall the opening paragraph of women's role article above.

To answer the question "How do men look at women in Europe and the United States?", we read to see what the essay says.

To answer the question "What issues does the text discuss?", we read to see what the essay does.

To answer the question "What concerns underlie the essay's analysis of history?", we read to see what the essay means.

As readers, we must know what we intend to do, and whether we have achieved it. We have to adjust how we read to the nature of the reading material, the nature of the reading assignments, and the manner in which we shall be held accountable for our reading.



Section II

Text A: The Scent of Money

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **banknote** ['bæŋknəʊt] *n.*

pieces of paper money

synonym bill; thaler

related phrase a shopping bag full of banknotes

Example 1 The £5 banknote was first issued at the end of the 18th century.

Example 2 Thirteen percent of Christie's coin and banknote auction went unsold.

② **wiry** ['waɪərɪ] ***adj.***

being somewhat thin but is also strong; being stiff and rough to touch

synonym stringy; rigid; flinty

word family wire; wirer; wirework; wiriness; wired; wireless; wirily

related phrase a wiry little man; one's wiry hair

Example 1 His body is wiry and athletic.

Example 2 Her wiry hair was pushed up on top of her head in an untidy bun.

③ **Iberia** [aɪ'bɪərɪə] ***n.***

an ancient geographical region to the south of the Caucasus Mountains that corresponded approximately to the present-day Georgia; a peninsula in southwestern Europe

word family Iberian

related phrase Iberian Peninsula

Example 1 The reports from Iberia are wrong though, as Galliani insists his ace Kaka will stay at San Siro.

Example 2 Spanair is Spain's second largest airline, after Iberia.

④ **watershed** ['wɔːtəʃed] ***n.***

something that is very important because it represents the beginning of a new stage in the history or development of something; a time before which television broadcasters have agreed not to show programmes unsuitable for children, for example programmes that contain scenes of sex or violence; an area of high ground which divides two or more river systems, so that all streams on

one side flow into one river and those on the other side flow into a different river

synonym turning point; sign
word family watershed (*adj.*)
related phrase represent a watershed in American politics

Example 1 The election of Mary Robinson in 1990 was a watershed in Irish politics.

Example 2 The advert should only be shown after the 9pm watershed.

⑤ **florin** ['flɒrɪn] ***n.***

a former British coin, originally silver and later cupronickel, equivalent to ten (new) pence

synonym guilder

Example 1 The next morning when she woke up, I did not know whether she continued to quarrel, or whether she went out to look for the florin that she wanted to find.

Example 2 In Britain it dates back to the 1700s, there is one tree in Scotland somewhere which apparently has a florin stuck into it.

⑥ **sandal** ['sændl] ***n.***

light shoes that someone wears in warm weather, which have straps instead of a solid part over the top of the foot.

synonym slipper
word family sandalwood
related phrase a pair of old sandals

Example 1 Can you fix my broken sandal?

Example 2 She wears sandals every day in summer.

⑦ **pigment** ['pɪgm(ə)nt] ***n.***

a substance that gives something a particular colour

synonym paint; coloring matter; pigmentation
word family pigmentation; pigmented; pigment (*v.*)
related phrase the age pigment; natural pigments

Example 1 The Romans used natural pigments on their fabrics and walls.

Example 2 Melanin is the dark brown pigment of the hair, skin and eyes.

⑧ **barefoot** ['beəfʊt] ***adj.***

not wearing anything on one's feet

synonym barefooted; unshod; shoeless
word family barefooted; barefoot (*adv.*)
related phrase the barefoot boy

Example 1 I wore a white dress and was barefoot.

Example 2 A barefoot kid was playing in the grass.

⑨ **shoemaker** ['ʃu:meɪkə] ***n.***

a person whose job is making shoes and boots

synonym souter; crispin
word family shoemaking
related phrase an experienced shoemaker

Example 1 Adam Smith is a famous shoemaker in town.

Example 2 Can you recommend me a good shoemaker?

⑩ **overtone** ['əuvətəun] ***n.***

signs of an emotion or attitude that is not expressed directly

synonym undertone; connotation; implication; sense
related phrase racial/sexual overtones; the overtones of sth.

Example 1 There were overtones of anger in his voice.

Example 2 The strike has taken on overtones of a civil rights campaign.

⑪ **flowerpot** ['flauəpɒt] ***n.***

a container that is used for growing plants

synonym pot; garden pot
related phrase an exquisite flowerpot

Example 1 The flowerpot crashed to the sidewalk.

Example 2 The water drained out of the flowerpot through the hole in the bottom.

⑫ **paediatrician** [ˌpi:dɪə'trɪʃən] ***n.***

a doctor who specializes in treating children

synonym pedologist
word family paediatric; paediatrics
related phrase a conscientious paediatrician

Example 1 In the study, one on-call paediatrician was questioned in every hospital providing acute in-patient care for children.

Example 2 I had long suspected he could have autism and our community paediatrician sent him for an assessment.

⑬ **springboard** ['sprɪŋbɔ:d] ***n.***

a beginning from which an enterprise is launched; a flexible board from which someone jumps into a swimming pool or onto a piece of gymnastic equipment

synonym basis
word family springboard (*v.*)
related phrase a springboard for/to sth.; the springboard diving

Example 1 The TV soap has been a springboard for a lot of careers.

Example 2 Four years later, in Atlanta, she went on to do well again, winning the women's platform and springboard diving competitions.

⑭ **bushel** ['bʊʃəl] ***n.***

a unit of volume that is used for measuring agricultural produce such as corn or beans (a bushel is equivalent in volume to eight gallons).

word family busheler; bushelful; bushel (*v.*)
related phrase hide your light under a bushel

Example 1 They are offering farmers $2.15 a bushel for corn.

Example 2 We have a bushel of things to do today.

⑮ **backache** ['bækeɪk] ***n.***

a dull pain in one's back

synonym dorsalgia; notalgia
related phrase see the doctor for one's backache

Example 1 The only way to cure backache is to rest.

Example 2 Many workers go home from their first day on the job with either a bad headache or a backache, undoubtedly the result of nervous tension.

⑯ **bacillus** [bə'sɪləs] ***n.*** **(*pl.* bacilli)**

any bacterium that has a long, thin shape

word family bacillary
related phrase the plague bacillus

Example 1 Spiral bacillus is good for human health if taken regularly.

Example 2 A kind of bacillus has shown significant ability to decompose apatite.

⑰ **juxtapose** [ˌdʒʌkstə'pəʊz] ***vt./vi.*** **(juxtaposed/juxtaposed/juxtaposing)**

to place two contrasting objects, images, or ideas, etc. together or describe them together, so that the differences between them are emphasized

synonym counterpose; compare
word family juxtaposition
related phrase juxtapose sth. with sth.

Example 1 The technique Mr. Wilson uses most often is to juxtapose things for dramatic effect.

Example 2 Contemporary photographs are juxtaposed with a sixteenth century, copper Portuguese mirror.

⑱ **haunch** [hɔːntʃ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* haunches)**

the area of the body which includes the bottom, the hips, and the tops of the legs; one of the back legs of a four-legged animal, especially when it is used as meat

related phrase on one's haunches; crouch down on one's haunches

Example 1 Edgar squatted on his haunches.

Example 2 The haunch of venison is delicious.

⑲ **hessian** ['hesrən] ***n.***

a thick, rough fabric that is used for making sacks

synonym burlap

related phrase a hessian sack; hessian cloth

Example 1 He overlaid the walls with hessian.

Example 2 According to AFP news agency, Mr. Dupont bought hessian sacks and cement before his disappearance.

⑳ **borstal** ['bɔːstl] ***n.***

an informal name for an establishment in which offenders aged 15 to 21 could be detained for corrective training

synonym the borstal institution

related phrase the borstal institution; the borstal system

Example 1 He was sent to borstal for stealing.

Example 2 The Criminal Justice Act 1982 abolished the borstal system in the UK, introducing youth custody centres instead.

㉑ **ethanol** ['eθənɒl] ***n.***

another name for alcohol

synonym alcohol; ethyl alcohol

word family ethanolamine

related phrase the ethanol extract

Example 1 The significance of the quarrel goes well beyond ethanol.

Example 2 In Brazil nearly all new cars are able to run on ethanol.

㉒ **trillion** ['trɪljən] ***num.***

the number 1,000,000,000,000

word family trillion (*n.*&*adj.*)

related phrase a 4 trillion dollar debt; trillions of pounds/dollars etc.

Example 1 We've made this mistake trillions of times before.

Example 2 Japan's exports were worth 43 trillion last year.

㉓ **buttress** ['bʌtrɪs] ***v.*** **(buttressed/buttressed/buttressing)**

to support and give strength to someone

synonym support; back

word family buttress (*n.*)

related phrase buttress some of the arguments with quotations; buttress up

Example 1 The evidence seemed to buttress their argument.

Example 2 The builders buttressed that wall with stone structures.

㉔ **scrubber** ['skrʌbə] ***n.***

an offensive word for a woman who has sex for money, or has sex with a lot of different men; a person or thing that scrubs; a domestic animal, especially a bullock, that has run wild in the bush

synonym	prostitute; brush; washer
word family	scrub; scrubbed

Example 1 It's offensive to describe a lady with the use of scrubber.

Example 2 All you need is a squeegee, a scrubber, a bucket and a towel.

㉕ **gangrene** ['gæŋgriːn] ***vt./vi.*** **(gangrened/gangrened/gangrening)**

to undergo necrosis

synonym	rot; necrose
word family	gangrene (*n.*); gangrenous; gangrened
related phrase	begin/start gangrening; become gangrened

Example 1 The bullet wound gangrened and had to be operated.

Example 2 If we don't unload it soon, the grain will start gangrening in the silos.

㉖ **dynamism** ['daɪnəmɪzəm] ***n.***

something or someone that is full of energy or full of new and exciting ideas; something such as a situation or system etc. that is changing in an exciting and dramatic way

synonym	vitality
word family	dynamics; dynamic; dynamical; dynamically
related phrase	a situation that calls for dynamism and new thinking; her entrepreneurial dynamism

Example 1 Such changes are also indicators of economic dynamism and demographic expansion.

Example 2 Shanghai is an international metropolis full of vigor, dynamism and variety.

㉗ **alchemist** ['ælkəmɪst] ***n.***

a scientist in the Middle Ages who tried to discover how to change ordinary metals into gold

synonym	hermetic
word family	alchemy; alchemistic; alchemistical; alchemistically
related phrase	a legendary alchemist

Example 1 Would you rather be an alchemist or a chemist?

Example 2 At first glance, it all seems an alchemist's illusion.

㉘ **cherub** ['tʃerəb] ***n.*** **(*pl.* cherubim)**

a kind of angel that is represented in art as a naked child with wings

synonym	angelet
word family	cherubic
related phrase	a malign cherub; a winged cherub

Example 1 Tessa's face began to look as contented as a cherub's budding from a cloud.

Example 2 The watercolour shows the cherub surrounded by her beauty products and holding various items.

㉙ **defect** [dɪ'fekt] ***vt./vi.*** **(defected/defected/defecting)**

to leave one's country, political party, or other group, and join an opposing country, party, or group

synonym	escape; betray
word family	defect (*n.*); defector; defection; defective
related phrase	defect from/to

Example 1 The scientist defected to another country.

Example 2 He defected from the party in the late 1970s.

㉚ **ceilidh** ['keɪlɪ] ***n.***

an informal entertainment, especially in Scotland or Ireland, at which there is folk music, singing, and dancing

synonym	funfest
related phrase	the Scottish ceilidh

Example 1 The Scottish ceilidh began as a gathering where people shared music and told stories.

Example 2 For New Year's Eve, a ceilidh can be organised, with kilts hired from a local shop.

㉛ **mildew** ['mɪldjuː] ***vt./vi.*** **(mildewed/mildewed/mildewing)**

to become moldy; to spoil due to humidity

synonym	corrupt; mold; mould
word family	mildew (*n.*); mildewed
related phrase	the mildewed fruit

Example 1 The grain is liable to mildew when the humidity in the barn is too high.

Example 2 The furniture mildewed in the old house.

㉜ **tsar** [zɑː, tsɑː] ***n.***

a male ruler of Russia before

synonym	king; czar
word family	tsarist
related phrase	the Tsar's Guard

Example 1 He was executed in 1887 for plotting to assassinate the tsar.

Example 2 The tsar protected his personal prerogatives.

33 **ratepayer** ['reɪtpeɪə] *n.*

a person who pays local rates, esp a householder; a person whose property is served by an electricity, water, or telephone company, and who pays for these services

word family ratepaying

related phrase the financial status of the ratepayer

Example 1 The Conservatives saw this as stopping the waste of ratepayers' money.

Example 2 The new law could create a "no lose" situation for the phone companies that could leave ratepayers worse off.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

anew	apace	aphrodisiac	bacillus	backache
banknote	barefoot	bushel	dashboard	defect
dynamism	elf	florin	flowerpot	gangway
goalmouth	greaseproof	haunch	hessian	judo
machine	mew	notepad	oestrogen	overtone
ovum	pigment	plasterboard	polypropylene	regatta
sandal	scoreboard	scrubber	shoemaker	springboard
swish	washbasin			

Part 2 Text

The Scent of Money

The Scent of Money

In 1519 Hernán Cortés and his conquistadors invaded Mexico, hitherto an isolated human world. The Aztecs, as the people who lived there called themselves, quickly noticed that the aliens showed an extraordinary interest in a certain yellow metal. In fact, they never seemed to stop talking about it. The natives were not unfamiliar with gold—it was pretty and easy to work, so they used it to make jewellery and statues, and they occasionally used gold dust as a medium of exchange. But when an Aztec wanted to buy something, he generally paid in cocoa beans or bolts of cloth. The Spanish obsession with gold thus seemed inexplicable. What was so important about a metal that could not be eaten, drunk or woven, and was too soft to use for wiry tools or weapons? When the natives questioned Cortés as to why the Spaniards had such a passion for gold, the conquistador answered, "Because I and my companions suffer from a disease of the heart which can be cured only with gold."

In the Afro-Asian world from which the Spaniards came, the obsession for gold was indeed an epidemic. Even the bitterest of enemies lusted after the same useless yellow metal. Three centuries

before the conquest of Mexico, the ancestors of Cortés and his army waged a bloody war of religion against the Muslim kingdoms in Iberia and North Africa. The followers of Christ and the followers of Allah killed each other by the thousands, devastated fields and orchards, and turned prosperous cities into smouldering ruins—all for the greater glory of Christ or Allah.

As the Christians gradually gained the upper hand, they marked their victories not only by destroying mosques and building churches, but also by issuing new gold and silver coins bearing the watershed of the cross and thanking God for His help in combating the infidels. Yet alongside the new currency, the victors minted another type of coin, called the millares, which carried a somewhat different message. These square coins made by the Christian conquerors were emblazoned with flowing Arabic script that declared: "There is no god except Allah, and Muhammad is Allah's messenger." Even the Catholic bishops of Melgueil and Agde issued these faithful copies of popular Muslim coins, and God-fearing Christians happily used them.

Tolerance flourished on the other side of the hill too. Muslim merchants in North Africa conducted business using Christian coins such as the Florentine florin, the Venetian ducat and the Neapolitan gigliato. Even Muslim rulers who called for jihad against the infidel Christians were glad to receive taxes in coins that invoked Christ and His Virgin Mother.

How Much Is It?

Hunter-gatherers had no money. Each band hunted, gathered and manufactured with machines almost everything it required, from meat to medicine, from sandals to sorcery. Different band members may have specialised in different tasks, but they shared their goods and services through an economy of favours and obligations. A piece of meat given for free would carry with it the assumption of reciprocity—say, free medical assistance. The band was economically independent; only a few rare items that could not be found locally—seashells, pigments, obsidian and the like—had to be obtained from strangers. This could usually be done by simple barter: "We'll give you swish seashells, and you'll give us high-quality flint."

Little of this changed with the onset of the Agricultural Revolution. Most people continued to live in small, intimate communities. Much like a hunter-gatherer band, each village was a self-sufficient economic unit, maintained by mutual favours and obligations plus a little barter with outsiders. One villager may have been particularly adept at making shoes, another at dispensing medical care, so villagers knew where to turn when barefoot or sick. But villages were small and their economies so there could be no full-time shoemakers and doctors.

The rise of cities and kingdoms and the improvement in transport infrastructure brought about new opportunities for specialisation. Densely populated cities provided full-time employment not just for professional shoemakers and doctors, but also for carpenters, priests, soldiers and lawyers. Villages that gained a reputation for producing really good wine, olive oil or ceramics discovered that it was worth their while to specialise nearly exclusively in that product and trade it with other settlements for all the other goods they needed. This made a lot of overtones. Climates and soils differ, so why drink mediocre wine from your backyard if you can buy a smoother variety from a place whose soil and climate is much better suited to grape vines? If the clay in your backyard makes stronger and prettier flowerpots, then you can make an exchange. Furthermore, full-time specialist vintners and potters, not to mention paediatricians and lawyers, can hone their expertise to the benefit of all. But specialisation created a problem—how do you manage the

exchange of goods between the specialists?

An economy of favours and obligations doesn't work when large numbers of strangers try to cooperate. It's one thing to provide free assistance to a sister or a neighbour, a very different thing to take care of foreigners who might never reciprocate the favour. One can fall back on barter. But barter is effective only when exchanging a limited range of products. It cannot form the springboard for a complex economy.

In order to understand the limitations of barter, imagine that you own an apple orchard in the hill country that produces the crispest, sweetest apples in the entire province. You work so hard in your orchard that your shoes wear out. So you harness up your donkey cart and head to the market town down by the river. Your neighbour told you that a shoemaker on the south end of the marketplace made him a really sturdy pair of boots that's lasted him through five seasons. You find the shoemaker's shop and offer to barter some of your apples in exchange for the shoes you need.

The shoemaker hesitates. How many apples should he ask for in payment? Every day he encounters dozens of customers, a few of whom bring along sacks of apples, while others carry bushels of wheat, goats or hessian—all of varying quality. Still others offer their expertise in petitioning the king or curing backaches. The last time the shoemaker exchanged shoes for apples was three months ago, and back then he asked for three sacks of apples. Or was it four? But come to think of it, those apples were sour valley apples, rather than prime hill apples. On the other hand, on that previous occasion, the apples were given in exchange for small women's shoes. This fellow is asking for man-size boots. Besides, in recent weeks a disease infected by bacillus has decimated the flocks around town, and skins are becoming scarce. The tanners are starting to demand twice as many finished shoes in exchange for the same quantity of leather. Shouldn't that be taken into consideration?

In a barter economy, every day the shoemaker and the apple grower will have to learn anew the relative prices of dozens of commodities. If one hundred different commodities are traded in the market, then buyers and sellers will have to know 4,950 different exchange rates. And if 1,000 different commodities are traded, buyers and sellers must juggle 499,500 different exchange rates! How do you figure it out?

It gets worse. Even if you manage to calculate how many apples equal one pair of shoes, barter is not always possible. After all, a trade requires that each side want what the other has to offer. What happens if the shoemaker doesn't like apples and, if at the moment in question, what he really wants is a divorce? True, the farmer could look for a lawyer who likes apples and set up a three-way deal. But what if the lawyer is full up on apples but really needs a haircut?

Some societies tried to solve the problem by establishing a central barter system that collected products from specialist growers and manufacturers and distributed them to those who needed them. The largest and most famous such experiment was conducted in the Soviet Union[1], and it failed miserably. "Everyone would work according to their abilities, and receive according to their needs" turned out in practice into "everyone would work as little as they can get away with, and receive as much as they could grab". More moderate and more successful experiments were made on other occasions, for example in the Inca Empire. Yet most societies found a more easy way to connect large numbers of experts—they developed money.

Shells and Cigarettes

Money was created many times in many places. Its development required no technological breakthroughs—it was a purely mental revolution. It involved the creation of a new inter-subjective reality that exists solely in people's shared imagination.

Money is not coins and banknotes. Money is anything that people are willing to use in order to represent systematically the value of other things for the purpose of exchanging goods and services. Money enables people to juxtapose apace and easily the value of different commodities (such as apples, shoes and divorces), to easily exchange one thing for another, and to store wealth conveniently. There have been many types of money. The most familiar is the coin, which is a standardised piece of imprinted metal. Yet money existed long before the invention of coinage, and cultures have prospered using other things as currency, such as shells, cattle, skins, haunch, salt, grain, beads, cloth and promissory notes. Cowry shells were used as money for about 4,000 years all over Africa, South Asia, East Asia and Oceania. Taxes could still be paid in cowry shells in British Uganda in the early twentieth century.

In modern borstals, prisons and POW camps, cigarettes have often served as money. Even non-smoking prisoners have been willing to accept cigarettes in payment, and to calculate the value of all other goods and services in cigarettes. One Auschwitz survivor described the cigarette currency used in the camp: "We had our own currency, whose value no one questioned: the cigarette. The price of every article was stated in cigarettes … In (normal) times, that is, when the candidates to the gas chambers were coming in at a regular pace, a loaf of bread cost twelve cigarettes; a 300-gram package of margarine, thirty; a watch, eighty to 200; a litre of ethanol, 400 cigarettes!"

In fact, even today coins and banknotes are a rare form of money. In 2006, the sum total of money in the world is about $60 trillion, yet the sum total of coins and banknotes was less than $6 trillion. More than 90 percent of all money—more than $50 trillion appearing in our accounts—exists only on computer servers. Accordingly, most business transactions are executed by moving electronic data from one computer file to another, without any exchange of physical cash. Only a criminal buys a house, for example, by handing over a suitcase full of banknotes. As long as people are willing to trade goods and services in exchange for electronic data, it's even better than shiny coins and crisp banknotes—lighter, less bulky, and easier to keep track of.

For complex commercial systems to function, some kind of money is indispensable. A shoemaker in a money economy needs to know only the prices charged for various kinds of shoes—there is no need to memorise the exchange rates between shoes and apples or goats. Money also frees apple experts from the need to search out apple-craving shoemakers, because everyone always wants money. This is perhaps its most basic quality. Everyone always wants money because everyone else also always wants money, which means you can exchange money for whatever you want or need. The shoemaker will always be happy to take your money, because no matter what he really wants—apples, goats or a divorce—he can get it in exchange for money.

Money is thus a universal medium of exchange that enables people to convert almost everything into almost anything else. Brawn gets converted to brain when a discharged soldier finances his college tuition with his military benefits. Land gets converted into loyalty when a baron sells property to buttress his retainers. Health is converted to justice when a physician uses her fees to hire a lawyer—or bribe a judge. It is even possible to convert sex into salvation, as fifteenth-

century scrubbers did when they slept with men for money, which they in turn used to buy indulgences from the Catholic Church.

Ideal types of money enable people not merely to turn one thing into another, but to store wealth as well. Many valuables cannot be stored—such as time or beauty. Some things can be stored only for a short time, such as strawberries. Other things are more durable, but take up a lot of space and require expensive facilities and care. Grain, for example, can be stored for years, but to do so you need to build huge storehouses and guard against rats, mould, water, fire and thieves. Money, whether paper, computer bits or cowry shells, solves these problems. Cowry shells don't gangrene, are unpalatable to rats, can survive fires and are compact enough to be locked up in a safe.

In order to use wealth it is not enough just to store it. It often needs to be transported from place to place. Some forms of wealth, such as real estate, cannot be transported at all. Commodities such as wheat and rice can be transported only with difficulty. Imagine a wealthy farmer living in a moneyless land who emigrates to a distant province. His wealth consists mainly of his house and rice paddies. The farmer cannot take with him the house or the paddies. He might exchange them for tons of rice, but it would be very burdensome and expensive to transport all that rice. Money solves these problems. The farmer can sell his property in exchange for a sack of cowry shells, which he can easily carry wherever he goes.

Because money can convert, store and transport wealth easily and cheaply, it made a vital contribution to the appearance of complex commercial networks and dynamic markets. Without money, commercial networks and markets would have been doomed to remain very limited in their size, complexity and dynamism.

The Price of Money

Money is based on two universal principles:

a. Universal convertibility: with money as an alchemist, you can turn land into loyalty, justice into health, and violence into knowledge.

b. Universal trust: with money as a go-between, any two people can cooperate on any project.

These principles have enabled millions of strangers to cooperate effectively in trade and industry. But these seemingly benign principles have a dark side. When everything is convertible, and when trust depends on anonymous coins and cowry shells, it corrodes local traditions, intimate relations and human values, replacing them with the cold laws of supply and demand.

Human communities and families have always been based on belief in "priceless" things, such as honour, loyalty, morality and love. These things lie outside the domain of the market, and they shouldn't be bought or sold for money. Even if the market offers a good price, certain things just aren't done. Parents mustn't sell their cherubs into slavery; a devout Christian must not commit a mortal sin; a loyal knight must never defect his lord; and ancestral tribal lands shall never be sold to foreigners.

Money has always tried to break through these barriers, like water seeping through cracks in a dam. Parents have been reduced to selling some of their children into slavery in order to buy food for the others. Devout Christians have murdered, stolen and cheated—and later used their spoils to buy forgiveness from the church. Ambitious knights auctioned their allegiance to the highest bidder, while securing the loyalty of their own followers by cash payments. Tribal lands were sold to foreigners from the other side of the world in order to purchase an entry ticket into the global

economy.

Money has an even darker side. For although money builds universal trust between strangers, this trust is invested not in humans, communities or sacred values, but in money itself and in the impersonal systems that back it. We do not trust the stranger, or the next-door neighbour—we trust the coin they hold. If they run out of coins, we run out of trust. As money brings down the dams of community, religion and state, the world is in danger of becoming one big and rather heartless marketplace.

Hence the economic history of humankind is a delicate dance at a ceilidh. People rely on money to facilitate cooperation with strangers, but they're afraid it will mildew human values and intimate relations. With one hand people willingly destroy the communal dams that held at bay the movement of money and commerce for so long. Yet with the other hand they build new dams to protect society, religion and the environment from enslavement to market forces.

It is common nowadays to believe that the market always prevails, and that the dams erected by tsars, priests and communities cannot long hold back the tides of money. This is naive. Brutal warriors, religious fanatics and concerned ratepayers have repeatedly managed to trounce calculating merchants, and even to reshape the economy. It is therefore impossible to understand the unification of humankind as a purely economic process. In order to understand how thousands of isolated cultures coalesced over time to form the global village of today, we must take into account the role of gold and silver, but we cannot disregard the equally crucial role of steel.

(Adapted from *Sapiens: A Brief History of Humankind*[2])

Notes

① Soviet Union

The Soviet Union, officially the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, was a socialist state in Eurasia that existed from 1922 to 1991. Nominally a union of multiple national Soviet republics, its government and economy were highly centralized in a state that was unitary in most respects. The country was a one-party federation, governed by the Communist Party with Moscow as its capital.

② *Sapiens: A Brief History of Humankind*

Sapiens: A Brief History of Humankind is a book by Professor Yuval Noah Harari. Harari's work situates its account of human history within a framework provided by the natural sciences, particularly evolutionary biology: he sees biology as setting the boundaries of human activity, and culture as shaping what happens within those bounds. History is the account of cultural change.

Harari surveys the history of humankind from the evolution of archaic human species in the Stone Age up to the twenty-first century, focusing on our own species of human, Homo sapiens. He divides the history of Sapiens into four major parts: the Cognitive Revolution, the Agricultural Revolution, the Unification of Humankind and the Scientific Revolution.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text A the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. maim 2. waver
3. vitality 4. murder
5. smoulder 6. beat
7. implication 8. taxpayer
9. gangway 10. compute
11. mold 12. alcohol
13. redemption 14. ruthless
15. retaliation 16. angelet
17. counterpose

Antonyms

1. oppose 2. invalid
3. silence

III. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 10 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. You could even include ________ foods to put you both in the mood for romance.
   A) bulky B) aphrodisiac C) obsessive D) isotopic
2. The latest progress in polypropylene fiber was described in the ________ professor's presentation.
   A) berry B) fury C) wiry D) flattery
3. His biographical essay on the judo player marked a ________ in the development of biographical studies.
   A) watershed B) washbasin C) goalmouth D) goalkeeper
4. "Do you need any ________ material to make shoes?" The man asked the shoemaker.
   A) smokeproof B) greaseproof C) oilskin D) oilseed

5. It's a quite profound regatta, with powerful festive ________.
   A) overburdens B) overestimation C) overtones D) overprices
6. Embryology, the study of growth and development of the embryo and fetus from fertilization of the ovum until birth, is also a required course of ________.
   A) psychologists B) paedeutics C) surgeries D) paediatricians
7. The high level of oestrogen can have a(n) ________ effect on the young look of ladies.
   A) opponent B) potent C) competent D) content
8. He only used a notepad and a pen to accurately ________ the mean of all these complicated figures.
   A) calculate B) regulate C) tabulate D) capitulate
9. What we saw from the ________ can buttress his argument that we are the winner.
   A) keyboard B) dashboard C) plasterboard D) scoreboard
10. The grain is liable to ________ when the humidity in the barn is too high.
   A) elf B) mildew C) mew D) askew

IV. Cultural Kaleidoscope

Directions: Please choose the most appropriate answer to each question or statement.

1. Which statement is NOT true about the history of money?
   A) The history of money concerns the development of means of carrying out transactions involving a medium of exchange.
   B) Money is not the only medium of exchange in markets in history.
   C) In modern time the broader concept of "money" includes other forms of money such as bank accounts.
   D) In the earliest instances of trade with money, any things can be transferred to monetary significance for direct exchange.
2. A Muslim is someone who follows or practices ________, a monotheistic Abrahamic religion.
   A) Christianity B) Islam C) Buddhism D) Catholicism
3. Which statement best explains "barter"?
   A) Barter originates from gift economy and is usually bilateral.
   B) In most developed countries, barter usually exists parallel to monetary systems to a very limited extent.
   C) Barter is a system of exchange where goods or services are directly exchanged for other goods or services without using a medium of exchange.
   D) Barter is replaced by monetary transaction after the physical currency comes into being.
4. Agricultural Revolution, was the wide-scale transition of many human cultures from a lifestyle of ________ to one of ________ and settlement, making possible an increasingly larger population.
   A) hunting and gathering, agriculture B) hunting and fishing, agriculture
   C) fishing and mining, forestry D) mining and gathering, forestry
5. Which is NOT used by Muslim merchants in North Africa when conducting business in

history?

A) Florentine florin B) Venetian ducat

C) Neapolitan gigliato D) Saint coins

V. Rhetoric Appreciation

Directions: A rhetorical device or a figure of speech is a technique that an author or speaker uses to convey to the reader or listener a meaning with the goal of persuading him or her towards considering a topic from a different perspective, using language designed to encourage or evoke an emotional response in the audience. The widely used rhetorical devices include parallelism, repetition, antithesis, simile, quotation, climax, alliteration, metaphor, personification, rhetorical question, etc. Please identify the rhetorical devices used in the following sentences. And then reread Text A to find out the rhetoric in use as much as you can.

1. ________________
Shouldn't that be taken into consideration?

2. ________________
... with money as an alchemist, you can turn land into loyalty, justice into health, and violence into knowledge.

3. ________________
If they run out of coins, we run out of trust.

4. ________________
One Auschwitz survivor described the cigarette currency used in the camp: "We had our own currency, whose value no one questioned: the cigarette."

5. ________________
Some things can be stored only for a short time, such as strawberries.

VI. Translation Practice

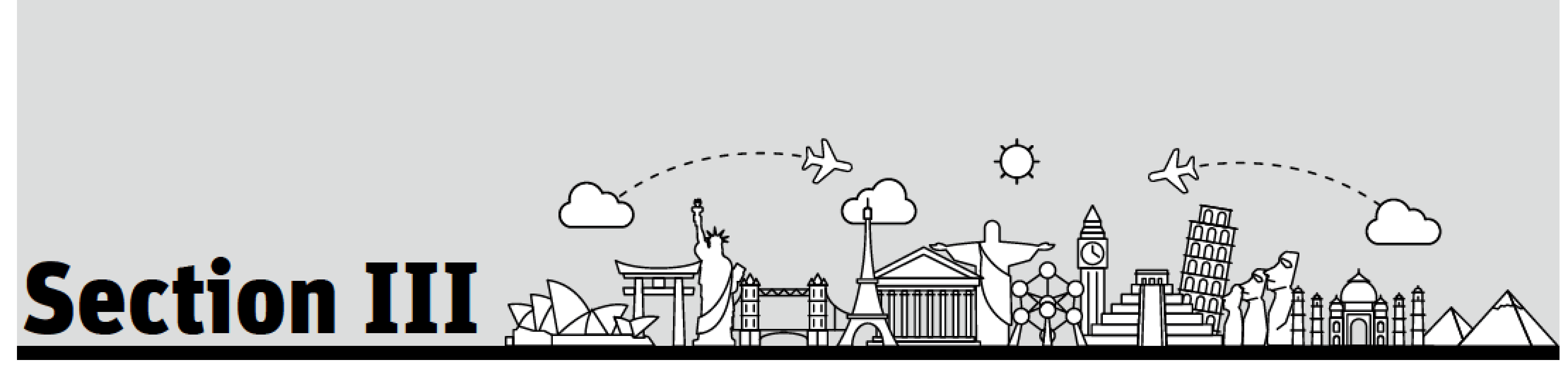
Directions: Please put the following sentences into Chinese.

1. Much like a hunter-gatherer band, each village was a self-sufficient economic unit, maintained by mutual favours and obligations plus a little barter with outsiders.
2. Accordingly, most business transactions are executed by moving electronic data from one computer file to another, without any exchange of physical cash.
3. When everything is convertible, and when trust depends on anonymous coins and cowry shells, it corrodes local traditions, intimate relations and human values, replacing them with the cold laws of supply and demand.
4. For although money builds universal trust between strangers, this trust is invested not in humans, communities or sacred values, but in money itself and in the impersonal systems that back it.
5. In order to understand how thousands of isolated cultures coalesced over time to form the global village of today, we must take into account the role of gold and silver, but we cannot disregard the equally crucial role of steel.

VII. Writing Workshop

Directions: Please choose one from the following tasks and complete it as required.

1. Different people have different attitudes towards money. Some hold the view that money is the source of happiness, while others may regard it as the root of evil. What is your viewpoint?
2. Nowadays more and more wealthy people donate money to charities. Do you agree or disagree? Why or why not?



Text B: And They Lived Happily Ever After

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **threefold** ['θri:fəʊld] ***adv.***

by or up to three times as many or as much

synonym triply; trebly
word family threefold (*adj.*)
related phrase increase production threefold

Example 1 Our rent increased threefold in the past five years.

Example 2 The wood theft went up threefold.

② **pap** [pæp] ***n.***

something such as information, writing, or entertainment etc. that is of no worth, value, or serious interest; food that has been mashed or made soft so that it is suitable for babies and very old people; a nipple or teat

synonym pablum
related phrase produce a lot of pap; pap cooked for the patients

Example 1 Hollywood produces a lot of pap.

Example 2 He finally had a little pap and looked like he's going to sleep.

③ **aptitude** ['æptɪtju:d] ***n.***

the ability to learn something quickly and to do something well

synonym talent; endowment
word family apt; aptitudinal
related phrase the aptitude test; have an aptitude for

Example 1 He drifted into publishing and discovered an aptitude for working with accounts.

Example 2 He has a natural aptitude for teaching.

④ **diametrically** [ˌdaɪə'metrɪklɪ] ***adv.***

If you say that two things are diametrically opposed, you are emphasizing that they are completely different from each other.

synonym absolutely; thoroughly

word family diam; diameter; diametral; diametrical; diametric
related phrase diametrically opposed/opposite

Example 1 The two ideas are diametrically opposed.

Example 2 The economic crisis was interpreted in diametrically opposing ways.

⑤ nomad ['nəʊmæd] *n.*

a member of a group of people who travel from place to place rather than living in one place all the time

word family nomadic; nomadism
related phrase a country of nomads who raise cattle and camels

Example 1 A nomad is the member of a tribe that wanders from place to place.

Example 2 Most of the nomads live in grassland and have no fixed home.

⑥ myriad ['mɪrɪəd] *adj.*

having a large number or great variety

synonym countless; infinite; innumerable
word family myriad (*n.*)
related phrase the myriad causes of homelessness; a myriad of sth.; myriads of sth.

Example 1 The magazine has been celebrating pop in all its myriad forms.

Example 2 Although cloud computing is relatively young, there are already myriad cloud offerings on the market.

⑦ logarithm ['lɒgərɪðəm] *n.*

In mathematics, a number can be represented by in order to make a difficult multiplication or division sum simpler.

synonym log
word family logarithmic; logarithmically
related phrase the natural logarithm

Example 1 It is not possible to obtain the logarithm of a negative number.

Example 2 The natural logarithm of this ratio is called the logarithmic decrement.

⑧ arthritic [ɑː'θrɪtɪk] *adj.*

used to describe the condition, the pain, or the symptoms of arthritis; suffering from arthritis, and cannot move very easily

word family arthritis; arthritides
related phrase arthritic symptoms; arthritic joints/hands; an elderly lady who suffered with arthritic hands

Example 1 I developed serious arthritic symptoms and chronic sinusitis.

Example 2 Carlson, who was suffering from arthritic pain, found this to be a painful and tedious process.

⑨ **debug** [ˌdiːˈbʌg] *vt.* **(debugged/debugged/debugging)**

to remove the bugs (mistakes) from a computer program; to remove secret listening equipment from a place

word family debugger; debugging; debugged
related phrase debug the computer program

Example 1 The production lines ground to a halt for hours while technicians tried to debug software.

Example 2 The embassy was searched for hidden microphones and thoroughly debugged.

⑩ **pseudonym** [ˈsjuːdənɪm] ***n.***

a name that someone, usually a writer, uses instead of his or her real name

synonym anonym
word family pseudonymous; pseudonymously
related phrase under a pseudonym

Example 1 Both plays were published under the pseudonym of Philip Dayre.

Example 2 She writes under a pseudonym.

⑪ **symposium** [sɪmˈpəuzɪəm] ***n.* (*pl.* symposiums/symposia)**

a conference in which experts or academics discuss a particular subject

synonym forum; consultation; seminar; conference
related phrase a symposium on women's health; the annual symposium

Example 1 He had been taking part in an international symposium on population.

Example 2 At the symposium, he submitted a paper which he had written for some other occasion on the topic of population.

⑫ **Maypole** [ˈmeɪpəul] ***n.* (*pl.* Maypoles)**

a tall pole fixed upright in an open space during May Day celebrations, around which people dance holding streamers attached at the head

related phrase be tall as a maypole

Example 1 During the summer gala the choir sings and pupils dance round the Maypole.

Example 2 Can you catch all the ribbons on the Maypole?

⑬ **vampire** [ˈvæmpaɪə] ***n.***

a creature in legends and horror stories, which is said to come out of graves at night and suck the blood of living people

synonym Dracula
word family vampirism
related phrase the vampire bat

Example 1 In the first season of the show, Sookie's friends are not very happy that she is interested in a vampire.

Example 2 Children were afraid to go to sleep at night because of the many legends of the vampire.

⑭ **wavelength** ['weɪvleŋθ] ***n.***

the distance between a part of a wave of energy such as light or sound and the next similar part; the size of radio wave that a particular radio station uses to broadcast its programmes

related phrase the wavelength range; on the same wavelength; on a different wavelength

Example 1 Sunlight consists of different wavelengths of radiation.

Example 2 She found the wavelength of their broadcasts, and left the radio tuned to their station.

⑮ **carnival** ['kɑːnɪvəl] ***n.***

a public festival during which people play music and sometimes dance in the streets; a travelling show which is held in a park or field and at which there are machines to ride on, entertainments, and games; a bright or exciting mixture of something, such as colours or sounds

synonym Fasching

word family carnivalesque

related phrase the carnival parade; a carnival atmosphere in the town

Example 1 They are preparing for this year's carnival.

Example 2 The avenues lined with jacaranda trees burst into a carnival of purple.

⑯ **flyover** ['flaɪəʊvə] ***n.***

a structure which carries one road over the top of another road; a flight by a group of planes on a special occasion for people to watch

synonym overpass; flypast

word family flyout; flyoff; flypast

related phrase a newly-built flyover; an aircraft flyover

Example 1 Soon Syed was back in his old home under the flyover.

Example 2 The celebration includes an aircraft flyover, free tours to the ships moored at docks in Manhattan and the Staten Island, and military band performances.

⑰ **vascular** ['væskjʊlə] ***adj.***

relating to the channels and veins through which fluids pass in the bodies of animals and plants

synonym hemal; vasal

word family vascularity; vascularization; vasculature; vascularize

related phrase the vascular disease; the oldest known vascular plants

Example 1 The research suggests that all such vascular diseases are linked with one common symptom—high blood viscosity.

Example 2 I need to be convinced that this drug indeed confers vascular benefits.

⑱ **hypothermia** [ˌhaɪpəʊ'θɜːmɪə] ***n.***

The body temperature has become dangerously low as a result of being in severe cold for a long time.

antonym	hyperthermia
word family	hypothermic
related phrase	therapeutic hypothermia; the surface hypothermia

Example 1 There is the possibility that hypothermia can go unrecognized.

Example 2 Furthermore, drowning victims also show symptoms of hypothermia.

⑲ **bleat** [bliːt] ***vt./vi.*** **(bleated/bleated/bleating)**

to make the sound that sheep and goats typically make; to complain about something in a way which makes someone sound weak and irritating

synonym	blat; baa; complain; murmur
word family	bleat (*n.*); bleating
related phrase	bleat about sth. to sb.; bleat one's gossip

Example 1 From the slope below, the wild goats bleated faintly.

Example 2 Don't come bleating to me every time something goes wrong.

⑳ **hyperglycemia** [ˌhaɪpəglaɪ'siːmɪə] ***n.***

an abnormally large amount of sugar in the blood

synonym	hyperglycaemia; diabetes
antonym	hypoglycemia
word family	hyperglycemic
related phrase	the diabetic patients with hyperglycemia crisis

Example 1 High blood glucose is called hyperglycemia.

Example 2 More sugar intake and less exercise contribute to hyperglycemia.

㉑ **varicose** [ˌværɪkəʊs] ***adj.***

resulting from varicose veins

synonym	cirsoid
word family	varicosis; varicosity
related phrase	the varicose veins; a varicose ulcer

Example 1 Varicose veins are caused by increased blood volume and pressure on the legs and feet.

Example 2 Standing for hours can lead to varicose veins and back problems.

㉒ **vein** [veɪn] ***n.***

the thin tubes in one's body through which the blood flows toward one's heart; one of the thin lines on a leaf or on an insect's wing; one of the thin lines on a piece of cheese or some types of stone; a thin layer of a valuable metal or mineral which is contained in rock; written or spoken in a particular style or mood; the quality that someone often shows in one's behaviour or work

synonym vessel; texture; nerve; disposition
word family veinal; vein (*v.*)
related phrase veins of gold; in the same vein; in a similar vein; in a ... vein; in a vein of ...

Example 1 Many veins are found just under the skin.

Example 2 A rich vein of humour runs through the book.

㉓ **throe** [θrəʊ] ***n.***

severe spasm of pain; hard or painful trouble or struggle

synonym pang; megalgia
word family throe (*v.*)
related phrase the throes of childbirth; in the throes of ...

Example 1 Every mother has to suffer the throes of childbirth.

Example 2 China has to go through the throe in the process of modernization.

㉔ **yak** [jæk] ***vi.*** **(yakked/yakked/yakking)**

to talk continuously about things that are not very serious, in a way that is annoying

word family yak (*n.*); yakker; yakking
related phrase the yakking old man

Example 1 He yakked on endlessly about his wife.

Example 2 She was yakking away about her grandchildren.

㉕ **drudgery** ['drʌdʒərɪ] ***n.***

jobs and tasks which are boring or unpleasant but which must be done

synonym slogging
word family drudge
related phrase get rid of endless drudgery

Example 1 People want to get away from the drudgery of their everyday lives.

Example 2 He spent his life in pointlessly tiresome drudgery.

㉖ **oblivion** [ə'blɪvɪən] ***n.***

the state of not being aware of what is happening around someone, for example, because someone is asleep or unconscious; the state of having been forgotten or of no longer being considered important; the state of being completely destroyed

synonym obliviousness; misplacement
word family obliviousness; oblivious; obliviously
related phrase fall/sink/slip/pass into oblivion; the oblivion of sleep

Example 1 He just drank himself jovially into oblivion.

Example 2 An entire poor section of town was bombed into oblivion.

27 **wage … against …**

to start and continue something such as a war, battle, etc. over a period of time in order to get or achieve something

synonym fight against; carry on; engage in

related phrase wage war against sth.

Example 1 The Republicans promise to wage war against Islamic extremists.

Example 2 The government is waging a campaign against sex discrimination in industry.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

afterlife	Alpha	annihilation	anon	aptitude
basque	Beta	biochemical	biochemistry	birthright
bitumen	blizzard	briar	busybody	cognitive
estrogen	exponentially	FM	FTSE	GCSE
goalkeeping	IQ	isotope	juniper	knit-ware
lifeguard	methyl	morrow	numeracy	oilskins
pawnbroker	payload	photostat	pigsty	pimp
pinafore	piranhas	plinth	psychoanalyst	roach
seafarer	smallholder	soundtrack	sunroof	Theta
throwaway	thud	tramcar	trowel	typescript
Unix	upstream	waistband	whelk	yon
Zeta	zodiac			

Part 2 Text

And They Lived Happily Ever After

Are We Happy?

The last 500 years have witnessed a breathtaking series of revolutions. The earth has been united into a single ecological and historical sphere. The economy has grown exponentially, and humankind today enjoys the kind of wealth that used to be the stuff of fairy tales. Science and the Industrial Revolution have given humankind superhuman powers and practically limitless energy. The social order has been completely transformed, as have politics, daily life and human psychology.

But are we happier? Did the wealth humankind accumulated over the last five centuries translate into new-found contentment? Did the discovery of inexhaustible energy resources open before us inexhaustible stores of bliss? Going further back, have the seventy or so turbulent millennia since the Cognitive Revolution made the world a better place to live? Was the late Neil Armstrong, whose footprint remains intact on the windless moon, happier than the nameless hunter-gatherer who 30,000 years ago left her handprint on a wall in Chauvet Cave[1]? If not, what

was the point of developing agriculture, cities, writing, coinage, empires, science and industry?

Nationalists believe that political self-determination is essential for our happiness. Communists postulate that everyone would be blissful under the dictatorship of the proletariat. Capitalists maintain that only the free market can ensure the greatest happiness of the greatest number, by creating economic growth and material abundance and by teaching people to be self-reliant and enterprising.

What would happen if serious research were to disprove these hypotheses? If economic growth and self-reliance do not make people happier, what's the benefit of capitalism? What if it turns out that the subjects of large empires are generally happier than the citizens of independent states and that, for example, Algerians were happier under French rule than under their own? What would that say about the process of decolonisation and the value of national self-determination?

These are all hypothetical possibilities, because so far historians have avoided raising these questions—not to mention answering them. They have researched the history of just about everything politics, society, economics, gender, diseases, sexuality, food, clothing like basque—yet they have seldom stopped to ask how these influence human happiness.

Though few have studied the long-term history of happiness, almost every scholar including psychoanalysts and laypersons has some vague preconception about it. In one common view, human capabilities have increased throughout history. Since humans generally use their capabilities to alleviate miseries and fulfil aspirations, it follows that we must be happier than our medieval ancestors, and they must have been threefold happier than Stone Age hunter-gatherers.

But this progressive account is unconvincing. As we have seen, new aptitudes, behaviours and skills do not necessarily make for a better life. When humans learned to farm in the Agricultural Revolution, their collective power to shape their environment increased, but the lot of many individual humans grew harsher. Peasants had to work harder than foragers to eke out less varied and nutritious pap food, and they were far more exposed to disease and exploitation. Similarly, the spread of European empires greatly increased the collective power of humankind, by circulating ideas, technologies and crops, and opening new avenues of commerce. Yet this was hardly good news for millions of Africans, Native Americans and Aboriginal Australians. Given the proven human propensity for misusing power, it seems naive to believe that the more clout people have, the happier they will be.

Some challengers of this view take a diametrically opposed position. They argue for a reverse correlation between human capabilities and happiness. Power corrupts, they say, and as humankind gained more and more power, it created a cold mechanistic world ill-suited to our real needs. Evolution moulded our minds and bodies to the life of hunter-gatherers. The transition first to agriculture and then to industry has condemned us to living unnatural lives that cannot give full expression to our inherent inclinations and instincts, and therefore cannot satisfy our deepest yearnings. Nothing in the comfortable lives of the urban middle class can approach the wild excitement and sheer joy experienced by a forager band on a successful mammoth hunt. Every new invention just puts another mile between us and the Garden of Eden.

Yet this romantic insistence on seeing a dark shadow behind each invention is as dogmatic as the belief in the inevitability of progress. Perhaps we are out of touch with our inner hunter-gatherer, but it's not all bad. For instance, over the last two centuries modern medicine has

decreased child mortality from 33 percent to less than 5 percent. Can anyone doubt that this made a huge contribution to the happiness not only of those children who would otherwise have died, but also of their families and friends?

A more nuanced position takes the middle road. Until the Scientific Revolution there was no clear correlation between power and happiness. Medieval smallholders or seafarers may indeed have been more miserable than their hunter-gatherer forebears. But in the last few centuries humans have learned to use their capacities more wisely. The triumphs of modern medicine are just one example. Other unprecedented achievements include the steep drop in violence, the virtual disappearance of international wars, and the near elimination of large-scale famines.

Yet this, too, is an oversimplification. Firstly, it bases its optimistic assessment on a very small sample of years. The majority of humans began to enjoy the fruits of modern medicine no earlier than 1850, and the drastic drop in child mortality was a twentieth-century phenomenon. Hence, though the last few decades have been an unprecedented golden age for humanity, it is too early to know whether this represents a fundamental shift in the currents of history or an ephemeral eddy of good fortune. When judging modernity, it is all too tempting to take the viewpoint of a twenty-first-century middle-class Westerner. We must not forget the viewpoints of a nineteenth-century Welsh pawnbrokers, Chinese nomads or Tasmanian pimps. Truganini is no less important than Homer Simpson.

Secondly, even the brief golden age of the last half-century may turn out to have sown the seeds of (future) catastrophe of morrow. Over the last few decades, we have been disturbing the ecological equilibrium of our planet in myriad new ways like logarithms, with what seem likely to be dire consequences. A lot of evidence indicates that we are destroying the foundations of human prosperity in an orgy of reckless consumption.

Finally, we can congratulate ourselves on the unprecedented accomplishments of modern Sapiens only if we completely ignore the fate of all other animals. Much of the vaunted material wealth that shields us from arthritic disease and famine was accumulated at the expense of laboratory monkeys, dairy cows and conveyor-belt chickens. Over the last two centuries tens of billions of them have been subjected to a regime of industrial exploitation whose cruelty has no precedent in the annals of planet Earth. If we accept a mere tenth of what animal-rights activists are claiming, then modern industrial agriculture might well be the greatest crime in history. When evaluating global happiness, it is wrong to count the happiness only of the upper classes, of Europeans or of men. Perhaps it is also wrong to consider only the happiness and birthright of humans, which should be debugged.

Chemical Happiness

Social scientists under the pseudonym distribute subjective well-being questionnaires on symposiums and correlate the results with socio-economic factors such as wealth and political freedom. Biologists use the same questionnaires written on throwaways, but correlate the answers people give them with biochemical and genetic factors. Their findings are shocking.

Biologists hold that our mental and emotional world is governed by biochemical mechanisms shaped by millions of years of upstream evolution. Like all other mental states, our subjective well-being is not determined by external parameters such as salary, social relations or political rights. Rather, it is determined by a complex system of nerves, neurons, synapses and various biochemical

substances such as serotonin, dopamine and oxytocin.

Nobody is ever made happy by winning the lottery, buying a house, getting a promotion, dancing by the Maypole bonfire or even finding true love after watching vampire movies. People are made happy by one thing and one thing only—pleasant sensations in their bodies. A person who just won the lottery or found new love and jumps from joy is not really reacting to the money or the lover. She is reacting to various hormones coursing through her bloodstream, and to the storm of electric signals of different wavelength flashing between different parts of her brain.

Unfortunately for all hopes of creating heaven on earth, our internal biochemical system seems to be programmed to keep happiness levels relatively constant. There's no natural selection for happiness as such—a happy hermit's genetic line will go extinct as the genes of a pair of anxious parents get carried on to the next generation. Happiness and misery play a role in evolution only to the extent that they encourage or discourage survival and reproduction. Perhaps it's not surprising, then, that evolution has moulded us to be neither too miserable nor too happy. It enables us to enjoy a momentary rush of pleasant sensations as one enjoys on a carnival, but these never last for ever. Sooner or later they subside and give place to unpleasant sensations.

For example, evolution provided pleasant feelings as rewards to males who spread their genes by having sex with fertile females. If sex were not accompanied by such pleasure, few males including busybody would bother. At the same time, evolution made sure that these pleasant feelings quickly subsided. If orgasms were to last for ever, the very happy males would die of hunger for lack of interest in food, and would not take the trouble to look for additional fertile females with normal estrogen.

Some scholars compare human biochemistry to an air-conditioning system that keeps the temperature constant, come heatwave or blizzard. Events might momentarily change the temperature, but the air-conditioning system always returns the temperature to the same set point.

Some air-conditioning systems are set at twenty-five degrees Celsius. Others are set at twenty degrees. Human happiness conditioning systems also differ from person to person. On a scale from one to ten, some people are born with a cheerful biochemical system that allows their mood to swing between levels six and ten, stabilising with time at eight. Such a person is quite happy even if she lives in an alienating big city without bitumen road, flyovers and tramcars, loses all her money in a stock-exchange crash and is diagnosed with vascular obstructions or hypothermia. Other people are cursed with a gloomy and bleating biochemistry that swings between three and seven and stabilises at five. Such an unhappy person remains depressed even if she enjoys the support of a tight-knit community, wins millions in the lottery and is as healthy as an Olympic athlete. Indeed, even if our gloomy friend wins $50,000,000 in the morning, discovers the cure for both hyperglycemia (AIDS) and varicose veins by noon, makes peace between Israelis and Palestinians that afternoon, and then in the evening reunites with her long-lost child who disappeared years ago and came back with whelks—she would still be incapable of experiencing anything beyond level seven happiness. Her brain is simply not built for exhilaration, come what may.

Think for a moment of your family and friends. You know some people who remain relatively joyful, no matter what briar-stinging throes befall them with a thud. And then there are those who are always disgruntled, no matter what gifts the world lays at their feet. We tend to believe that if we could just change our workplace, get married, finish writing that novel, buy a new car or repay

the mortgage, we would be on top of the world. Yet when we get what we desire we don't seem to be any happier. Buying cars and writing novels do not change our biochemistry. They can startle it for a fleeting moment, but it is soon back to its set point.

How can this be squared with the above-mentioned psychological and sociological findings that, for example, married people are happier on average than singles? First, these findings are correlations—the direction of causation may be the opposite of what some researchers have assumed. It is true that married people are happier than singles and divorcees, but that does not necessarily mean that marriage produces happiness. It could be that happiness causes marriage. Or more correctly, that serotonin, dopamine and oxytocin bring about and maintain a marriage.

In addition, most biologists are not fanatics. They maintain that happiness is determined mainly by biochemistry, but they agree that psychological and sociological factors also have their place. Our mental air-conditioning system has some freedom of movement within predetermined borders. It is almost impossible to exceed the upper and lower emotional boundaries, but marriage and divorce can have an impact in the area between the two. Somebody born with an average of level five happiness would never dance wildly in the streets. But a good marriage should enable her to enjoy level seven ever and anon, and to avoid the despondency of level three.

If we accept the biological approach to happiness, then history turns out to be of minor importance, since most historical events have had no impact on our biochemistry. History can change the external stimuli that cause serotonin to be secreted, yet it does not change the resulting serotonin levels, and hence it cannot make people happier.

Compare a medieval French peasant to a modern Parisian banker. The peasant lived in an unheated mud hut overlooking the local pigsty, while the banker goes home to a splendid penthouse with all the latest technological gadgets, knit-ware patterned with juniper and a view to the Champs-Elysées. Intuitively, we would expect the banker to be much happier than the peasant. However, mud huts without sunroof, penthouses with tracery and the Champs-Elysées don't really determine our mood. Serotonin does. When the medieval peasant completed the construction of his mud hut, his brain neurons secreted serotonin, bringing it up to level X. When in 2014 the banker made the last payment on his wonderful penthouse, brain neurons secreted a similar amount of serotonin, bringing it up to a similar level X. It makes no difference to the brain that the penthouse is far more comfortable than the mud hut built with trowels. The only thing that matters is that at present the level of serotonin is X. Consequently the banker would not be one iota happier than his great-great-great-grandfather, the poor yakking medieval peasant.

There is only one historical development that has real significance. Today, when we finally realise that the keys to happiness are in the hands of our biochemical system, we can stop wasting our time on politics and social reforms, putsches and ideologies, and focus instead on the only thing that can make us truly happy: manipulating our biochemistry. If we invest billions in understanding our brain chemistry and developing appropriate treatments, we can make people far happier than ever before, without any need of revolutions. Prozac, for example, does not change regimes, but by raising serotonin levels it lifts people out of their depression like lifeguards.

In Aldous Huxley[2]'s dystopian novel *Brave New World*, happiness is the supreme value and psychiatric drugs replace the police and the ballot as the foundation of politics. Each day, each person takes a dose of "soma", a synthetic drug which makes people happy without harming their

productivity and efficiency. The World State that governs the entire globe is never threatened by wars, revolutions, strikes or demonstrations, because all people are supremely content with their current conditions, whatever they may be. Huxley's vision of the future is far more troubling than George Orwell[3]'s *Nineteen Eighty-Four*. Huxley's world seems monstrous to most readers, but it is hard to explain why. Everybody is happy all the time—what could be wrong with that?

The Meaning of Life

Huxley's disconcerting world is based on the biological assumption that happiness equals pleasure. To be happy is no more and no less than experiencing pleasant bodily sensations. Since our biochemistry limits the volume and duration of these sensations, the only way to make people experience a high level of happiness over an extended period of time is to manipulate their biochemical system.

But that definition of happiness is contested by some scholars. In a famous study, Daniel Kahneman, winner of the Nobel Prize in economics, asked people to recount a typical work day, going through it episode by episode and evaluating how much they enjoyed or disliked each moment. He discovered what seems to be a paradox in most people's view of their lives. Take the work involved in raising a child. Kahneman found that when counting moments of joy and moments of drudgery, bringing up a child turns out to be a rather unpleasant affair. It consists largely of changing nappies, washing dishes and dealing with temper tantrums, which nobody likes to do. Yet most parents declare that their children are their chief source of happiness. Does it mean that people don't really know what's good for them?

That's one option. Another is that the findings demonstrate that happiness is not the surplus of pleasant over unpleasant moments. Rather, happiness consists in seeing one's life in its entirety as meaningful and worthwhile. There is an important cognitive and ethical component to happiness. Our values make all the difference to whether we see ourselves as "miserable slaves to a baby dictator" or as "lovingly nurturing a new life". As Nietzsche[4] put it, if you have a why to live, you can bear almost anyhow. A meaningful life can be extremely satisfying even in the midst of hardship, whereas a meaningless life is a terrible ordeal no matter how comfortable it is.

Though people in all cultures and eras have felt the same type of pleasures and pains, the meaning they have ascribed to their experiences has probably varied widely. If so, the history of happiness might have been far more turbulent than biologists imagine. It's a conclusion that does not necessarily favour modernity. Assessing life minute by minute, medieval people certainly had it rough. However, if they believed the promise of everlasting bliss in the afterlife, they may well have viewed their lives as far more meaningful and worthwhile than modern secular people, who in the long term can expect nothing but complete and meaningless oblivion. Asked "Are you satisfied with your life as a whole?", people in the Middle Ages might have scored quite highly in a subjective well-being questionnaire.

So our medieval ancestors were happy because they found meaning to life in collective delusions about the afterlife? Yes. As long as nobody punctured their fantasies, why shouldn't they? As far as we can tell, from a purely scientific viewpoint, human life has absolutely no meaning. Humans are the outcome of blind evolutionary processes that operate without goal or purpose. Hence any meaning that people ascribe to their lives is just a delusion. The other worldly meanings medieval people found in their lives were no more deluded than the modern humanist, nationalist

and capitalist meanings modern people find. The scientist who says her life is meaningful because she increases the store of human knowledge, the soldier who declares that his life is meaningful because he fights to defend his homeland, and the entrepreneur who finds meaning in building a new company are no less delusional than their medieval counterparts who found meaning in reading scriptures, going on a crusade or building a new cathedral.

So perhaps happiness is synchronising one's personal delusions of meaning with the prevailing collective delusions. As long as my personal narrative is in line with the narratives of the people around me, I can convince myself that my life is meaningful, and find happiness in that conviction.

This is quite a depressing conclusion. Does happiness really depend on self-delusion?

(Adapted from *Sapiens: A Brief History of Humankind*)

Notes

① Chauvet Cave

Chauvet Cave is near Vallon-Pont-d'Arc, in the Ardèche department, in southern France. It became famous in 1994 when Paleolithic artwork was found on the walls. There were remains of many animals, some which are now extinct. Also some footprints of animals and humans were found. The cave is one of the most significant prehistoric art sites, like Lascaux, Altamira, and Cosquer.

② Aldous Huxley

Aldous Huxley (July 26, 1894–November 22, 1963) was an English writer, and one of the most prominent members of the famous Huxley family. He wrote a number of novels, on various themes. Most of his books are about modern society, the effects of modern science and, later, on mysticism and psychedelic drugs like LSD.

③ George Orwell

George Orwell (June 25, 1903–January 21, 1950) was an English writer. His real name was Eric Arthur Blair. He used the name George Orwell for his novels. He was born in India during the British Empire's rule of India. He is best known for the two novels that he wrote in the late 1940s, *Animal Farm* and *Nineteen Eighty-Four*. In those works, he said that totalitarianism, especially Stalinism, was very bad. Orwell fought in the Spanish Civil War with the antifascist troops. These troops were against the dictatorship of fascist governments.

④ Nietzsche

Nietzsche (October 15, 1844–August 25, 1900) was a German author and philosopher. He wrote several books that he hoped would change the world. His books are works of literature and philosophy.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Reading Practice

Directions:

1. *Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding.*
2. *Practice subvocal reading at fast speed (300 words per minute).*
3. *Try to suppress subvocal reading to achieve faster reading speed.*

II. Sentence Practice

Directions: Please rewrite the sentences with the proper forms of the given words.

forage	diametrical	debug	wavelength	condemn
yearning	ephemeral	orgy	sensation	exhilaration

1. Seabirds often search widely over the ocean surface, where the only available nesting land may be an island of limited area.
2. China expressed strong opposition to Prime Minister Narendra Modi's visit to a disputed zone along the China-India borders.
3. He wants us to have everything concerning IQ test rectified and ready to go by the end of the month.
4. Tom and Apple have really been thinking the same thing lately—they agree about almost everything.
5. Haemoglobin deficiency forced him to an almost reclusive life.
6. Although more and more Chinese travel abroad to work, study and live, China will remain forever a home for them since the heart's desire for a place to call home is universally shared.
7. The wedding dress designer hoped that her momentary garments made of balloons helped lift spirits in the wake of disaster by reminding people of their childhood dreams.
8. Singles Day started as an occasion to get together for a meal, but has since morphed into a multi-billion dollar wild activity of online shopping.
9. A new form of artificial skin with a network of artificial sensors by numeracy could recreate the sense of touch for people wearing prosthetic limbs.
10. But my blood surged with excitement, as if I had already flown out of the room, straddled the neck of the North Wind and galloped off into space.

III. Vocabulary Journey

Directions: Please find out from Text B the synonyms or antonyms of the following words. You may use the words more than once.

Synonyms

1. felicity
2. neology
3. frail
4. presume
5. proclivity
6. overweening
7. multitudinous
8. wither

9. conference
10. dissatisfied
11. untouched
12. independence
13. predisposition
14. fundamental
15. violent

Antonyms

1. shortage
2. prove
3. definite
4. rap
5. obverse
6. extrinsic
7. eternal
8. following
9. downward
10. mutable

IV. Phrase Practice

Directions: Please translate the following verb+noun collocations into Chinese.

1. attain exponential growth
2. blight the crops
3. blight one's hopes
4. blight the chances
5. postulate an inborn need
6. disprove the major contention of opponents
7. disprove a charge
8. alleviate severe unemployment
9. bleat objections in a helpless rage
10. bleat one's disgust
11. square the picture on the wall
12. square one's shoulders
13. square a surface with a straightedge
14. square two points of view
15. square a debt

V. Multiple Choice

Directions: There are 16 incomplete sentences in this part. Please make a choice that best completes each sentence.

1. An ______ is a line joining points with constant wind speed.
A) isotope B) isotone C) isotach D) isotype

2. A large man in ______ waded ashore.
A) oilstones B) oilstoves C) oilseeds D) oilskins

3. The chink of china and ______ of the piano bounces off the monstrously large chandeliers.

A) plink B) pliskie C) plinth D) plim

4. The term _____ now most commonly refers to the music used in a movie (or television show), or to an album sold containing that music.
   A) soundboard B) soundman C) soundtrack D) soundscape
5. Chewing the mixture of _____ and betel leaf constitutes a significant and popular cultural activity in many Asian and Oceanic countries, including Pakistan, Nepal, Malaysia and the Philippines.
   A) pinacoid B) pinafore C) pinacotheca D) pinang
6. With large jaw muscles, _____ have extremely powerful bite, which gives them advantage while tearing flesh.
   A) pirimicards B) pirogues C) piroshki D) piranhas
7. Although the origin of _____ is lost, recent studies show that some method of keeping accounts has existed from the remotest times.
   A) goalkeeping B) housekeeping C) peacekeeping D) bookkeeping
8. The _____ machine came into being when the growth of business created the need for a more efficient means of transcription than hand copying or typescript.
   A) photosphere B) photoscanner C) photostory D) photostat
9. When an aircraft has been loaded with its maximum _____, it can still carry a significant amount of fuel.
   A) paymaster B) payload C) paybed D) payclaim
10. Environmental scientists regard _____ as one of the most serious threats to the survival of animal and plant populations.
    A) roach B) poaching C) coaching D) rodent
11. Historically, _____ served various purposes including fastening knives and symbolizing status or membership.
    A) waistband B) waistcoat C) waister D) waistline
12. The _____ is an area of the sky centered upon the ecliptic, the apparent path of the Sun across the celestial sphere over the course of the year.
    A) zoic B) zoetic C) zonal D) zodiac
13. _____ is the simplest alcohol, but unlike drinking alcohol, it is highly toxic and unfit for consumption.
    A) methyl B) methanol C) methanal D) methoxide
14. As a sign of prosperity for businesses, _____ 100 Index is a share index of the 100 companies listed on the London Stock Exchange with the highest market capitalisation.
    A) Unix B) FTSE C) GCSE D) FM
15. _____ is the eighth letter of the Greek alphabet and it has a value of 9 in the system of Greek numerals.
    A) Alpha B) Beta C) Theta D) Zeta
16. The dog was restless too, ever and _____ rising to lay his head on his master's knee.
    A) yon B) anon C) hereon D) thereon

VI. Proofreading

Directions: Please identify and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

1. Everything is moral that is necessary for the annihilation of the old, exploiting social order and uniting the proletariat.
2. That might merely be a sign that there has been lots of innovation, but the increase threefold in the number of lawsuits per patent filed over the same period suggests that something else is going on.
3. The mathematical aptitude needed for physics and engineering, as well as for maths itself, is innately rarer in women than men.
4. Unlike most migrant workers who eke a living in large cities, he decided to return to the countryside in 2000 to be a farmer.
5. This summer, that most British of detectives, who have appeared as everything from a vampire hunter to a crime-fighting teenager, is being immortalised in Japanese manga.

VII. Paraphrase

Directions: Please restate the following sentences using other words without altering the original meaning.

1. Peasants had to work harder than foragers to eke out less varied and nutritious pap food, and they were far more exposed to disease and exploitation.
2. Given the proven human propensity for misusing power, it seems naive to believe that the more clout people have, the happier they will be.
3. Hence, though the last few decades have been an unprecedented golden age for humanity, it is too early to know whether this represents a fundamental shift in the currents of history or an ephemeral eddy of good fortune.
4. Her brain is simply not built for exhilaration, come what may.